Annex 17 to the GTC of OeKB CSD

User Manual Settlement Client

V3.7 / Public / 07.11.2022

Copyright

All rights reserved. Reproduction of text and data inclusive storage and usage on optical and electronic media is only allowed as agreed in contract or with the prior consent of OeKB CSD GmbH. The usage of data inclusive the insertion of this data in online services, databases or websites by unauthorised third persons is prohibited.

Table of Contents

1. Document Versions and History of Changes 14

2. About the Manual 16

2.1 Structure 16
2.2 Visual Cues 18
2.2.1 Tip Box 18
2.2.2 Information Box 18
2.2.3 Notes Box 18
2.2.4 Step-by-Step Descriptions 18
2.2.5 Typographic Conventions 19

3. The Settlement Client 20

3.1 Login in the Login Portal of the OeKB Group 20
3.2 Logout (End User Session) 21
3.3 Fields, Buttons and Icons 21
3.4 The Entry Page (Home) 30
3.4.1 The Menu Bar 31
3.4.2 Securities Accounts List 33
3.4.3 Search for ISIN 38
3.4.4 The Task Box 40
3.5 Search Functionality and Search Result Lists 47
3.5.1 Searching for Data in Search Screens 47
3.5.2 Search Templates 49
3.6 Data Download (Excel and PDF Download) 52
3.6.1 Excel Download 52
3.6.2 PDF Download 53

4. Settlement Instructions 54

4.1 Create Settlement Instruction 54
4.1.1 Entering Instruction Details (Example DVP) 55
4.1.2 Entering Settlement Parties (Example DVP) 59
4.1.3 Entering Additional Information (Example DVP) 61
4.1.4 Place of Trade and Place of Clearing for an Instruction 64
4.1.5 Entering Restrictions for Delivery Instructions 65

4.1.6 Entering Restrictions for Receive Instructions ... 66
4.1.7 Entering Linkages for an Instruction (Example DVP) ... 67
4.1.8 Field Descriptions (Create Settlement Instruction) ... 71
4.2 Search Settlement Instructions ... 102
4.2.1 Modifying Settlement Instructions ... 105
4.2.2 Modifying a Linkage for an Instruction ... 110
4.2.3 Searching for a Settlement Instruction ... 110
4.2.4 Copying a Settlement Instruction ... 111
4.2.5 Cancelling Settlement Instructions ... 113
4.2.6 Saving a Settlement Instruction in PDF Format ... 116
4.2.7 Instruction History (Settlement Instruction) ... 117
4.2.8 Status History (Settlement Instruction) ... 118
4.2.9 Penalties (Settlement Instruction) ... 118
4.2.10 Refreshing Data in the Settlement Instruction Detail View ... 119
4.2.11 Field Descriptions (Search Settlement Instructions) ... 119

5. Intra-Position Movements ... 130

5.1 Create Intra-Position Movement ... 130
5.1.1 Blocking a Securities Position ... 131
5.1.2 Reserving a Securities Position ... 134
5.1.3 Earmarking a Securities Position ... 137
5.1.4 Entering Linkages for an Intra-Position Movement ... 138
5.1.5 Field Descriptions (Create Intra-Position Movement) ... 138
5.2 Search Intra-Position Movements ... 146
5.2.1 Modifying Intra-Position Movements ... 148
5.2.2 Modifying Linkages for an Intra-Position Movement ... 150
5.2.3 Increasing the Positions of an Intra-Position Movement ... 150
5.2.4 Decreasing the Positions of an Intra-Position Movement ... 153
5.2.5 Searching for an Intra-Position Movement ... 154
5.2.6 Copying an Intra-Position Movement ... 155
5.2.7 Cancelling an Intra-Position Movement ... 156
5.2.8 Instruction History (Intra-Position Movement) ... 158
5.2.9 Status History (Intra-Position Movement) ... 159
5.2.10 Refreshing Data in the Intra-Position Movement Detail View ... 160
5.2.11 Field Descriptions (Search Intra-Position Movements) ... 160

6. Physical Instructions ... 167

6.1 Search Physical Instructions ... 167
6.1.1 Searching for a Physical Instruction ... 168
6.1.2 Instruction History (Physical Instruction) ... 168
6.1.3 Status History (Physical Instruction) ... 169
6.1.4 Refreshing Data in the Physical Instruction Detail View ... 170
6.1.5 Field Descriptions (Search Physical Instructions) ... 170

7. Allegements ... 175

7.1 Search Allegements ... 175
7.1.1 Generating a Counter Instruction to an Allegement ... 177
7.1.2 Searching for an Allegement ... 178
7.1.3 Saving an Allegement in PDF Format ... 179
7.1.4 Instruction History (Allegement) ... 179
7.1.5 Status History (Allegement) ... 180
7.1.6 Refreshing Data in the Allegement Detail View ... 181
7.1.7 Field Descriptions (Search Allegements) ... 181

8. Holdings ... 186

8.1 Securities Positions ... 186
8.1.1 Displaying Securities Positions by Financial Instrument (ISIN) ... 187
8.1.2 Displaying Securities Positions by Securities Account ... 188
8.1.3 Field Descriptions (Securities Positions) ... 189
8.2 Securities Posting Items ... 190
8.2.1 Displaying Securities Posting Items ... 191
8.2.2 Colour Codes of the Search Result List ... 192
8.2.3 Field Descriptions (Securities Posting Items) ... 192
8.3 Search Cash Preview ... 195
8.3.1 Displaying the Cash Balance ... 196
8.3.2 Field Descriptions (Search Cash Preview) ... 196
8.4 Statement of Holdings ... 198
8.4.1 Downloading the Statement of Holdings ... 198
8.4.2 Field Descriptions (Statement of Holdings) ... 199

9. Billing ... 200

9.1 Structure of Invoice Data on the Settlement Client ... 201

9.2 Customer Invoices ... 202
9.2.1 Viewing Invoices ... 202
9.2.2 Invoice Detail View (Customer Invoice Details) ... 203
9.2.3 Safekeeping Fees ... 206
9.2.4 Transaction Fees ... 215
9.2.5 Collection Fees ... 218
9.2.6 Communication Fees ... 220
9.2.7 User Portal Fees ... 223
9.2.8 Other Fees ... 225

10. Message Subscription ... 226

10.1 Search Message Subscription ... 226
10.1.1 Modifying a Message Subscription ... 226
10.1.2 Field Descriptions (Search Message Subscription) ... 228
10.1.3 Field Descriptions (Edit Message Subscription) ... 229
10.2 Message Subscription Rules ... 230
10.2.1 Modifying a Message Subscription Rule ... 230
10.2.2 Deleting a Message Subscription Rule ... 232
10.2.3 Adding a New Message Subscription Rule ... 234
10.2.4 Field Descriptions (Message Subscription Rule) ... 240

11. Four Eyes Principle (Authorisation by Another User) ... 253

11.1 Edit Four Eyes Principle ... 253
11.1.1 Specifying Four Eyes Principle Settings ... 254
11.1.2 Field Descriptions (Edit Four Eyes Principle) ... 255

12. Penalty Report ... 257

13. Efficiency Rate Reports ... 258

14. System Status ... 259

15. User Roles and User Permissions ... 260

15.1 Settlement Client FOP User ... 260
15.2 Settlement Client FOP Releaser ... 262
15.3 Settlement Client VP User ... 262

15.4 Settlement Client VP Releaser 264
15.5 Settlement Client Physical User 265
15.6 Settlement Client Read only 266
15.7 Settlement Client Administrator 267
15.8 Settlement Client Billing 267

16. Glossary 268

17. Index 271

Table of Figures

Figure 1: Login Portal for the Online Services of the OeKB Group 20

Figure 2: List of Services available in the Login Portal of the OeKB Group 21

Figure 3: Entry page (Home) of the Settlement Client 31

Figure 4: Menu bar of the Setllement Client 31

Figure 5: Menu structure of the Settlement Client 32

Figure 6: Securities Accounts list (Home - Securities Accounts) 33

Figure 7: Securities Accounts list processing options (Home - Securities Accounts) 33

Figure 8: Securities Account Details (securities account detail view) 35

Figure 9: Cash Account (pop - up dialog, securities account detail view) 35

Figure 10: Search for ISIN (Home) 39

Figure 11: Search for ISIN - Securities Details 39

Figure 12: task box 40

Figure 13: Authorization of Instructions According to the 4 Eyes Principle (example: settlement instructions, DPF) 42

Figure 14: Processing of Open Tasks (example: settlement instruction, DFP) 43

Figure 15: Current alerts to instructions in the search result list (Instruction Alerts) 45

Figure 16: Search result list (example: Search Settlement Instructions) 47

Figure 17: Search result list (extended search results 1 (example: Search Settlement Instructions) 48

Figure 18: Search result list (extended search results 2 (example: Search Settlement Instructions) 48

Figure 19: Search result list (extended search result 3 (example: Search Settlement Instructions) 48

Figure 20: Search template (example: Search Settlement Instructions) 49

Figure 21: Creating a new search template 49

Figure 22: Using a search template 50

Figure 23: Modifying a search template 51

Figure 24: Changing the name of a search template 51

Figure 25: Deleting a search template 52

Figure 26: Excel Download - search result list (example: Search Settlemet Instruction) 53

Figure 27: PDF Download - detail view (example: Settlement Instruction Details) 53

Figure 28: Create Settlement Instruction - Instruction Details (Example DVP - Delivery versus Payment) 55

Figure 29: Create Setllement Instruction - Setllement Parties (Example DVP - Delivery versus Payment) 59

Figure 30: Create Settlement Instruction - Additional information (Example DVP - Delivery versus Payment) 61

Figure 31: Create Settlement Instruction, Trade Transaction Condition - Additional Information (pop-up dialog) 62

Figure 32: Settlement Instruction Summary, page 1 (example DPF with 4EP authorisation) 64

Figure 33: Use of Restrictions - function link (Create Settlement Instruction - Additional Information, delivery istructions) 65

Figure 34: Use of Restrictions - function link (Create Settlement Instruction - Additional Information, delivery instructions) 65

Figure 35: Restrictions for a delivery instruction (drop-down screen section) 65

Figure 36: Target Restriction Type - dropdown field (Create Settlement Instruction - Additional Information, receive instructions) 67

Figure 37: Function link Linkages (Create Settlement Instrcution - Additional Information) 68
Figure 38: Linkage for an instruction (drop-down screen section) 68
Figure 39: Linkage for an instruction (pop-up dialog) 68
Figure 40: Search Settlement Instructions 103
Figure 41: Search Settlement Instructions - OeKB CSD Status Criteria 103
Figure 42: Search Settlement Instructions - T2S-Status Criteria 104
Figure 43: Search Settlement Instructions - Pending Reason Codes (pop-up-dialog) 104
Figure 44: Search Settlement Instructions - Settlement Parties 105
Figure 45: Search Settlement Instructions - More Criteria 105
Figure 46: Search Settlement Instructions - search result list (example: edit) 106
Figure 47: Edit Settlement Instruction - Instruction Details (example: DFP) 106
Figure 48: Edit Settlement Instruction - Settlement Parties 107
Figure 49: Edit Settlement Instruction - Additional Information 108
Figure 50: Copying a settlement instruction 111
Figure 51: Search Settlement Instructions - search result list (example: cancel) 113
Figure 52: Confirm cancellation (settlement instruction) 114
Figure 53: Saving a settlement instruction in PDF format 116
Figure 54: Instruction History - settlement instruction 117
Figure 55: Instruction History - settlement instruction (message detail) 118
Figure 56: Status History - Settlement Instruction 118
Figure 57: Penalties - Settlement Instruction 119
Figure 58: Refreshing data (Settlement Instruction Details) 119
Figure 59: Create Intra Position Movement 130
Figure 60: Create Intra Position Movement (Summary after saving)) 134

Figure 61: Search Intra Position Movements 147
Figure 62: Search Intra Position Movements - OeKB CSD Status Criteria 147
Figure 63: Search Intra Position Movements - T2S Status Criteria 147
Figure 64: Search Intra Position Movement - search result list (example: edit) 148
Figure 65: Edit Intra Position Movement 149
Figure 66: Copying an intra-position movement 155
Figure 67: Search Intra-Position Movement - search result list (example: cancel) 157
Figure 68: Confirm cancellation (intra-position movement) 157
Figure 69: Instruction History - intra position movement 159
Figure 70: Instruction History - intra position movement (message detail) 159
Figure 71: Status History - intra position movement 160
Figure 72: Refreshing data (Intra-Position Movement Details) 160
Figure 73: Search Physical Instructions 167
Figure 74: Instruction History - phyisical instruction 169
Figure 75: Instruction History - physical instruction (message detail) 169
Figure 76: Status History - Physical Instruction 170
Figure 77: Refreshing data (Physical Instruction Details) 170
Figure 78: Search Allegements 176
Figure 79: Search Allegements - OeKB CSD Status Criteria 176
Figure 80: Search Allegemts - Settlement Parties 177
Figure 81: Search Allegement - search result list 177
Figure 82: Saving an allegement in PDF format 179
Figure 83: Instruction History - allegement 180
Figure 84: Instruction History - allegement (message detail) 180

Figure 85: Status History (Allegement) 180
Figure 86: Refreshing data (Allegement Details) 181
Figure 87: Securities Positions (example: search by ISIN) 186
Figure 88: Securities Positions - search result list 186
Figure 89: Securities Positions - links to subbalances 187
Figure 90: Securities Positions - subbalances (pop-up-dialog) 187
Figure 91: Securities Posting Items 191
Figure 92: Securities Posting Items - search result list 191
Figure 93: Search Cash Preview 195
Figure 94: Search Cash Preview - search result list 195
Figure 95: Statement of Holdings 198
Figure 96: Structure of Invoice Data on the Settlement Client 201
Figure 97: Customer Invoices 202
Figure 98: Customer Invoices - search result list 202
Figure 99: Invoice detail view (Customer Invoice Details) 204
Figure 100: Invoice detail view with fees list (example: Communication Fees) 206
Figure 101: Invoice detail view - mask section Safekeeping Fees 207
Figure 102: Safekeeping fees list (total fees by securities account) 207
Figure 103: Safekeeping Fee Holdings detail view 208
Figure 104: Safekeeping Fee Holdings detail view - search filter (filter example: custody type) 210
Figure 105: Safekeeping Fee Holdings Volume Details 213
Figure 106: Invoice detail view - mask section Transaction Fees 216
Figure 107: List of transaction fees by instruction type 217
Figure 108: List of transaction fees by day 218

Figure 109: Invoice detail view - mask section Collection Fees 219
Figure 110: Collection fees by collection letter 219
Figure 111: Invoice detail view - mask section Communication Fees 221
Figure 112: Communication fees by message direction and application 221
Figure 113: List of communication fees by day 223
Figure 114: Invoice detail view - mask section User Portal Fees 224
Figure 115: Searching Message Subscription 226
Figure 116: Search Message Subscription - search result list 227
Figure 117: Edit Message Subscription 227
Figure 118: Subscription Rules - List (example: edit) 230
Figure 119: Message Subscription Rule (example: edit Settlement Instruction Rule) 231
Figure 120: Subscription Rules - List (example: delete) 233
Figure 121: Confirm deletion (Message Subscription Rule) 233
Figure 122: Message Subscription Rule - Settlement Instruction 235
Figure 123: Transaction Status Advices - Reason Codes (example: cancelled) 236
Figure 124: Message Subscription Rule - Intra Position Management 236
Figure 125: Message Subscription Rule - Allegement 237
Figure 126: Message Subscription Rule - OCSD Settlement Instruction 238
Figure 127: Message Subscription Rule - Statement of Holdings 238
Figure 128: Message Subscription Rule - Statement of Transactions 239
Figure 129: Four Eyes Principle 253
Figure 130: Edit four eyes principle 254
Figure 131: Search Penalty Report 257
Figure 132: Search Penalty Report 258

1. Document Versions and History of Changes

Version/Date	Changes
1.0/16.03.2015	First Full Version
2.0/01.10.2015	Transfer to the new corporate design layout and addition of new functions
3.0/01.02.2017	Updating and documentation of the new functionalities for Go-Live
3.1/05.03.2017	Addition of the function Billing
3.2/01.07.2019	Addition of the function Monitoring Update of several screenshots
3.3/18.11.2019	Update of several screenshots Addition of the fields Place of Trade & Place of Clearing Addition of the failing status Addition because of partial release
3.4/23.11.2020	Addition of the field Beneficial Ownership Addition of New Message Subscriptions Statement of Holdings and Statement of Transactions New Transaction Types COLI, COLO, SWIF, SWIT and REBL Amendment BIYI to BYIY
3.5/05.01.2021	Addition of new fields in the screen Security Details
3.6/14.06.2021	Addition of new Cancellation Reason Codes Addition of the MIC code Addition of the BSSP field Addition of Transaction Code “PAIR” in “OCSD Settlement Instruction” Message Subscription Addition of field Participant SAC Type Addition of Penalties in Settlement Instruction Addition of Penalty Report chapter Addition of new message subscription rule types Daily, Modified and Monthly Penalty Report
3.7/07.11.2022	Update Login Portal Screen Addition of Efficiency Rate Reports Update Physical Instructions Update Message Subscription Update Four Eyes Principle Update User Roles

The screenshots and the description of functions represent the system state at the time of completion of this manual. As the system will be continue to be amended on an ongoing basis, the appearance of the user interface as well as the design of the available functionalities may diverge to some extent from the examples and procedures described here.

2. About the Manual

The manual describes the Settlement Client of OeKB CSD for use in the daily work processes. You will learn how to work with the user interface, which inputs and activities in the Settlement Client produce the desired results, and which general or special functions are available to effectively process your settlement instructions.

2.1 Structure

The following overview outlines the individual chapters of Annex 17 User Manual Settlement Client and their contents. The third column of the table describes the main benefit from the chapter for the intended user group in the last column.

	Chapter	Content	User Benefit	User Group
Introduction	About the Manual	Presentation of Annex 17 Settlement Client User Manual	Users will learn how to get started with the Settlement Client and become familiar with Annex 17 Settlement Client User Manual.	Users working with the Settlement Client for the first time.
	The Settlement Client	Structure of the Settlement Client user interface and overview of the user interface's elements	Users will find support when learning how to use the Settlement Client and find out about the structure of the Settlement Client's user interface and all elements used on the interface.	Users working with the Settlement Client for the first time. Users looking for an overview of GUI elements and how to use them.
Settlement	Settlement Instructions	Create, search, modify and cancel settlement instructions	Users will learn how to create new instructions, search for instructions available in the system, and edit existing instructions.	Users whose task it is to work with instructions, create new instructions or handle existing instructions.
	Intra-Position Movements	Flag securities positions by using intra-position movements and search existing intra-position movements	Users will learn how to block, reserve or earmark positions on a securities account and how to search for intra-position movements already present in the system.	Users whose task it is to block, reserve or earmark specific positions on a securities account or who need to search for intra-position movements to be used in instructions.

	Chapter	Content	User Benefit	User Group
	Physical Instructions	Search Physical Instructions	Users can search for physical instructions.	Users whose task it is to search for physical instructions in the Settlement Client.
	Allegements	Processing of allegement notifications for instructions	Users can search for allegements sent by counterparties and create their corresponding own instructions.	Users whose task it is to search for allegements or to create instructions for received allegements.
Holdings	Securities Positions	Overview of securities positions on a securities account or in a specific ISIN	Users see the securities positions on a securities account or in an ISIN.	Users who want to see the securities positions on a specific securities account or in a specific ISIN.
	Securities Posting Items	Overview of individual securities bookings	Users see the securities posting items for a selected period, either by securities account or by ISIN.	Users who want to see individual bookings in a specific ISIN or on a specific account.
	Cash Preview	Overview of the balances per cash account over a selected period	Users see the development of balances for individual cash accounts to plan ahead.	Users who want to see the positions on specific cash accounts.
	Statement of Holdings	Statement of holdings for a specific reference date	Users see the positions held in individual securities accounts as per a selected date as a PDF-format statement of holdings.	Users who want to see the securities positions.
Billing	Customer Invoices	Overview of the fees and current invoice data charged by the OeKB CSD GmbH	Users will find detailed information about fees invoiced by the OeKB CSD GmbH and receive copies of the digitally signed PDF invoices.	Users who want to see details about fees to be paid by the customer.
Administration	Message Subscription	Definition of rules for receiving messages	Users can define which messages they want to receive, either by instructing party or by destination BIC.	User administrators
	Four Eyes Principle	Specification of actions requiring a dual control authorisation according to the four eyes principle	Users can select the actions that will have to be authorised by a second user.	User administrators

	Chapter	Content	User Benefit	User Group
Glossary	Glossary	Overview of the terms used	Users can look up the most important terms used in the Settlement Client user interface and in Annex 17 Settlement Client User Manual with a brief definition.	All users

2.2 Visual Cues

Annex 17 Settlement Client User Manual elements to emphasise information which is of particular importance to the user.

2.2.1 Tip Box

TIP	Tip boxes contain instructions on how to work more easily with the Settlement Client or point out anything that you must take care of when using a certain function.

2.2.2 Information Box

INFO	Information boxes contain explanations on how the Settlement Client works or background information.

2.2.3 Notes Box

NOTE	Notes boxes contain warnings about possible errors, indicate mandatory entries, or describe system limitations of the Settlement Client.

2.2.4 Step-by-Step Descriptions

Step-by-step descriptions guide you through the specified procedure in the Settlement Client and lead to the desired result in individual steps. The steps are listed individually in the form of a numbered list:

How to proceed to get this result

Step by Step

1. Perform step 1.
2. You have the following options:
   a. For option a, proceed like this.
   b. For option b, proceed like this.
3. Perform step 3.

2.2.5 Typographic Conventions

The following table indicates how different types of information are displayed in the user documentation. These conventions facilitate reading and highlight information of particular importance.

Type of Information	Representation
Menu paths	In italics starting at the main menu entry and using the symbol > between all menu items. Example: *Settlement > Create Settlement Instruction*.
Menu items	In italics; Example: the *Settlement* menu.
GUI elements	In boldface; Example: the **Save** button, the **Create Settlement Instruction** screen.
Cross references	Hyperlinks; Example: see chapter Settlement Instructions. When you are using the PDF version of Annex 17 Settlement Client User Manual, the links also function as hyperlinks.

3. The Settlement Client

The Settlement Client provides access to the Settlement Services of the OeKB CSD. The Settlement Client is used to enter and manage securities instructions. Additional functions are the display of securities positions and cash preview (holdings and preview), billing, reporting and administration.

3.1 Login in the Login Portal of the OeKB Group

You log on to the OeKB CSD Services via the Web link https://login.oekb.at/csd.

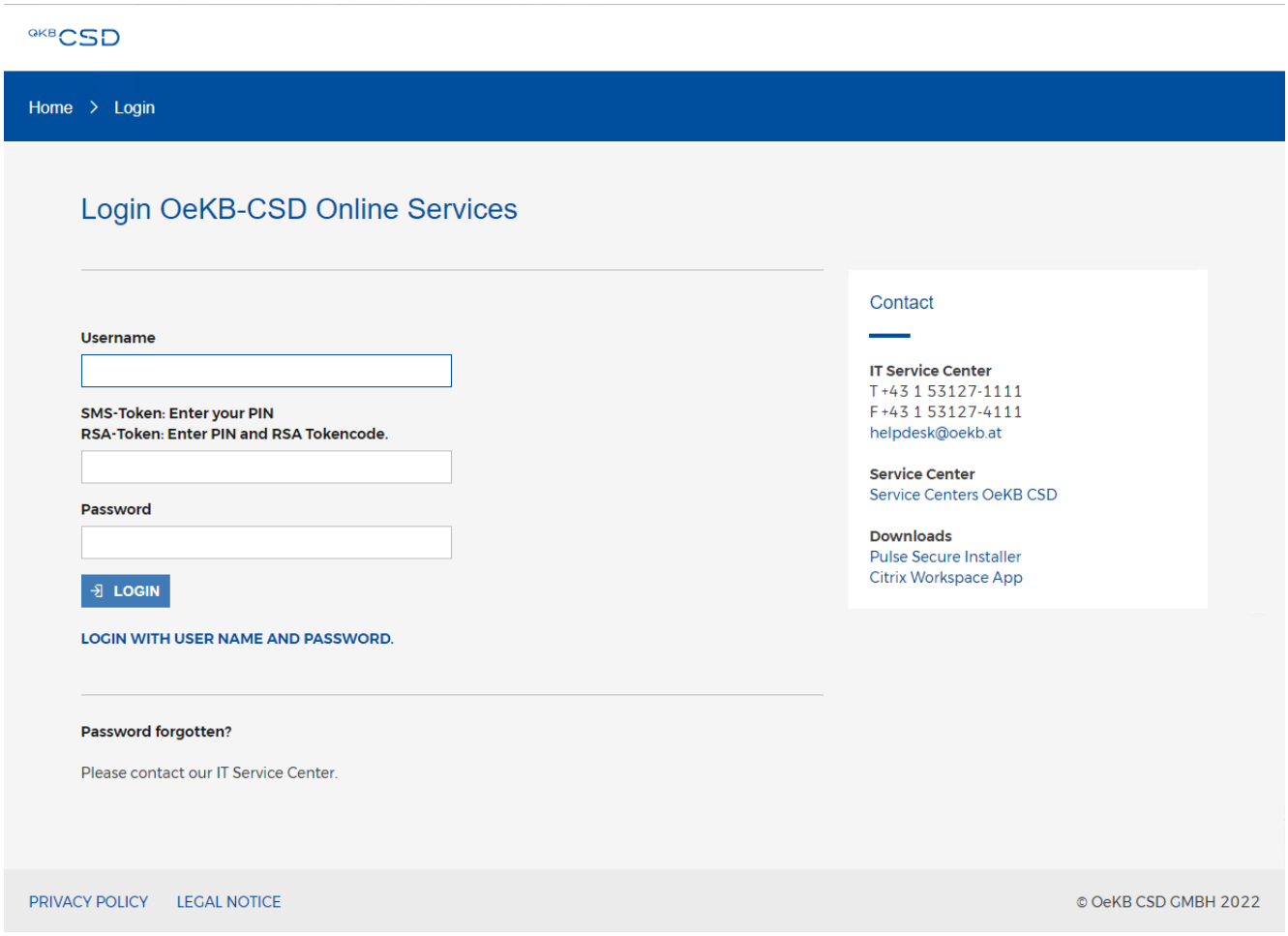


Figure 1: Login Portal for the Online Services of the OeKB Group

After login the Settlement Client is listed among the services activated for you. Click on the link to launch the Settlement Client. The Settlement Client will open in a separate window of your web browser.

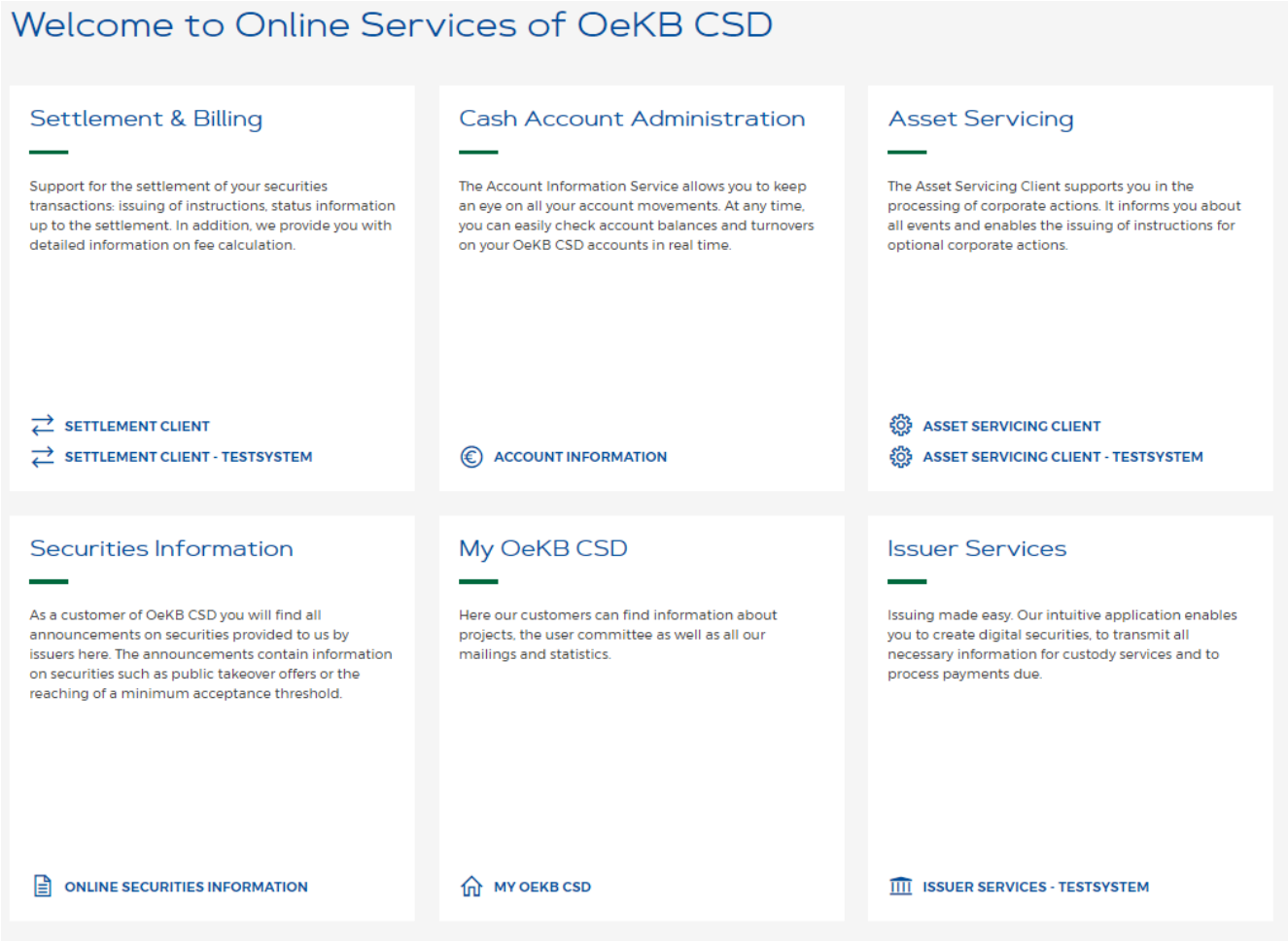


Figure 2: List of Services available in the Login Portal of the OeKB Group

INFO	The Settlement Client is optimised for Internet Explorer and Mozilla Firefox in their latest versions. It is not recommended to use other browsers.

3.2 Logout (End User Session)

To log out from the Settlement Client simply close the browser window. This logs off your user and terminates your user session.

3.3 Fields, Buttons and Icons

INFO	Mandatory fields are marked with the * character in the Settlement Client. They must be filled with data before the record can be saved. All fields in the following table may be mandatory fields.

TIP	For details on the matching process, such as e.g. mandatory, additional and optional matching fields or matching tolerances, please refer to *Annex 8 Guideline Settlement and Securities Account Administration*.

Element	Usage	Function
Fields		
Input field, active field	All screens	Input fields are active fields which you can fill with data. Depending on the field type, they allow the input of text, numbers, dates or times
Display field, disabled field	All screens	Display fields are disabled for input. They are displayed with a grey background. You cannot enter data into a display field.
Numeric field 0	All screens	Only the following characters are allowed in number fields: — The figures 0 to 9 — Dots as thousands separators — One comma per field as decimal comma **NOTE** When entering numbers, please note that the number format used in the Settlement Client is the German notation of numbers. i.e. a full stop (.) is used as the thousands separator and a comma (,) is used as the decimal point. You have the option to enter amounts unformatted without a thousands separator, or formatted with a thousands separator. The system validates the field entries (e.g. when you proceed to the next step in a **Create** screen) and adds any thousands separators. Depending on the field the figure is either displayed with or without decimal places.
ISIN field AT0000720008	All screens	In ISIN fields, you can enter the 12-digit International Securities Identification Number: e.g. AT0000720008 There is an auto-complete function available in the **ISIN** field: You need only enter the country code; the system will then suggest a list of available ISIN.
Date field 08.09.2014	All screens	Only the following characters are allowed in date fields: — The figures 0 to 9 — Dots as separators between day, month, and year The entry is restricted to 8 numbers and 2 dot characters. You may enter single-digit days and months without the leading zero and only the last two digits of the year. A dot is required as a separator between day, month and year. The date is always displayed in the format DD.MM.YYYY.
Dropdown field please select ...	All screens	Dropdown fields contain predefined entries from which you can select one option. Click on the arrow button on the right side of the field or click into the field to display the options. You cannot enter data into a dropdown field.

Element	Usage	Function
Buttons		
Check box 	Holdings and Administration screens	Use a check box to activate or deactivate a function. Check boxes do not allow the entry of any characters. The text adjacent to the check box indicates the function that can be selected with the corresponding check box. A tick in a check box indicates that a function is activated.
abort	Edit screens and details views	Clicking on this button discards changes which have been rejected during 4-eyes-principle authorisation by another user or by T2S and resets the instruction or the intra-position movement to the status before the changes were made. INFO This button is also displayed in the **Edit** screens and detail views of newly created but rejected instructions and intra-position movements..
add	Create, Edit and Review screens, hidden section, detail views	Clicking on this button opens a pop-up dialog where you may enter additional data, e.g. linkages for an instruction.
	Template Pop-up Dialog	Clicking on this button adds a new search template.
add >	Masks/mask sections which allow multiple selections	Clicking on this button moves the selected entry from the left to the right field. The entries in the right field will then be used for performing the corresponding action.
approve	Review masks	Clicking on this button releases the entry. It is submitted to the system for processing.
back	Create Settlement Instruction screen (also in its representation as Edit screen and detail view)	Clicking on this button takes you back to the previous, completed, step of the screen. See also , below.

Element	Usage	Function
Bulk Physical Deposit	Search Physical Instructions screen	Clicking on this button lists all certificates entered on the same day within a bulk deposit of physical securities and allows printing of the respective Bulk Physical Deposit Advice Note. NOTE Please note that certain search criteria must be entered to search for Bulk Physical Deposits.
cancel	Pop-up dialogs, Message Subscription Rule screen	Clicking on this button terminates your entering data in the pop-up dialog. The dialog is closed without confirming or saving any data entered.
cancel instruction	Detail views	Clicking on this button cancels the currently displayed record. A pop-up dialog appears, where it is possible to confirm cancellation.
close	Pop-up dialogs without input options	Clicking on this button closes the pop-up dialog.
create copy	Detail views	Clicking on this button creates a copy of the currently displayed record. The **Create** screen appears, where you can then edit the entries to create a new record.
delete	Detail views	Clicking on this button deletes the record displayed in the detail view currently opened. This button is only available in detail views if your user permissions allow you to modify records.
edit	Detail views	Clicking on this button opens the **Edit** screen, where you can modify the record. This button is only available in detail views if your user permissions allow you to modify records.
	Template Pop-up Dialog	Clicking on this button activates the edit mode for search templates. This allows you to modify the names of existing templates or to delete entire search templates.
Excel Download	search result lists	Clicking on this button downloads the data in Microsoft Excel format. You can choose the download location in an intermediate step.
filter	Safekeeping Fee Holdings screen	Clicking on this button restricts the list of search results according to the criteria defined in the fields directly above.
hide update	Review screens, Edit screens and details views	Clicking onthis button displays the original record as it was before the modification (to be released). The show update button is displayed instead (see below).

Element	Usage	Function
next	Create Settlement Instruction screen (also in its representation as Edit screen and detail view)	Clicking on this button takes you to the next step of the screen. See also , below.
no	Pop-up dialogs for confirmation of deletions	Clicking on this button closes the pop-up dialog without confirming or saving the modified data.
ok	Settlement Instruction Summary, pop-up dialogs, Message Subscription Rule screen	Clicking on this button confirms your entries and closes the current screen.
PDF Download	Detail views	Clicking on this button downloads the data in PDF format. You can choose the download location in an intermediate step.
refresh	Settlement Instruction Summary, Review screens, Edit screens and details views	Clicking on this button refreshes the screen and new real-time data are displayed (e. g. MITI, Processing Status, Reason Code, etc.).
reject	Review masks	Clicking on this button prevents the record to be released for settlement.
< remove	Masks/mask sections which allow multiple selections	Clicking on this button moves the selected entry from the right to the left field. Only entries in the right field will be used for performing the corresponding action.
reset	Edit screens	Clicking on this button resets the content of all modified fields to its original values.
save	Create, Edit and Review screens	Clicking on this button saves your entries.
search	Search screens	Clicking on this button launches the search using the search criteria you have entered.

Element	Usage	Function
show update	Review screens, Edit screens and details views	Clicking on this button shows the updates (to be released), which have been performed on this record. The hide update button is displayed instead (see above).
Templates	Search screens	Clicking on this button opens a pop-up dialog, where you may enter, save or modify search templates.
yes	Pop-up dialogs for confirmation of deletions	Clicking on this button closes the pop-up dialog and confirms and saves the data modification.

Icons

	All screens	Clicking on this icon opens the calendar. In the calendar you can select a date, which will be taken over automatically into the corresponding field of the input screen.
	Create Settlement Instruction screen (also in its representation as Edit screen and detail view)	This icon in the header and footer of **Create** and **Edit** screens indicates the current step to enter data.
	Create Settlement Instruction screen (also in its representation as Edit screen and detail view)	This icon in the header and footer of **Create** and **Edit** screens indicates a completed step where all mandatory data have been entered and validated to be submitted to the system.
	Create Settlement Instruction screen (also in its representation as Edit screen and detail view)	This icon in the header and footer of **Create** and **Edit** screens indicates a step where no data have yet been entered.

Element	Usage	Function
	Create, Edit and Review screens, detail views	Hover the mouse pointer over this icon to have additional information displayed. **Securities Account** — Account Category (shows existing constraints) — Default Account (yes/no) — Partial Settlement (yes/no) — Auto Receive (yes/no) **ISIN** — Name (designation of the financial instrument) — Minimum Denomination (of the financial instrument) — Minimum multiple Quantity (of the financial instrument) — Depository (current safekeeping location of the financial instrument) — Active (yes/no)
	Create Settlement Instruction screen, step 2, Settlement Parties	This icon indicates that you have the option to enter additional data, e.g. more counterparties. Clicking on this icon opens a hidden screen section, where you can enter additional data in the new fields. You can close these hidden screen sections by clicking on the X icon on the upper right. This will delete all additional data entered in the hidden section.
	Message Subscription Rule screen	This icon indicates that you can specify which reason codes must be given in the selected Transaction Status Advice messages you like to receive. Clicking on this icon opens a pop-up dialog where you can activate or deactivate the reason codes accordingly.
	All screens	This icon indicates a drop-down screen section, where you can enter more information. Clicking on this icon opens the drop-down screen section. The icon is displayed instead (see below).
	All screens	This icon indicates a dropped down screen section, where you can enter more information. Clicking on this icon hides the screen section. Only the icon (see above) and the name of the screen section remain visible.
	Template Pop-up Dialog	Clicking on this icon saves the search criteria currently selected in the search mask to a search template.
	Customer Invoice Details screen	Clicking on this icon downloads the invoice copy in PDF format.

Element	Usage	Function
	All screens	Clicking on this icon closes a previously added hidden screen section. All data entered will be deleted and the screen section will no longer be visible.
	Lists	Clicking on this icon deletes the row from the list and the data displayed in this row.
	Template Pop-up Dialog	Clicking on this icon deletes a search template.
	All screens	Clicking on this icon reduces the size of the Settlement Client on your computer screen.
	All screens	Clicking on this icon sets the size of the Settlement Client on your computer screen to its default size.
	All screens	Clicking on this icon increases the size of the Settlement Client on your computer screen.
	search result lists	This icon indicates that no sort order has been specified for this list column. Clicking on this icon changes the sort order to (ascending).
	search result lists	This icon indicates that the data in this column are sorted ascending (A-Z, 0-9). Clicking on this icon changes the sort order to (descending). To remove a column's sort order, set the sort order for a different column.
	search result lists	This icon indicates that the data in this column are sorted descending (Z-A, 9-0). Clicking on this icon changes the sort order to (ascending). To remove a column's sort order, set the sort order for a different column.
	search result lists	Clicking on this icon opens the detail view of the record in this row.
	search result lists	Clicking on this icon opens the **Review** screen of the record in this row. In the **Review** screen, you can approve or reject the task. The system only displays the **Review** icon if your user permissions allow you to release data.
	search result lists	Clicking on this icon opens the **Edit** screen of the record in this row. The system only displays the **Edit** icon if your user permissions allow you to modify data.
	Entry page - Securities Accounts list	Clicking on this icon shows the processing options available for the securities account in the respective row.
	Search screens	Clicking on this icon opens an additional screen section with check boxes, e.g. to select message types.

Element	Usage	Function
	Search result lists (top left of list)	Clicking on this icon extends the search result list to show all columns available for the current type of record.
	Securities Positions search result list (rightmost column)	Clicking on this icon displays the **Securities Posting Items** screen with the entries related to this position already filled in. The search result list will show the posting items associated with this position.
	Allegements search result list	Clicking on this icon opens the **Create Settlement Instruction** screen, where a counter instruction is automatically generated for the selected allegement.

Function Links

	Edit screens and details views	This icon at the bottom of screens indicates a link which you can use to return to the previously displayed search result list.
	Search result lists (top right of list)	This icon at the top right of search result lists indicates a link which you can use to return to the previous page of the search result list.
	Search result lists (top right of list)	This icon at the top right of search result lists indicates a link which you can use to return to the next page of the search result list.
	All screens	This icon at the bottom of pages indicates a link which takes you back to the top of the page.
	Bulk Physical Deposit list	You can use this icon at the bottom of the list to activate all certificates listed so they are printed on the advice note.
	Bulk Physical Deposit list	You can use this icon at the bottom of the list to deactivate the selection of all certificates listed.

3.4 The Entry Page (Home)

The entry page of the Settlement Client shows the menu bar of the Settlement Client with all available functions, the Securities Accounts list including the actions available for the securities account, the Task Box showing instructions waiting for approval, open tasks and recent instruction alerts, and the telephone and fax numbers, as well as the email address where you can reach our service centre in charge.

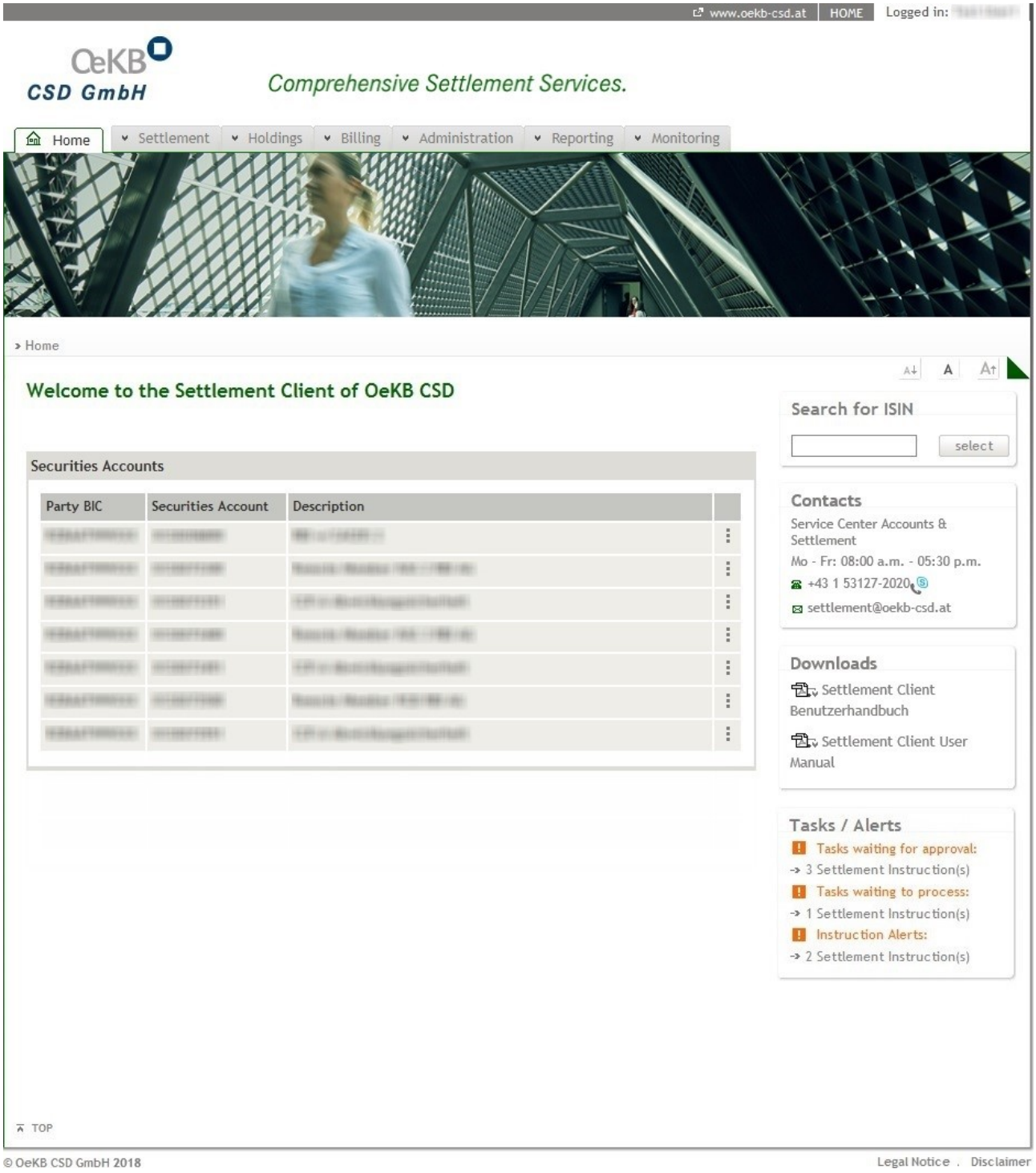


Figure 3: Entry page (Home) of the Settlement Client

3.4.1 The Menu Bar

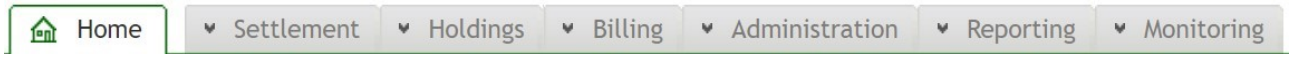


Figure 4: Menu bar of the Setllement Client

The menu bar shows all functions available to you when you are logged in as a user. Depending on your user permissions, some of the menu items shown below may be missing in your version of the client.

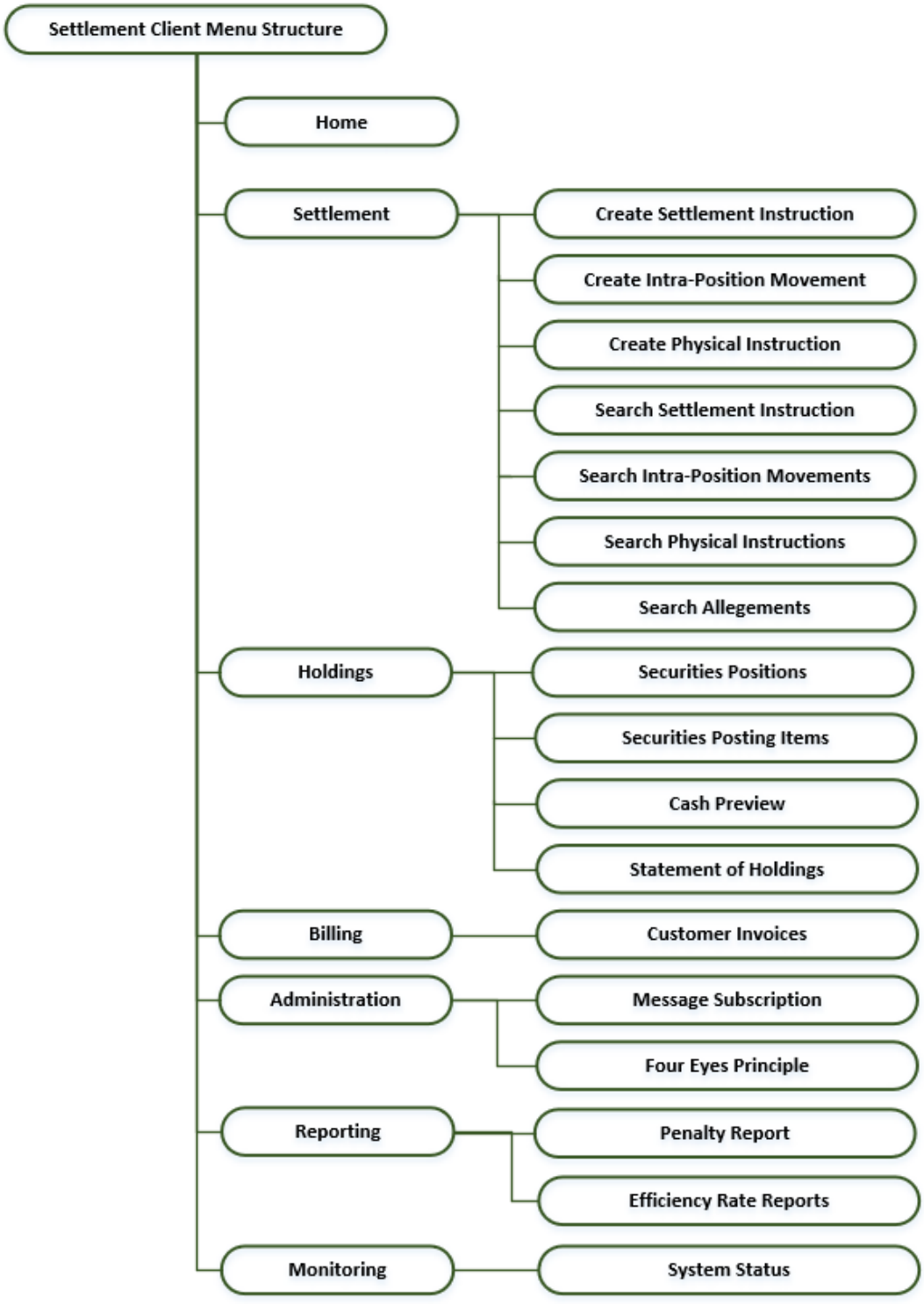


Figure 5: Menu structure of the Settlement Client

3.4.2 Securities Accounts List

The Securities Accounts list shows all available securities accounts and their securities account numbers and names. A pop-up menu lists all actions available for the securities account in the respective row.

Figure 6: Securities Accounts list (Home - Securities Accounts)

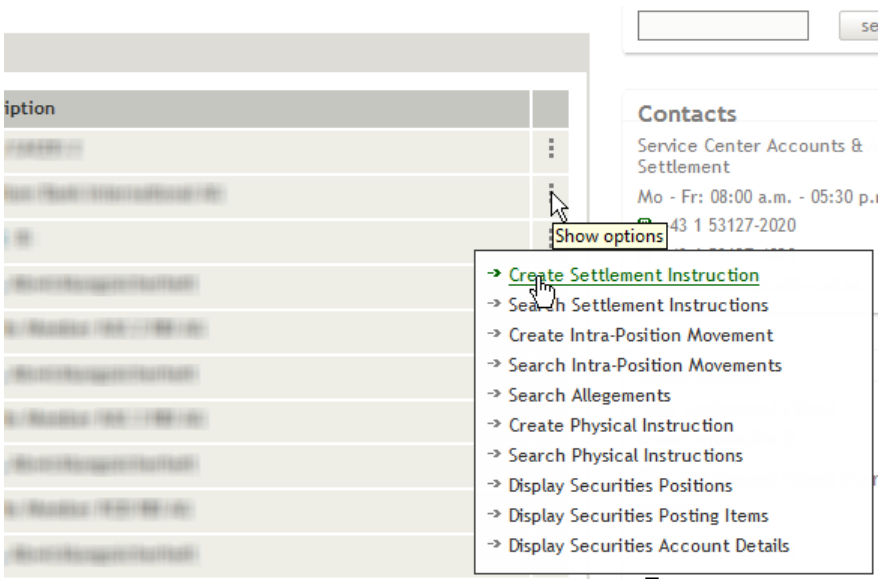


Figure 7: Securities Accounts list processing options (Home - Securities Accounts)

3.4.2.1 Icons Used in the Securities Accounts List

Icon	Function
⋮	Clicking on this icon shows the processing options available for the securities account in the respective row.

3.4.2.2 Actions in the Securities Accounts List

The Securities Accounts list shows all functions available to you for each of the securities accounts listed in the Securities Accounts list. Depending on your user permissions, some of the actions shown below may be missing in your version of the client.

— Create Settlement Instruction, see page 54

— Search Settlement Instructions, see page 102

— Create Intra-Position Movement, see page 130

— Search Intra-Position Movements, see page 146

— Search Allegements, see page 175

— Search Physical Instructions, see page 170

— Display Securities Positions, see page 186

— Display Securities Posting Items, see page 190

— Display Securities Account Details, see below (Securities Account Details)

3.4.2.3 Securities AccountDetails

You can use the icon ⋮ in the line of each securities account listed in the Securities Accounts overview of the entry page to open the detail view of the respective securities account, which includes the display of all cash accounts defined for the securities account.

TIP	The Securities Account Details display the securities account type, any blockings active for the securities account and whether it is the default securities account for the settlement of securities transactions. In addition, it displays all cash accounts which have been defined for the securities account.

How to open the Securities Account Details

Step by Step

1 In the Securities Accounts overview of the entry page **Home**, click on the ⋮ icon.
A pop-up showing the available processing options appears.

2 Select the option **Display Securities Account Details**.
The **Securities Account Details** screen appears.

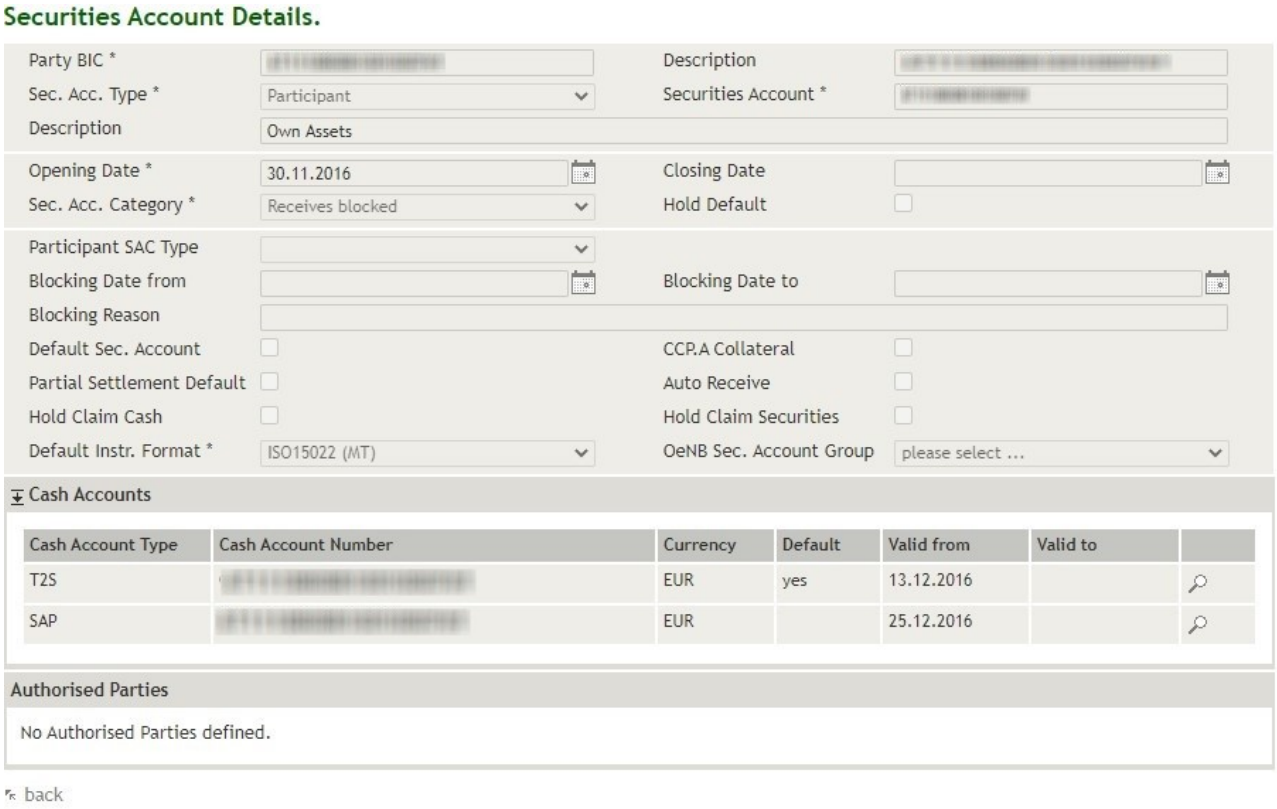


Figure 8: Securities Account Details (securities account detail view)

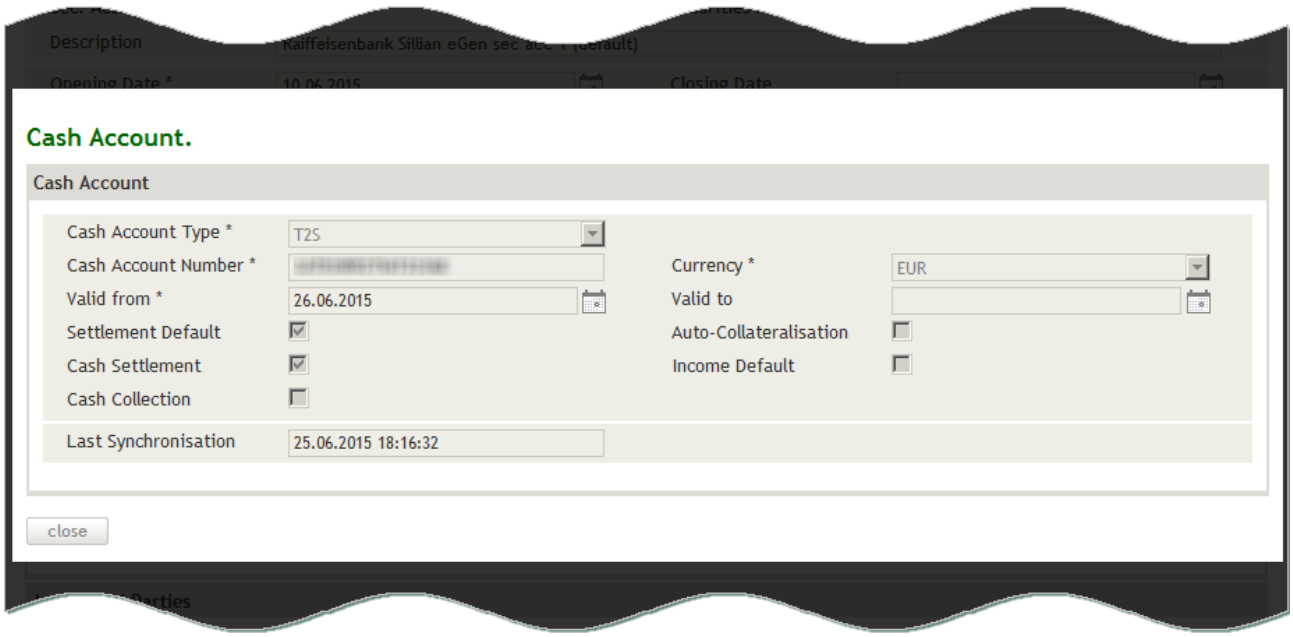


Figure 9: Cash Account (pop - up dialog, securities account detail view)

3.4.2.4 Field Descriptions (Securities Account Details)

Field	Content (by system)
Party BIC	BIC of the securities account holder
[Party BIC] **Description**	The designation of the securities account holder
Sec. Acc. Type	Possible securities account types: **Participant** - securities account of a participant of OeKB CSD
Securities Account	The complete securities account number, starting with OCSD
[Securities Account] **Description**	Designation of the securities account INFO This name is automatically displayed in the corresponding **Description** field in the screens of the Settlement Clients after this securities account's number has been selected in the associated field **Securities Account**.
Opening Date	The day starting at which the securities account will be/has become active
Closing Date	The day starting at which the securities account will be/has become inactive
Sec. Acc. Category	Possible securities account categories: — **No constraints** - securities account without constraints — **Technically blocked** - the securities account is technically blocked and units held on this securities account cannot be accessed, e. g. during certain corporate actions. — **Receives blocked** - the securities account is blocked for receipt instructions — **Deliveries blocked** - the securities account is blocked for delivery instructions — **Deliveries and Receives blocked** - the securities account is blocked for delivery and receipt instructions — **Blocked Special Holding Type** - the securities account is blocked, because it is used for holding positions in Individual Custody
Hold Default	If the check box is ticked, the **Party Hold Status** will be automatically set to **Hold** if settlement instructions are created for this securities account.
Participant SAC Type	Possible participant SAC types: — **Empty field (default)** — **Client Individual** — **Client Omnibus** — **Own**
Blocking Date from	The day starting at which a block will be/has become active for the securities account
Blocking Date to	The last day a block will be/has been active for the securities account

Field	Content (by system)
Blocking Reason	Reason of the block valid between the dates specified in the **Blocking Date** fields
Default Sec. Account	If the check box is ticked, the securities account is used as the default securities account. As soon as e.g. an instruction is created the system automatically displays this securities account number in the **Securities Account** field of the screen
Partial Settlement Default	If the check box is ticked, partial settlement is allowed for all instructions on this securities account. The **Partial Settlement Ind.** field will automatically display the option **Partial allowed** if an instruction is created for this securities account.
Auto Receive	If the check box is ticket, a receive instruction will be automatically generated for received DPF allegements, unless the instruction involves an external depository.
Hold Claim Cash	If the check box is ticked, claim instructions related to the cash payment will automatically receive status **Hold**. They can be released directly on the Settlement Client or via SWIFT as soon as the dividend payment has been effected. For details see *Annex 8 Guideline Settlement and Securities Account Administration*.
Hold Claim Securities	If the check box is ticked, claim instructions related to certificates will automatically receive status **Hold**. They can be released directly on the Settlement Client or via SWIFT as soon as the dividend payment has been effected. For details see *Annex 8 Guideline Settlement and Securities Account Administration*.
Default Instr. Format	Possible formats: ▪ ISO 15022 (MT) ▪ ISO 20022 (MX)
CCP.A Collateral	If the check box is ticked, positions on the securities account will be used as collateral against the CCP.A.

Cash Accounts

see Field Descriptions Cash Accounts

Authorised Parties

These fields are only displayed if other parties have been granted access to the selected securities account.

3.4.2.5 Field Descriptions (Cash Accounts Pop-Up Dialog, Securities Account Details)

Field	Content (by system)
Cash Account Type	Possible cash account types: — **T2S** - for Euro settlement — **SAP** - for multicurrency settlement

Field	Content (by system)
Cash Account Number	Number of the cash account: — IBAN - for SAP accounts — DCA account number - for T2S accounts
Currency	Possible entries: **CHF**, **EUR**, **GBP**, **USD**
Valid from	The day starting at which the cash account will be/has become active
Valid to	The day starting at which the cash account will be/has become inactive
Settlement Default	If the check box is ticked, the cash account is used as the default cash account. As soon as e.g. an instruction is created the system automatically displays this cash account number in the **Cash Account** field of the screen if the corresponding securities account has been seleted.
Auto-Collateralisation	If the check box is ticked, the corresponding T2S account will be used for auto-collateralisation.
Cash Settlement	If the check box is ticked, this cash account will be used for payments/cash settlement.
Income Default	If the check box is ticked, this cash account will be used for income payments.
Cash Collection	If the check box is ticked, this cash account will be used for income collection in cash.

3.4.3 Search for ISIN

On the top right of the entry page **Home** a quick ISIN search is available. The result of this search is a display of the securities data stored in the system for the corresponding ISIN and of any restrictions currently active. You will also see details about the minimum denomination and the minimum multiple quantity of the financial instrument.

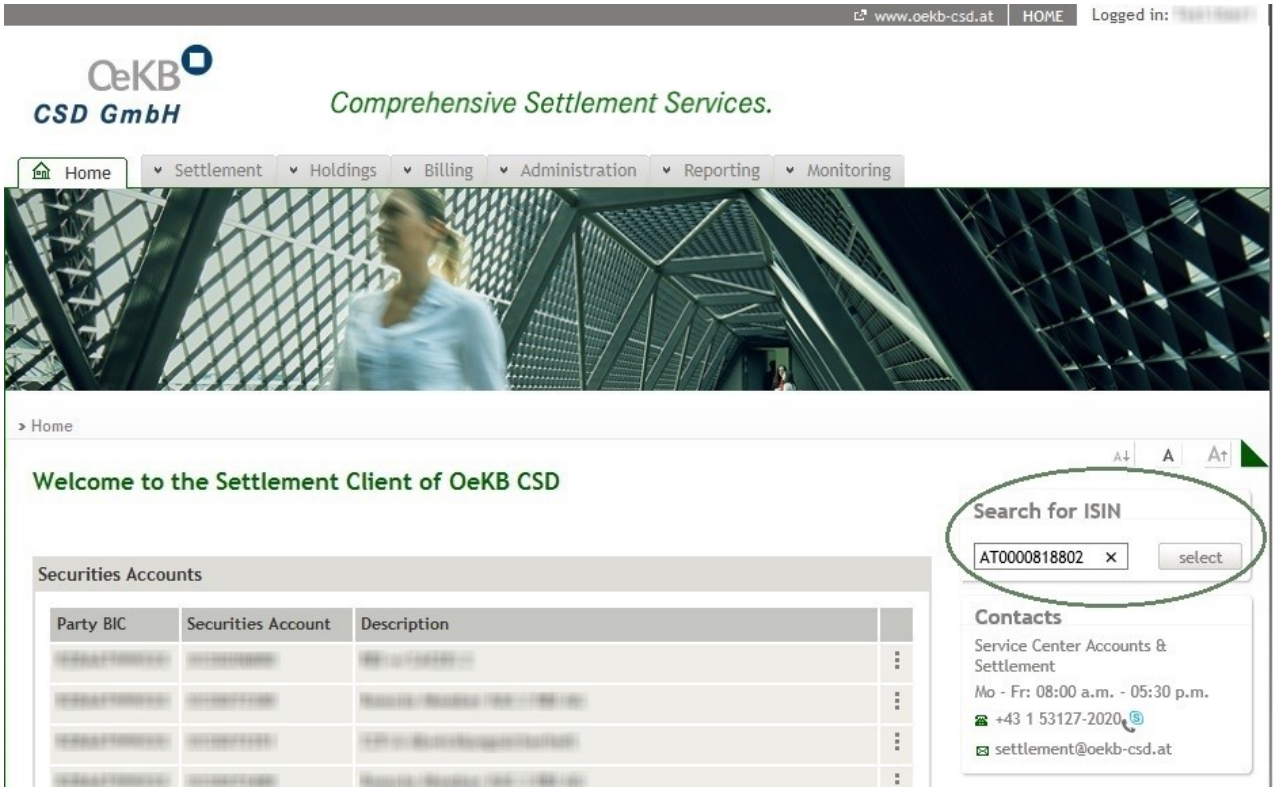


Figure 10: Search for ISIN (Home)

ISIN	AT0000743059	CFI	ESVUFB
Name	OMV AGAKTIEN OHNE NENNWERT		
FISN	OMV/SHS	Country	AT
Settlement Type	UNIT		
Minimum Denomination	1	Minimum Multiple Quantity	1
Issue Date	16.01.2015	Maturity Date	
Currency	EUR	EFIC	1000
Last Sync Time	29.12.2020 23:47:08	Deletion Time	
Home Stockexchange	944 - Wien - Amtlicher Handel XETRA	Rate Stockexchange	255 - Wien - Geregelter Freiverkehr -)
Exclude from Rate Alert	☐	Default Rate Currency	please select ...
Depository *	OeKB CSD GmbH		
Depository valid from *	19.01.2015	Depository valid to	
Custody Type *	GS	SME *	☑
SDR from	09.12.2019	SDR to	
Liquidity Indicator	LIQUID		
SDR Rate	33,12	SDR Rate Date	29.12.2020
SDR Rate Currency	EUR		

Figure 11: Search for ISIN - Securities Details

3.4.3.1 Field Descriptions for the Settlement Discipline Regime (SDR) fields

Field	Description
SDR from	Shows the the date from which the security is subject to cash penalties.
SDR to	Shows the to date until which the security is subject to cash penalties.
Liquidity Indicator	Binary classification of securities which indicates whether the underlying instrument is liquid or illiquid. Only provided for shares. Possible values: — Liquid — Illiquid
SDR Rate	Shows the rate of the securities which are in scope of SDR.
SDR Rate Date	Validity date of the rate.
SDR Rate Currency	Currency Code of the rate.

3.4.4 The Task Box

On the entry page, the task box shows tasks which need to be authorised by two persons according to the four eyes principle, open tasks, and instruction alerts for instructions with status Pending or Failing.

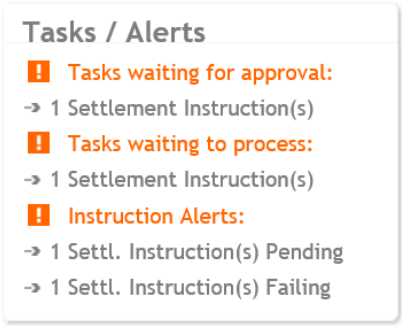


Figure 12: task box

3.4.4.1 Working With the Task Box

The task box shows the following entries:

— Tasks waiting for approval (tasks waiting for release by a second set of eyes)

— Tasks waiting to process (open tasks)

— Instruction Alerts (alerts for instructions with status Hold, Pending or Failing)

The task summaries are active links, which will open the respective task lists if you click on them. The task lists are actually search results lists where the corresponding search criteria have been automatically applied.

— Tasks waiting for approval - search criterion **Task Type** "User Approval Task"

— Tasks waiting to process - search criterion **Task Type** "User Processing Task"

— Instruction Alerts - search criteria **Instruction Status** "Pending" or “Failing”, **Pending Reason Codes** "CLAC", "CMON", "LACK", "MONY"

TIP	If necessary, add more search criteria in the search screen above the search result list to limit the number of the results displayed in the task list. For more information about the search functionality and the search result lists, please refer to chapter Search Functionality and Search Result Lists.

3.4.4.2 Authorisation of Tasks According to the 4-Eyes Principle (Tasks waiting for approval)

You can use the task box links below **Tasks waiting for approval** to open the corresponding search result list where you can approve or reject tasks if you have the user permission to authorise instructions or intra-position movements.

INFO	In the **Tasks waiting for approval** section the task box shows the number of previously entered records which require approval according to the 4-eyes principle, i.e. records with status **awaiting approval**.
INFO	In this view, the search screen with the input fields for search criteria is shown minimised and the first page of the search result list is immediately displayed in full.

TIP	The functionality to authorise tasks is only available for tasks you have neither entered nor edited.

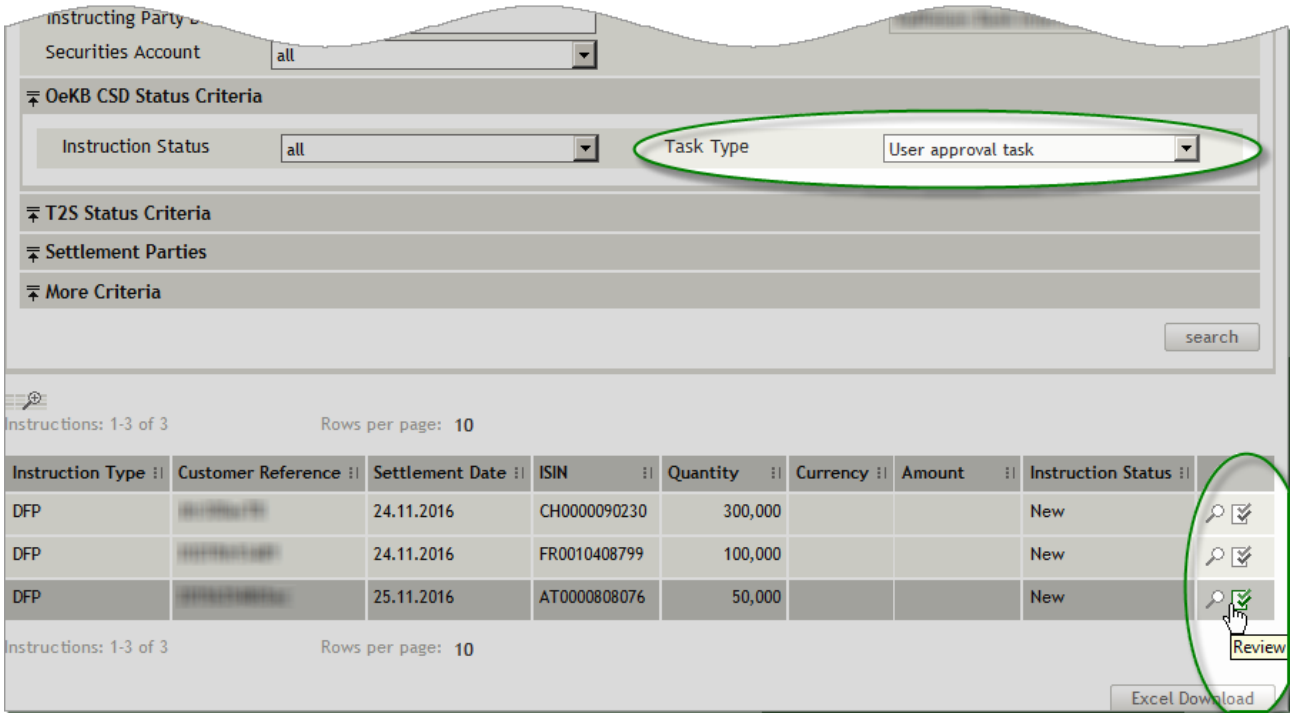


Figure 13: Authorization of Instructions According to the 4 Eyes Principle (example: settlement instructions, DPF)

How to Approve or Reject Tasks in the Search Result List

Step by Step

1. In the row of the record you want to release, click on the **Review** icon to open the **Review** screen.
2. You have the following options:
   a. To authorise the record, click **approve**.
   The record has been released and will be submitted for further processing.
   The task is no longer displayed in the task box.
   b. To decline authorisation of the record, click **reject**.
   The record will be added to the entries **Tasks waiting to process** in the Taskbox and will appear in the search result list showing the status **approval rejected**.
3. Click **ok** to return to the search result list.

3.4.4.3 Processing of Open Tasks (Tasks waiting to process)

You can use the task box links below **Tasks waiting to process** to open the corresponding search result list showing instructions or intra-position movements which have not been processes completely. There are several reasons why instructions may be open:

— The record has been rejected during authorisation according to the 4-eyes principle

— The record has been rejected by the system or approval has been rejected

INFO In this view, the search screen with the input fields for search criteria is shown minimised and the first page of the search result list is immediately displayed in full.

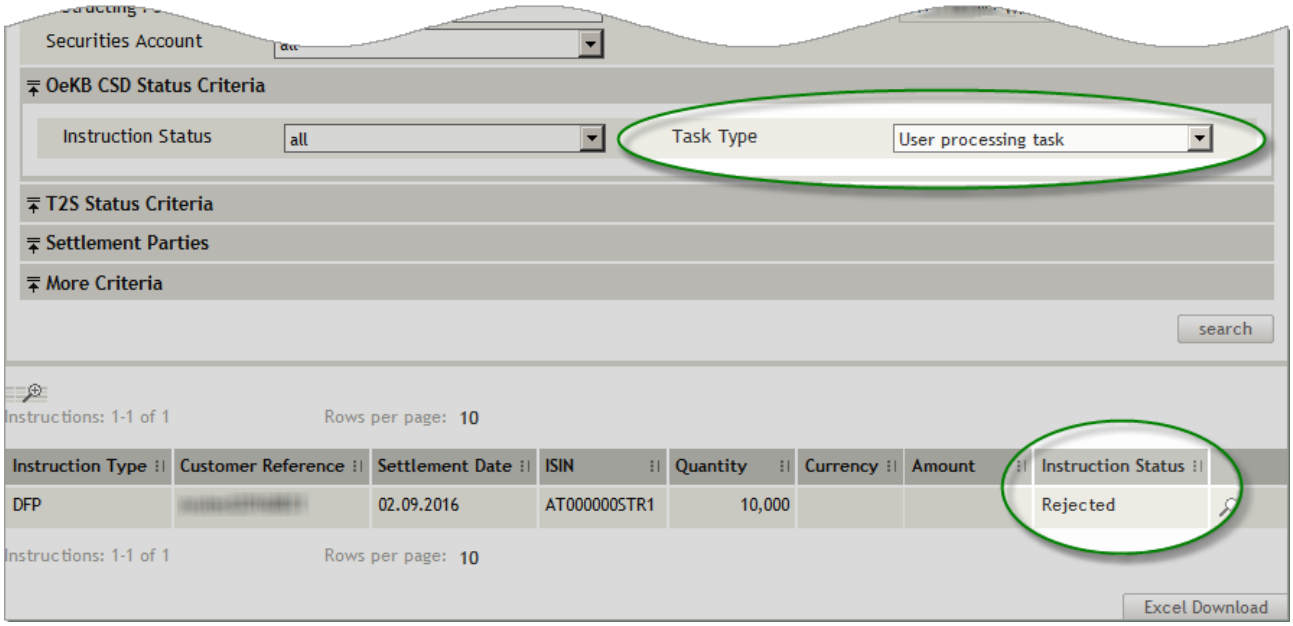


Figure 14: Processing of Open Tasks (example: settlement instruction, DFP)

Status	Description
Approval rejected	The release of the instruction or intra-position movement has been rejected during authorisation according to the 4-eyes principle.
Rejected	The instruction or intra-position movement has been rejected by the system.
Failed	Processing of the instruction or intra-position movement in the system has not been successful.

How to Process Open Tasks in the Search Result List

Step by Step

1 You have the following options:

a In the row of the record you want to modify, click on the **Details** icon to open the detail view.
You have the following options:

NOTE Not all buttons listed below may be available in all detail views.

aa Click on **hide update** to display the record without the modifications made. The record is displayed as it was before the modifications.

ab Click on **refresh** to display new real-time data received in the system.

ac Click on **abort** to discard changes which have been rejected during 4-eyes-principle authorisation by another user or by T2S and to reset the instruction or the intra-position movement to the status before the changes were made.

ad Click **edit** to open the **Edit** screen of the record. (see b1 ff)

INFO The system only displays the **edit** button if your user permissions allow you to modify data.

ae Click on **PDF Download** to display and maybe save the record in PDF format.

b1 In the row of the record you want to modify, click on the **Edit** icon to open the **Edit** screen.

INFO The system only displays the **Edit** icon if your user permissions allow you to modify data.

b2 Modify the record as required.

b3 Click **save** to save your changes.

INFO If an authorisation according to the 4-eyes principle is required, this record will be listed in the **Tasks waiting for approval** section of the task box until it gets authorised by a releaser.

The changes are saved and submitted to the system for processing or for 4EP authorisation.

b4 Click **ok** to return to the search result list.

c In the row containing the record to be cancelled, click on the **X** icon. The record will be deleted and will no longer be displayed in the search result list.

3.4.4.4 Instruction Alerts

You can use the task box link below **Instruction Alerts** to open the search result list showing current notifications (Instruction Alerts) for instructions with status Pending or Failing.

INFO In this view, the search screen with the input fields for search criteria is shown minimised and the first page of the search result list is immediately displayed in full.

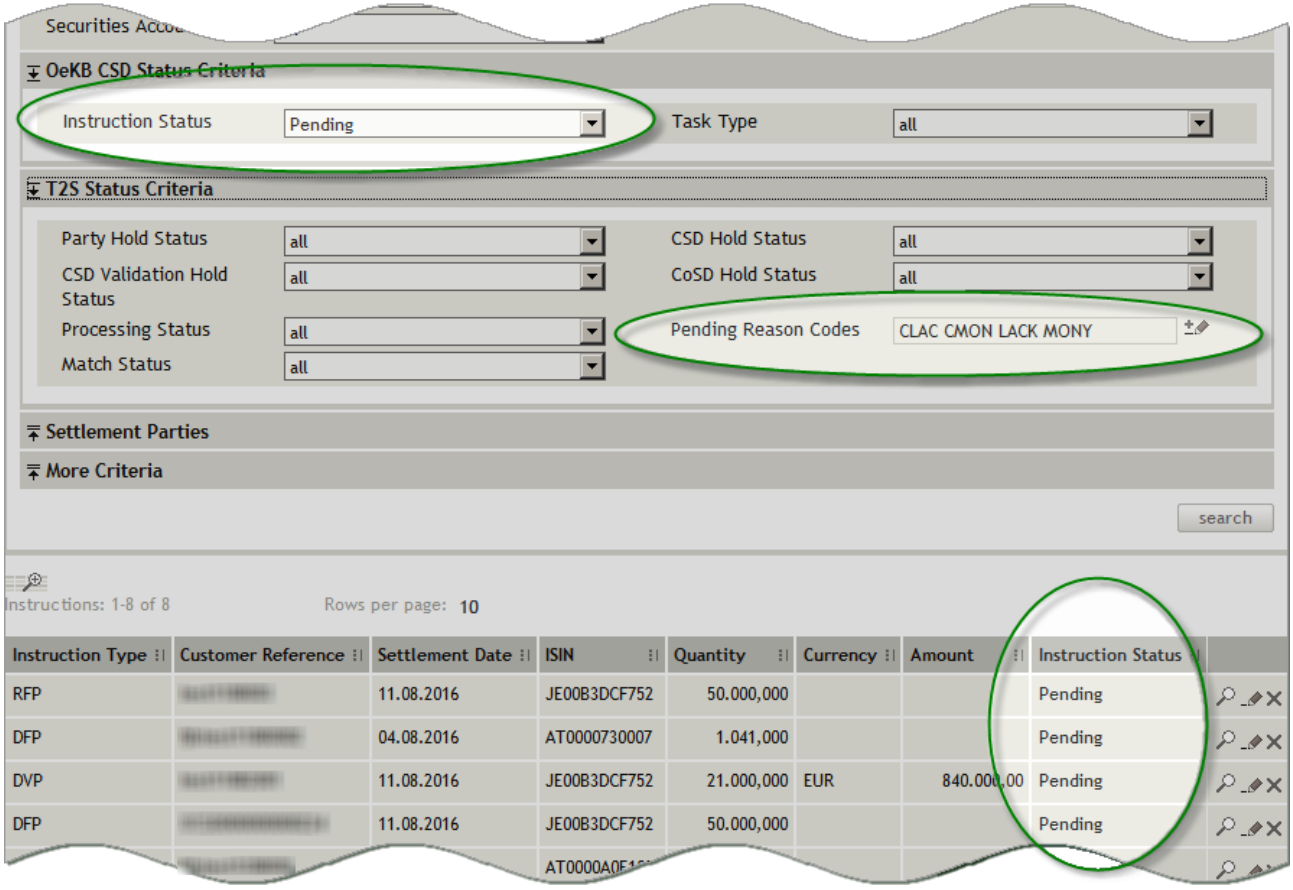


Figure 15: Current alerts to instructions in the search result list (Instruction Alerts)

Alert Reason	Description
Pending	The instruction has status **Pending**, because it could not be settled on the intended settlement date (e.g. due to insufficient securities).
Failing	The instruction has status Failing, because it could not be settled on the intended settlement date after the cut-off (e.g. due to insufficient securities).

How to Process Instructions with Status Pending or Failing

Step by Step

1 You have the following options:

a In the row of the record you want to modify, click on the **Details** icon to open the detail view.
You have the following options:

> NOTE Not all buttons listed below may be available in all detail views.

aa Click on **refresh** to display new real-time data received in the system.

ab Click **edit** to open the **Edit** screen of the record.
(see step b2 ff)

> INFO The system only displays the **edit** button if your user permissions allow you to modify data.

ac Click on **PDF Download** to display and maybe save the record in PDF format.

b1 In the row of the record you want to modify, click on the **Edit** icon to open the **Edit** screen.

> INFO The system only displays the **Edit** icon if your user permissions allow you to modify data.

b2 Edit the entries which caused the status to be **Pending** or **Failing** or take other actions to enable the instruction or restriction to be processed (e. g. necessary coverage on the cash account, external cash settlement, linked instructions or intra-position movements with status Pending in the same pool, etc.).

b3 Click **save** to save your changes.

> INFO If an authorisation according to the 4-eyes principle is required, this record will be listed in the **Tasks waiting for approval** section of the task box until it gets authorised by a releaser.

The changes are saved and submitted to the system for processing or for 4EP authorisation.

b4 Click **ok** to return to the search result list.

c In the row containing the record to be cancelled, click on the **X** icon. The record will be deleted and will no longer be displayed in the search result list.

3.5 Search Functionality and Search Result Lists

3.5.1 Searching for Data in Search Screens

To start searching data use the **search** button in the search screens (see Fields, Buttons and Icons, button "search"). The system then displays all available data below the search screen in the form of a search result list. The search result list offers the following functions:

— Number of search results currently displayed and total number of search results (x-x of xxx)

— Number of search results displayed per page (choice between 10, 25, 50, and 100)

NOTE	The options available to select the number of search results displayed per page depend on the total number of search results.

— Number of pages containing search results (considering the option selected for search results per page)

— Extended list view (extended search results) with additional columns containing more details of the record

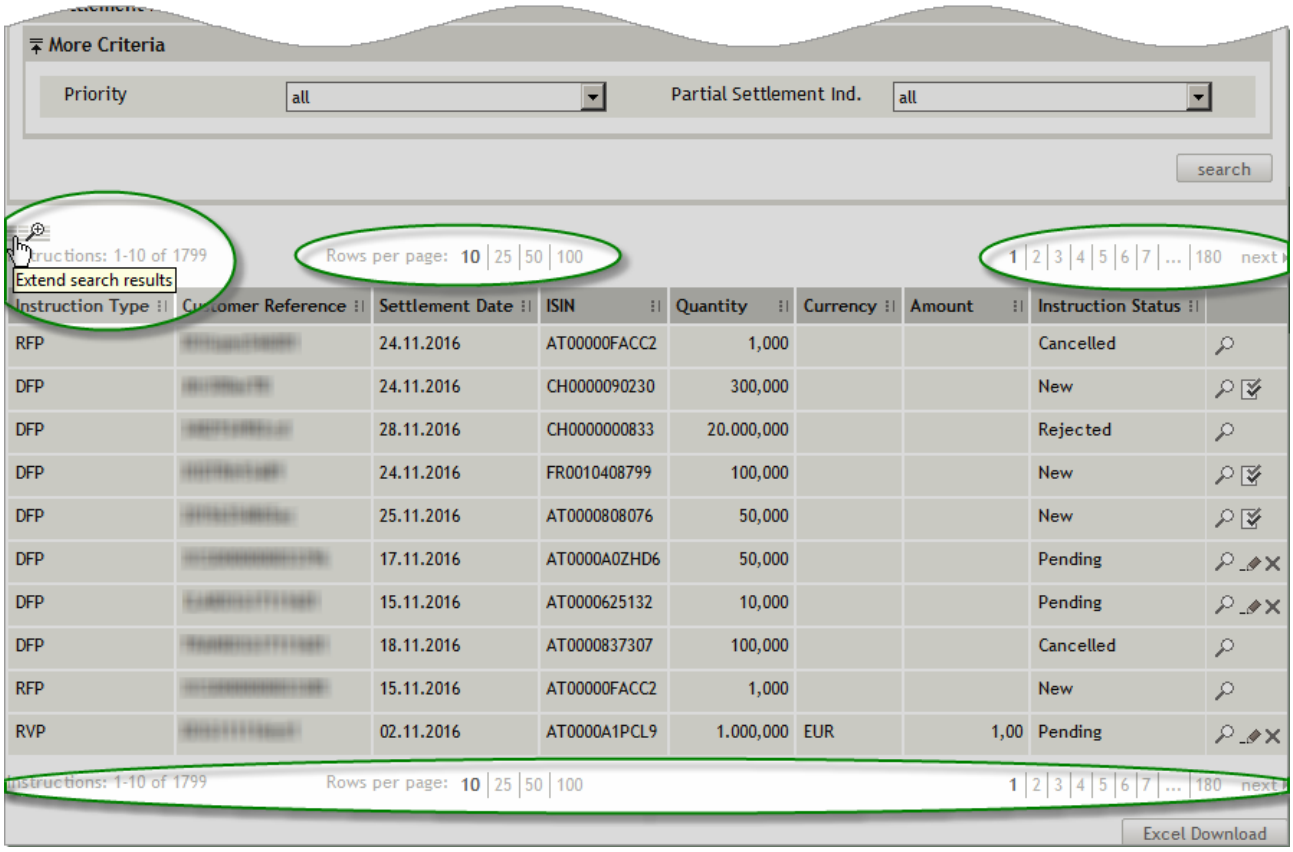


Figure 16: Search result list (example: Search Settlement Instructions)

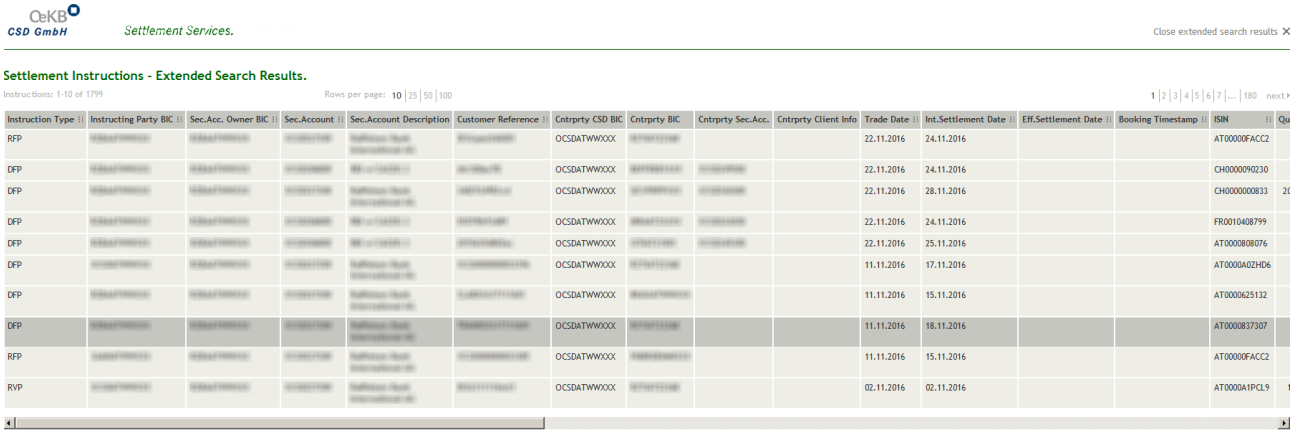


Figure 17: Search result list (extended search results 1 (example: Search Settlement Instructions)

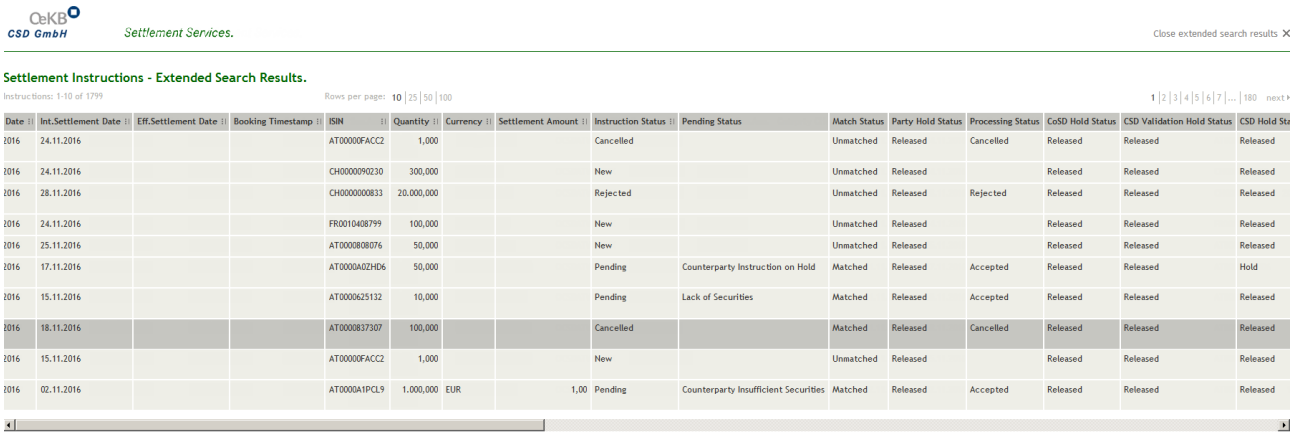


Figure 18: Search result list (extended search results 2 (example: Search Settlement Instructions)

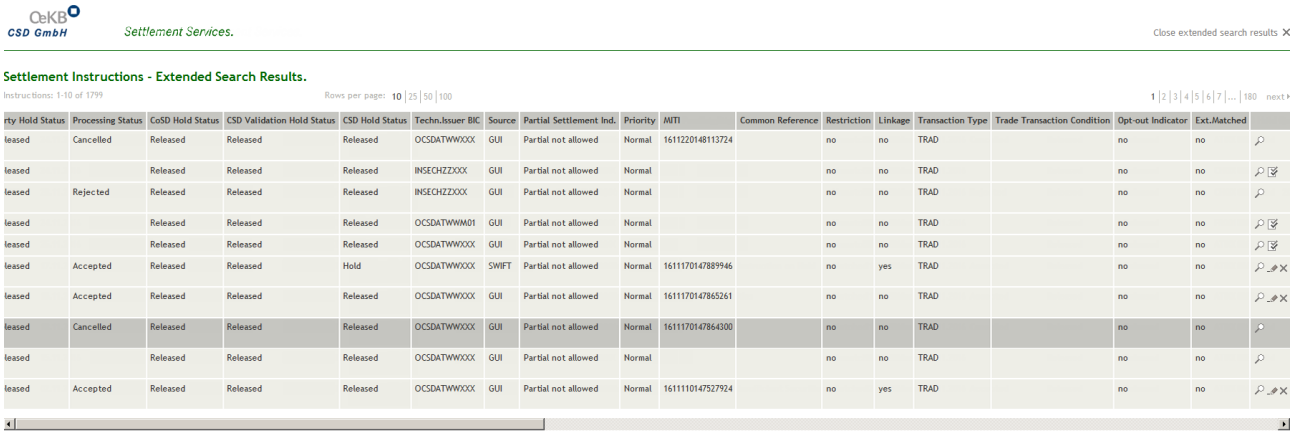


Figure 19: Search result list (extended search result 3 (example: Search Settlement Instructions)

How to Use the Extended Search Results Option of the Search Result List

Step by Step

1 Click on the icon (Extend search results) left above the search result list.
The table is expanded to show all columns available for the current type of record.

2 You have the following options:

a Use the scroll bar at the bottom of your browser window to scroll to the columns further right.

b Use the scroll bar at the bottom of your browser to move the display all the way across to the right to use the processing options available for the individual records in each row (detail view , edit , delete X).

3 Click on the X icon on the top right of the search result list (Close extended search results).
The regular view of the search result list appears again.

3.5.2 Search Templates

The search screens provide an option to define and save customised templates for frequently searched parameters. Search templates are stored user-specific. They will be available for you in the Settlement Client every time you log on with your user name and password.

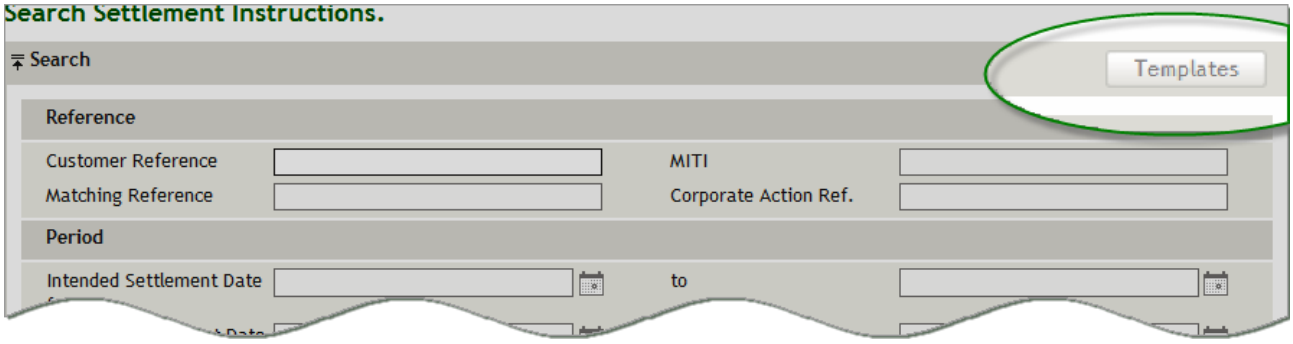


Figure 20: Search template (example: Search Settlement Instructions)

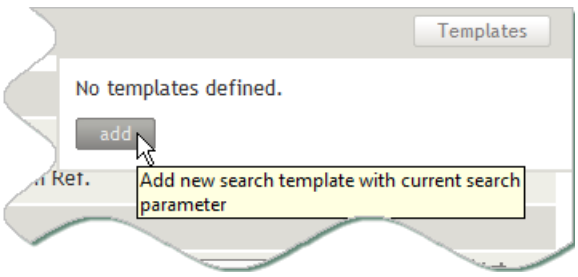


Figure 21: Creating a new search template

3.5.2.1 Creating a Search Template

Step by Step

1. Open the desired search screen.
2. Enter the desired search criteria in the available fields or limit the selections in the fields completed by the system.
3. In the search screen, click on the **Templates** button.
   The Template pop-up dialog appears.
4. Enter a name of your choice for the search template.
5. Click **save** to save your changes.
   The search template is saved with the search criteria you selected and the name of the saved search template will be displayed the next time you open the Template pop-up dialog.

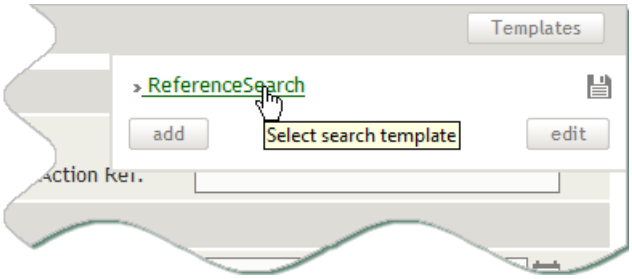


Figure 22: Using a search template

3.5.2.2 Using a Search Template

Step by Step

1. Open the desired search screen.
2. In the search screen, click on the **Templates** button.
   The Template pop-up dialog appears.
3. In the list of available search templates, click on the template you would like to use.
   The system displays the search criteria saved in the template in the search screen.
4. Modify the search criteria if necessary, add more criteria or initiate the search using these criteria.

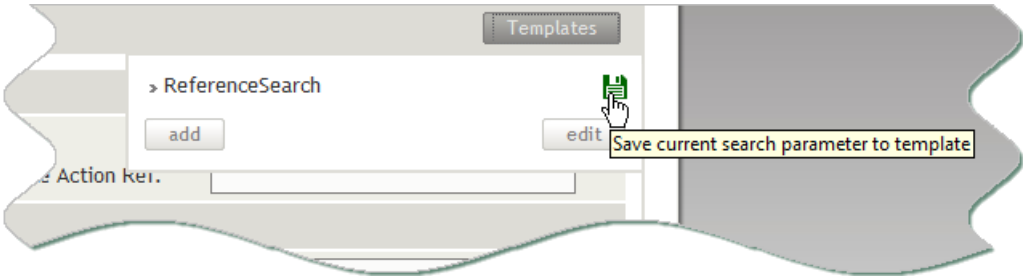


Figure 23: Modifying a search template

3.5.2.3 Modifying a Template

Step by Step

1. Open the desired search screen.
2. In the search screen, click on the **Templates** button.
   The Template pop-up dialog appears.
3. In the list of available search templates, click on the template you would like to use.
   The system displays the search criteria saved in the template in the search screen.
4. Modify the search criteria if necessary or add more criteria.
5. Click on the button to the right of the template name.
   The modified search criteria are saved to the search template.

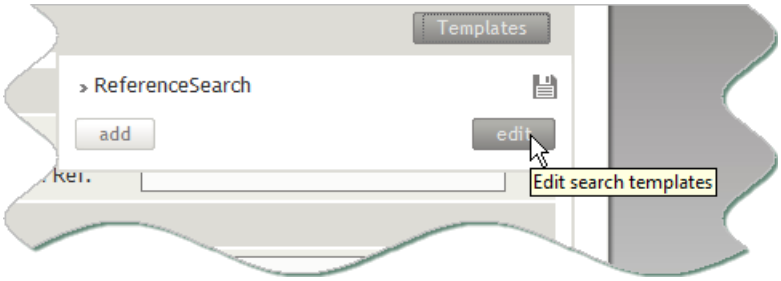


Figure 24: Changing the name of a search template

3.5.2.4 Changing the Name of a Template

Step by Step

1. Open the desired search screen.
2. In the search screen, click on the **Templates** button.
   The Template pop-up dialog appears.
3. Click **edit** in the Template pop-up dialog.
   The names of the existing search templates are displayed as input fields.
4. Modify the name of the search template you would like to change.
5. Click **save** to save your changes.
   The changes are saved and the new name of the saved search template will be displayed the next time you open the Template pop-up dialog.

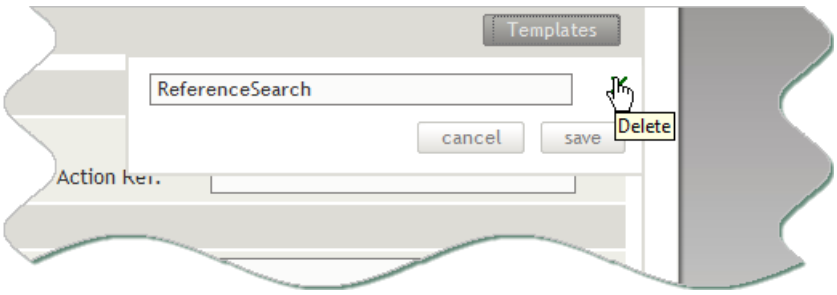


Figure 25: Deleting a search template

3.5.2.5 Deleting a Template

Step by Step

1. In the search screen, click on the **Templates** button.
   The Template pop-up dialog appears.
2. Click **edit** in the Template pop-up dialog.
   The names of the existing search templates are displayed as input fields.
3. In the row containing the search template to be deleted, click on the **X** icon.
4. Click **save** to save your changes.
   The changes are saved and the search template will no longer be available for future searches.

3.6 Data Download (Excel and PDF Download)

In the Settlement Client you can download data from tables in Excel format and data from detail views in PDF format.

3.6.1 Excel Download

In search result lists you can use the button **Excel Download** to open the complete search result list as an Excel file and store it locally on your computer if you like. The data are sorted in the same way as the search result list in the extended view (see extended search results). The download file is opened or saved after you choose the respective option in the Windows system dialog.

INFO	Data download as Excel file is limited to a maximum of 1000 entries.

The Excel download option is available in the following screens:

- Search Settlement Instructions
- Search Physical Instructions
- Search Allegements
- Securities Positions

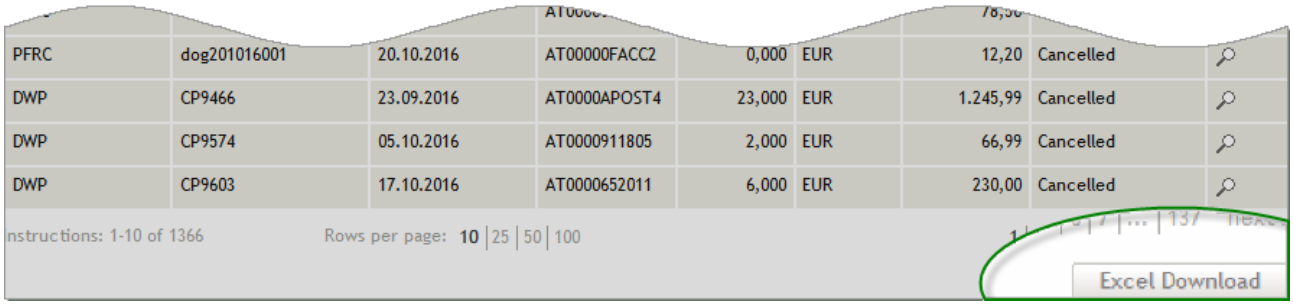


Figure 26: Excel Download - search result list (example: Search Settlemet Instruction)

3.6.2 PDF Download

In detail views you can use the button **PDF Download** to display a report for the currently selected record in PDF format and store it locally on your computer if you like. The download file is opened or saved after you choose the respective option in the Windows system dialog.

The PDF download option is available in the following detail views:

— Settlement Instruction Details

— Allegement Details

— Statement of Holdings

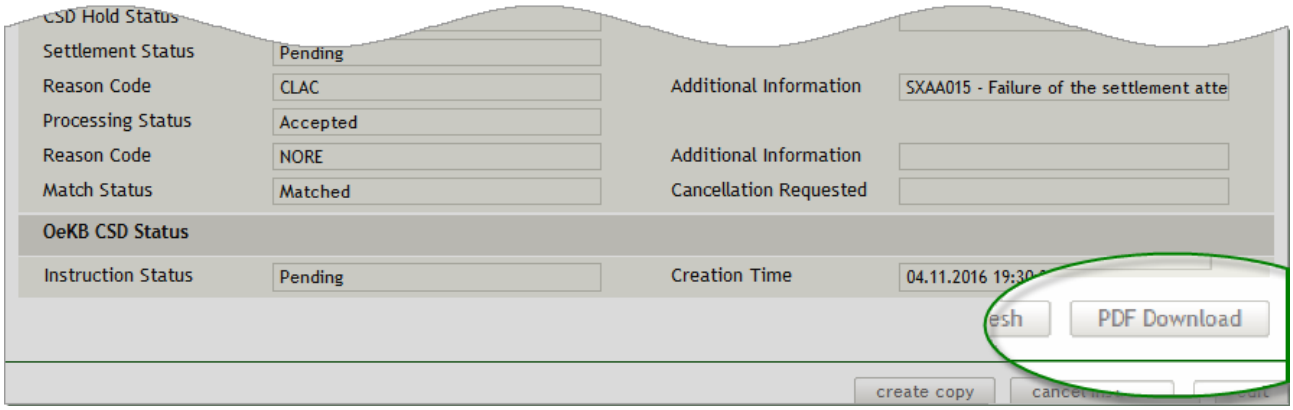


Figure 27: PDF Download - detail view (example: Settlement Instruction Details)

4. Settlement Instructions

Via the menu item *Settlement* you can create new settlement instructions, search for specific settlement instructions in the system, and edit or cancel existing settlement instructions.

4.1 Create Settlement Instruction

How to Open the Create Settlement Instruction Screen

Step by Step

1 In the menu bar, select *Settlement* > *Create Settlement Instruction*.
The **Create Settlement Instruction** screen appears.

Creating a new settlement instruction takes 3 steps. The Settlement Client consecutively takes you through the entry of

— Instruction Details,

— Settlement Parties, and

— Additional Information.

After each step, clicking on the **next** button or on the next step shown in the screen's header and footer (see Icons) takes you to the next input screen where you can enter more data for the instruction. Each time you switch to the next step, the system validates the data entered. Mandatory fields must be filled and the information entered has to comply with validation rules. Fields filled incorrectly or not at all will be highlighted with a note in red typeface underneath.

TIP	By clicking on a previous step or on the **back** button in the header or footer of the screen you can add data to previous input steps.

A detailed description of all fields, their interdependences from one another or from master data settings, and permitted input (e.g. numbers, text, dates, length, etc.) is available in the Field Descriptions table.

The following chapters are a step-by-step descriptions of how to create a new settlement instruction, with instruction type **DVP** - Delivery versus Payment used as example. The Settlement Client offers the following eight instruction types:

— RFP - Receive Free of Payment

— DFP - Delivery Free of Payment

— RVP - Receive versus Payment

— DVP - Delivery versus Payment

— RWP - Receive with Payment

— DWP - Delivery with Payment

— PFRD - Payment Free of Receive Debit
— PFRC - Payment Free of Receive Credit
— PFDD - Payment Free of Delivery Debit
— PFDC - Payment Free of Delivery Credit

TIP	For more detailed background information about the connection to T2S, the securities and cash account structure, and details on intra-CSD, cross-CSD or external-CSD settlement, please refer to *Annex 8 Guideline Settlement and Securities Account Administration*.

The following description and step-by-step guide for creating a new instruction, where the instruction type **DVP** - Delivery versus payment is used as example only, takes into consideration that certain fields are filled in by the system according to master data settings. The step-by-step descriptions therefore only list the fields which usually require user input and hints on fields displayed differently for other instruction types or needing different input than in the case of DVP. A detailed description of all fields, their interdependences from one another or from master data settings, and permitted input (e.g. numbers, text, dates, length, etc.) is available in the Field Descriptions table.

4.1.1 Entering Instruction Details (Example DVP)

Create Settlement Instruction.

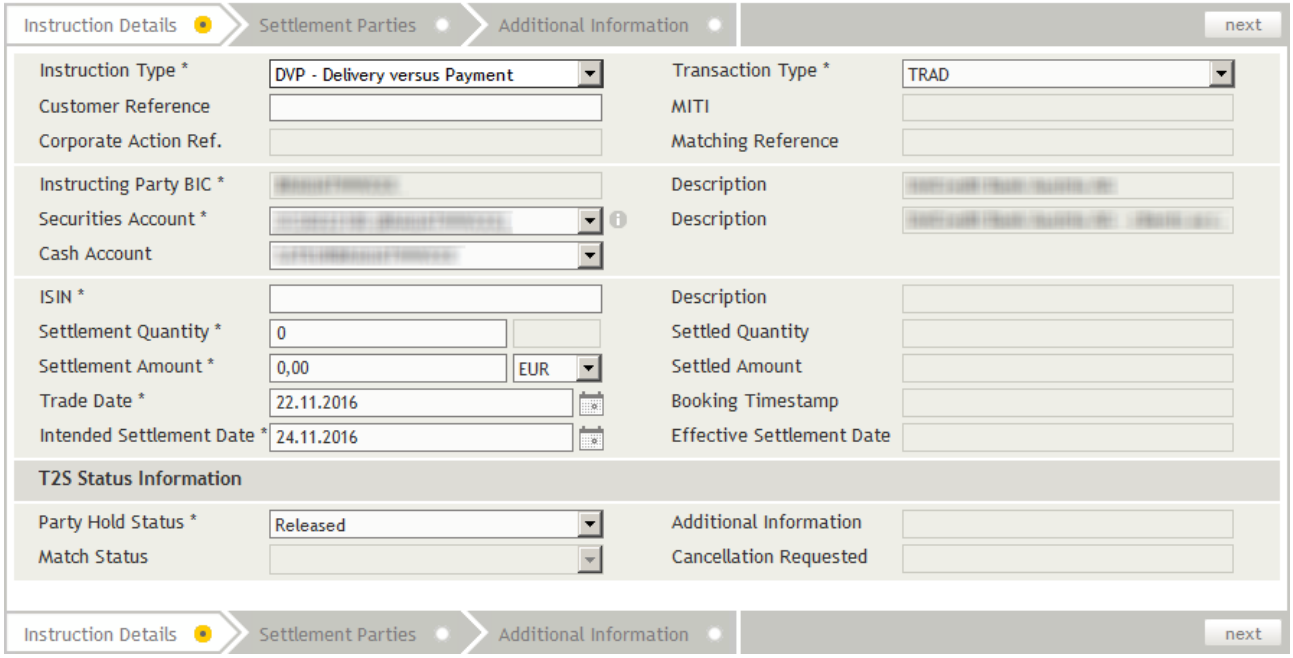


Figure 28: Create Settlement Instruction - Instruction Details (Example DVP - Delivery versus Payment)

How to Enter the Instruction Details of a New Settlement Instruction

Step by Step

1 In the menu bar, select *Settlement* > *Create Settlement Instruction*.

The **Create Settlement Instruction** screen appears.

2 In the field **Instruction Type**, select the instruction type.

The system activates the fields relevant for the selected instruction type and in some fields allocates the appropriate entries available for selection. The system automatically inserts the appropriate predefined values into the fields:

— Transaction Type (= TRAD)

— Instructing Party BIC (= inputting party) incl. Description

— Securities Account (= default securities account of the inputting party) incl. Description

INFO The field **Securities Account** additionally displays the BIC of the securities account holder.

TIP Hover the mouse pointer over the icon ⓘ to have additional information displayed about the securities account. See Fields, Buttons and Icons.

— Cash Account (= default cash account for the settlement amount currency)

INFO The field **Cash Account** is not displayed in the screen for the instruction types Free of Payment (**DFP**, **RFP**).

— Settlement Quantity (0)

INFO For the instruction types Free of Delivery and Free of Receive (PFR Debit, PFR Credit, PFD Debit, PFD Credit), the **Settlement Quantity** field is automatically filled with the value "0" and disabled for input.

— Settlement Amount (0,00)

— Settlement Amount Currency (EUR)

INFO The fields **Settlement Amount**, **Settlement Amount Currency** and **Settled Amount** are not displayed in the screen for the instruction types Free of Payment (**DFP**, **RFP**).

— Trade Date (= current date)

— Intended Settlement Date (= trade date + 2 T2S Opening Days)

— Party Hold Status (as specified in the securities account master data)

You may modify these values wherever necessary. Please note, however, that some fields only allow changes within the limits of the predefined master data. For detailed field descriptions, please refer to chapter Field Descriptions.

NOTE Remember to verify all the fields automatically completed by the system to make sure all details have been entered correctly.

INFO If you do not enter your own reference in the optional **Customer Reference** field, the system will automatically generate a unique reference for identification of the instruction.

3 In the field **ISIN**, enter the desired financial instrument.

In the field **Description**, the system automatically completes the details stored for the selected financial instrument and in the field **Quantity Type** the type of listing.

TIP There is an auto-complete function available in the **ISIN** field: You need only enter the country code; the system will then suggest a list of available ISIN.

TIP Hover the mouse pointer over the icon ⓘ to have additional information displayed about the ISIN. See Fields, Buttons and Icons.

4 In the field **Settlement Quantity**, enter the desired quantity or nominal value (greater than 0).

INFO For the instruction types Free of Delivery and Free of Receive (PFR Debit, PFR Credit, PFD Debit, PFD Credit), the **Settlement Quantity** field is automatically filled with the value "0" and disabled for input.

5 In the field **Settlement Amount**, enter the desired amount.

NOTE For the instruction types with Payment and versus Payment (**RWP**, **DWP**, **RVP**, **DVP**), and for the payment instruction types (**PFRD**, **PRFC**, **PFDD**, **PFDC**) the field **Settlement Amount** becomes a mandatory field.

INFO The default currency of the **Settlement Amount** is set to EUR (Euro).

INFO The fields **Settlement Amount** and **Settlement Amount Currency** are not displayed in the screen for the instruction types Free of Payment (**DFP**, **RFP**).

INFO The **Trade Date** field is automatically filled with the current date; the **Intended Settlement Date** field is automatically filled with the date of the first T2S Opening Day after the next T2S Opening Day (Trade Date + 2 T2S Opening Days). You may modify these dates if required.

TIP Saturdays, Sundays, and no T2S Opening Days as listed in the General Terms and Conditions of the OeKB CSD are not T2S Opening Days and are not accepted by the system during the validation of date fields. A corresponding notification is displayed in the screen.

6 Click **next** or click on the next step in the screen's header or footer.

The **Settlement Parties** page appears.

4.1.2 Entering Settlement Parties (Example DVP)

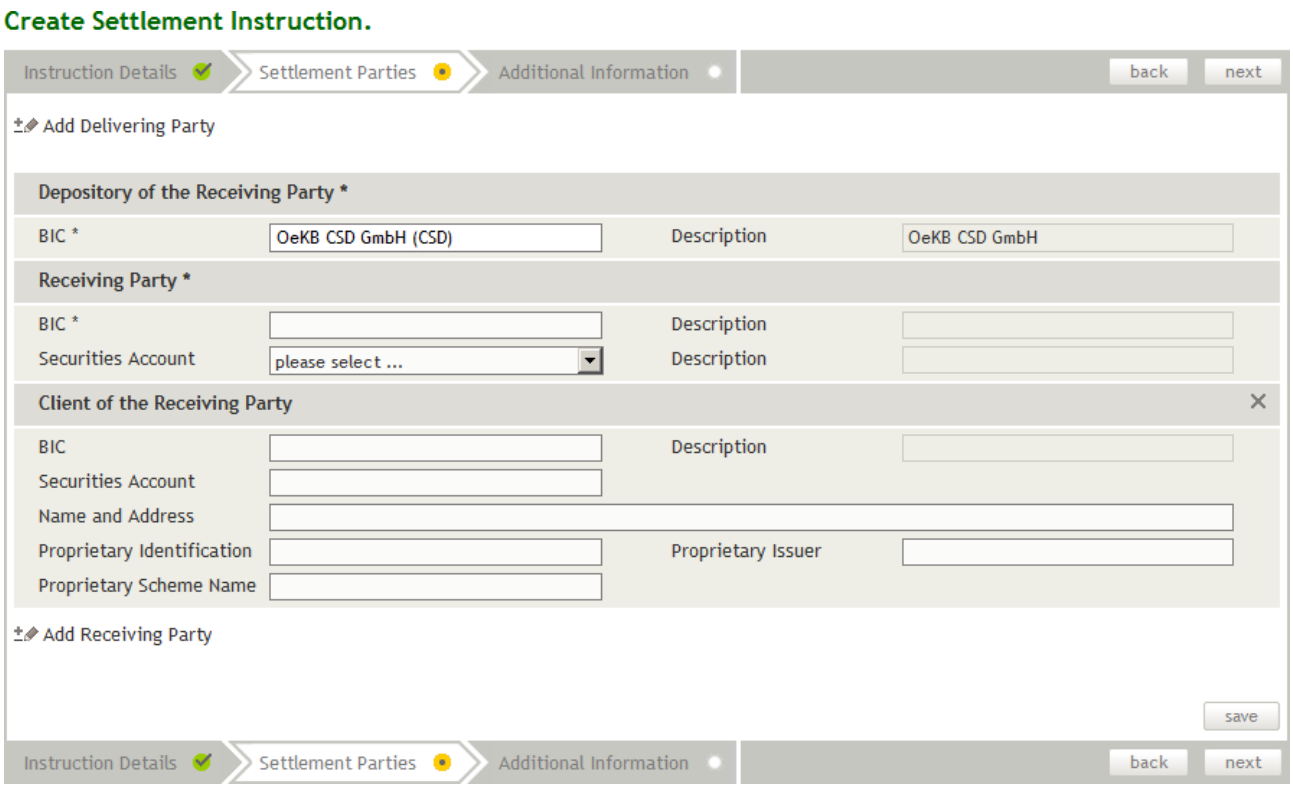


Figure 29: Create Setllement Instruction - Setllement Parties (Example DVP - Delivery versus Payment)

How to Enter the Settlement Parties of a New Settlement Instruction

Step by Step

In the step **Settlement Parties** the system completes the following fields:

— **BIC** (Depository of the Delivering/Receiving Party) incl. Description (= OCSDATWWXXX)

> TIP The **BIC (Depository of the Delivering/Receiving Party)** field may be used to enter the CSD of the counterparty, e.g. in the case of cross-CSD settlement.

1 In the field **BIC (Delivering/Receiving Party)**, enter the BIC of the CSD participant.

NOTE	If required, complete the optional fields in the **Client of the Delivering/Receiving Party** section or add more parties in the hidden screen sections **Add Receiving Party** or **Add Delivering Party**. Please refer to chapter Field Descriptions for more details on the individual fields. If filled, some optionals fields become matching criteria. For details please refer to *Annex 8 Guideline Settlement and Securities Account Administration*.

INFO	The **BIC (Delivering/Receiving Party)** field shows the BIC of the instruction's counterparty. For Delivery instruction types and for PFD/PFR Credit, the system expects input of the BIC of the receiving party (receiving party of the payment in case of PFDC/PFRC), for Receive instruction types and for PFD/PFR Debit, input of the BIC of the delivering party (delivering party of the payment in case of PFDD/PFRD).

TIP	If you want to remove a party you have added, click on the **X icon** at the top right of the additional screen section. You can remove the added parties one by one, starting with the one that was added last.

2 You have the following options:

a Click **next** or click on the next step in the screen's header or footer.
The **Additional Information** page appears.

b1 Click **save** to save the instruction.

INFO	If an authorisation according to the 4-eyes principle is required, this record will be listed in the **Tasks waiting for approval** section of the task box until it gets authorised by a releaser.

The instruction is saved and submitted to the system for processing or for 4EP authorisation. The system displays the **Settlement Instruction Summary**, where you can verify the data you have entered. The screen includes the Instruction History and the Status History in separate tabs.

b2 Click **ok** in the **Settlement Instruction Summary** to confirm your entries.
The entry page appears.

4.1.3 Entering Additional Information (Example DVP)

Create Settlement Instruction.

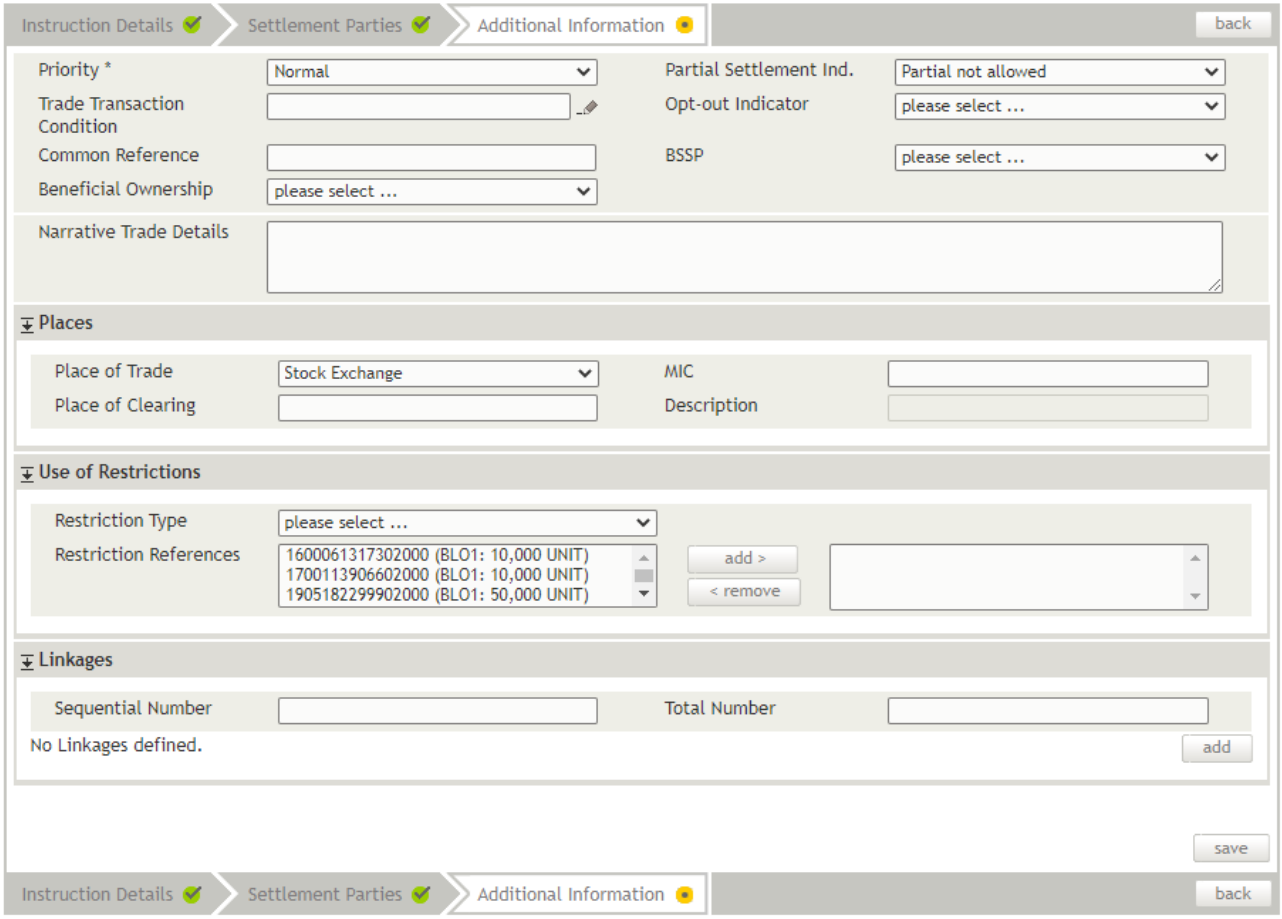


Figure 30: Create Settlement Instruction - Additional information (Example DVP - Delivery versus Payment)

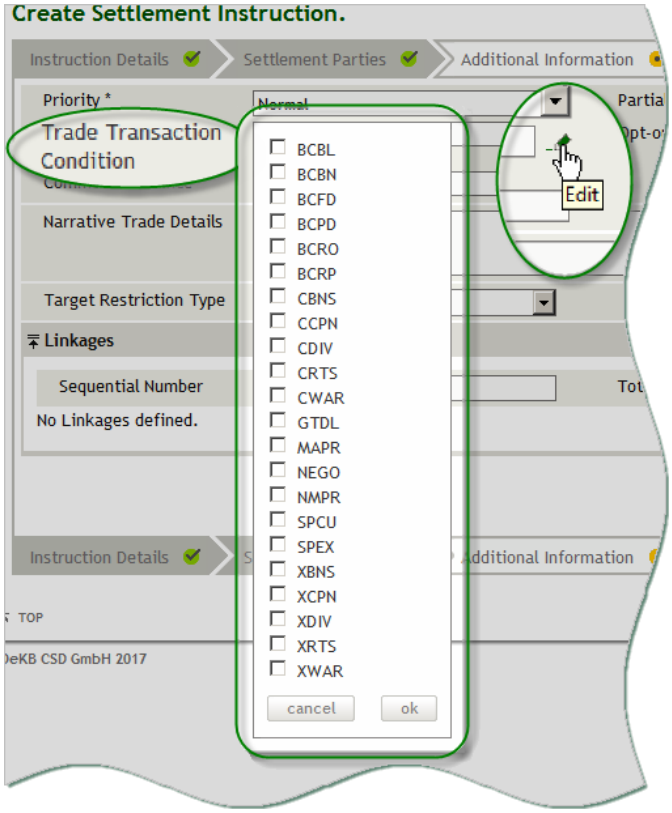


Figure 31: Create Settlement Instruction, Trade Transaction Condition - Additional Information (pop-up dialog)

How to Enter Additional Information of a New Settlement Instruction

Step by Step

In the step **Additional Information** the system completes the following fields:

— Priority (= Normal)

— Partial Settlement Indicator (as specified in the securities account master data)

TIP	**Use of Restrictions / Target Restriction Type**: Here you can assign **Restriction References** (i.e. positions previously blocked, reserved or earmarked by intra-position movements) that will be used to settle the instruction. For details on restrictions, please refer to the chapters Entering Restrictions for Delivery Instructions and Entering Restrictions for Receive Instructions.

INFO	Restrictions are not available for payment-only instructions (PFRD, PFRC, PFDD, PFCC).

TIP	**Linkages**: Here you can define **Linkages** (i.e. connections with other instructions or restrictions) that shall apply to an instruction. To do so, click on the function link **Linkages**. This opens a drop-down screen section, where you can fill in the corresponding fields. For more information on linkages, please refer to chapter Entering Linkages for an Instruction.

1 Click **save** to save the instruction.

INFO	If an authorisation according to the 4-eyes principle is required, this record will be listed in the **Tasks waiting for approval** section of the task box until it gets authorised by a releaser.

The instruction is saved and submitted to the system for processing or for 4EP authorisation. The system displays the **Settlement Instruction Summary**, where you can verify the data you have entered. The screen includes the Instruction History and the Status History in separate tabs.

2 Click **ok** in the **Settlement Instruction Summary** to confirm your entries.
The entry page appears.

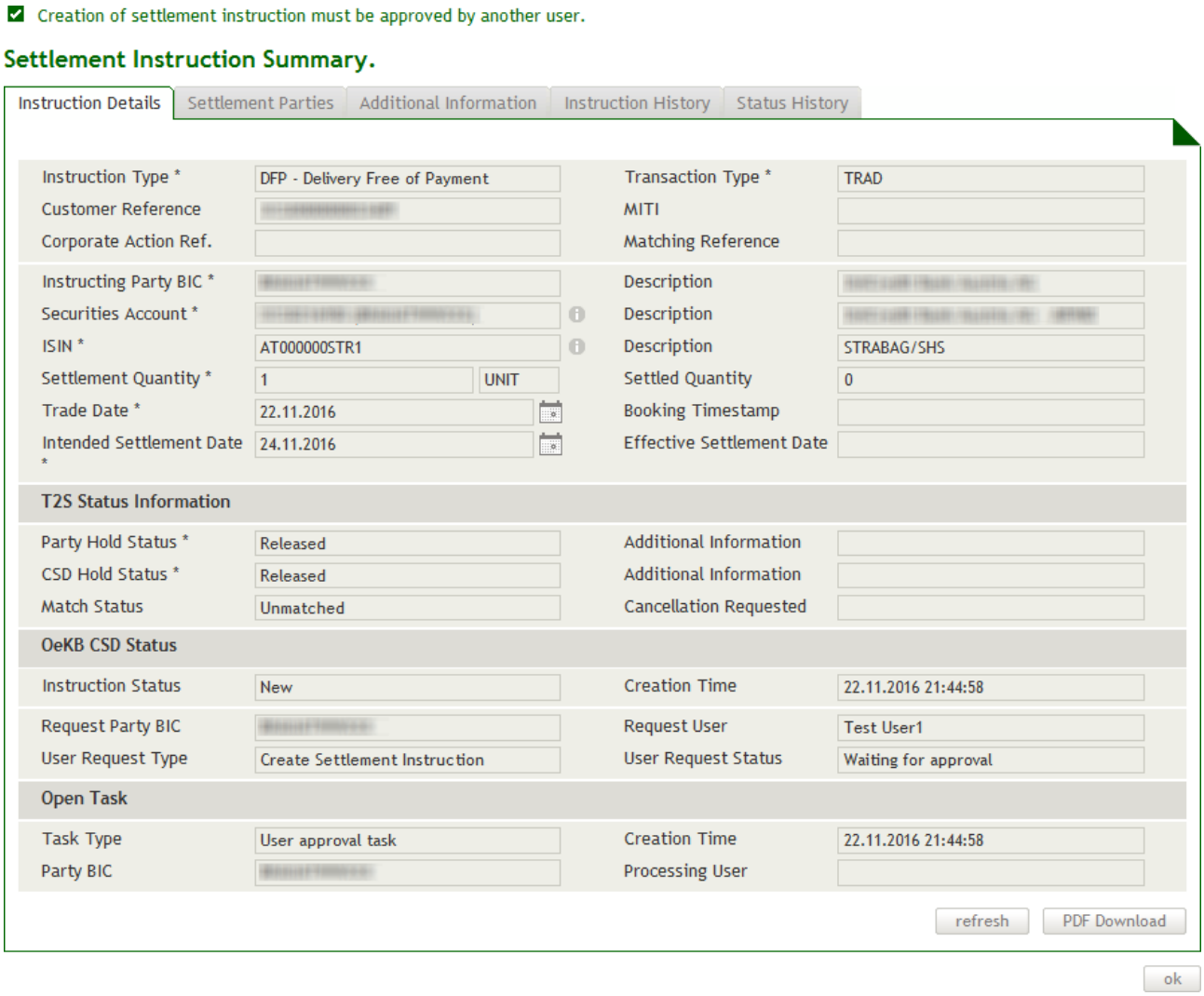


Figure 32: Settlement Instruction Summary, page 1 (example DPF with 4EP authorisation)

4.1.4 Place of Trade and Place of Clearing for an Instruction

It is possible to add the 'Place of Trade' and the 'Place of Clearing' to an instruction. Entering places is possible during the step **Additional Information** when creating a new settlement instruction. Places are defined in the drop-down screen section **Places**. The Place of Trade can be selected from a variety of options in a drop-down menu. The Place of Clearing has to be a 11-digit BIC. If "Stock Exchange" has been selected, it is also possible to enter the MIC code.

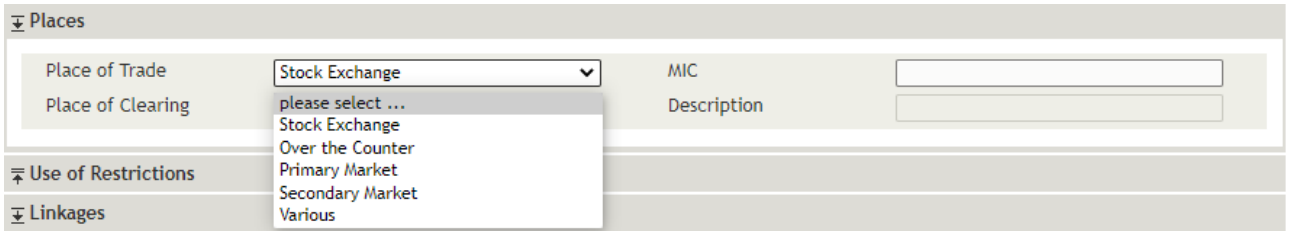


Figure 33: Use of Restrictions - function link (Create Settlement Instruction - Additional Information, delivery istructions)

4.1.5 Entering Restrictions for Delivery Instructions

It is possible to assign previously blocked or reserved positions when creating a new or editing an existing delivery instruction. Exactly these positions will then be used to settle the instruction. For details on how to block and reserve positions, please refer to Create Intra-Position Movement.

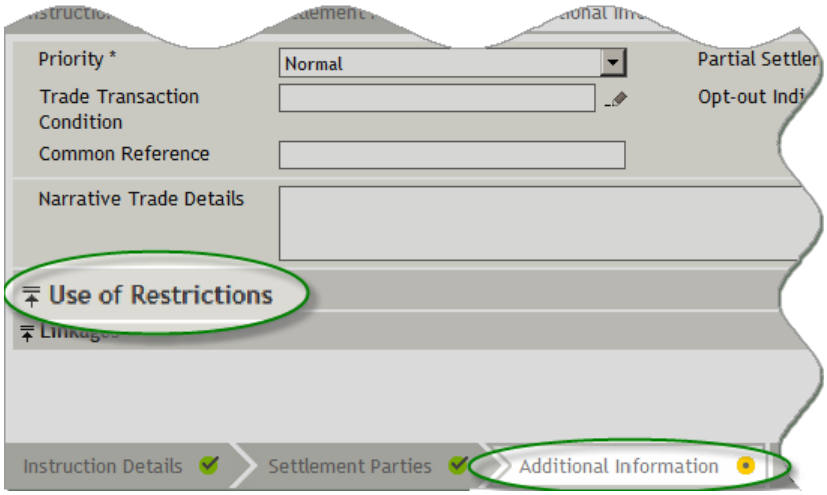


Figure 34: Use of Restrictions - function link (Create Settlement Instruction - Additional Information, delivery instructions)

Figure 35: Restrictions for a delivery instruction (drop-down screen section)

4.1.5.1 Assigning Restrictions (blocked or reserved positions) to a Delivery Instruction

You can use certain positions to settle an instruction if they have been defined earlier.

NOTE Restrictions can only be used for an instruction if the necessary restrictions have been created in the form of intra-position movements before. For details see Create Intra-Position Movements.

How to Assign a Blocked or Reserved Position to a Delivery Instruction

Step by Step

1 In step 3, **Additional Information**, of the **Create Settlement Instruction** screen, open the drop-down screen section **Restrictions** (see fig. **Fehler! Verweisquelle konnte nicht gefunden werden.**).
To do so, click on the **Use of Restrictions** function link.
The drop-down screen section **Use of Restrictions** appears (see fig. **Fehler! Verweisquelle konnte nicht gefunden werden.**).

2 In the field **Restriction Type**, select the type of restriction.
The field **Restriction References (left-hand)** lists the references of all restriction of the selected type previously entered, including the quantity available in the respective restriction.

3 Click on the reference of the restriction which you want to assign to the instruction.

4 Click on the **add >** button.
The reference of the selected restriction is assigned and displayed in the right-hand side **Restriction References** field.

TIP	If you have assigned a restriction reference in error, use the **< remove** button to move the reference back from the right-hand side to the left-hand side **Restriction References** field.
TIP	It is possible to assign more than one blocked or reserved positions of different types to one instruction.

5 Continue entering the settlement instruction.

4.1.6 Entering Restrictions for Receive Instructions

It is possible to assign previously earmarked positions when creating a new or editing an existing receive instruction. The securities received with the instruction are immediately assigned to these securities positions. For details on how to earmark positions, please refer to Create Intra-Position Movement.

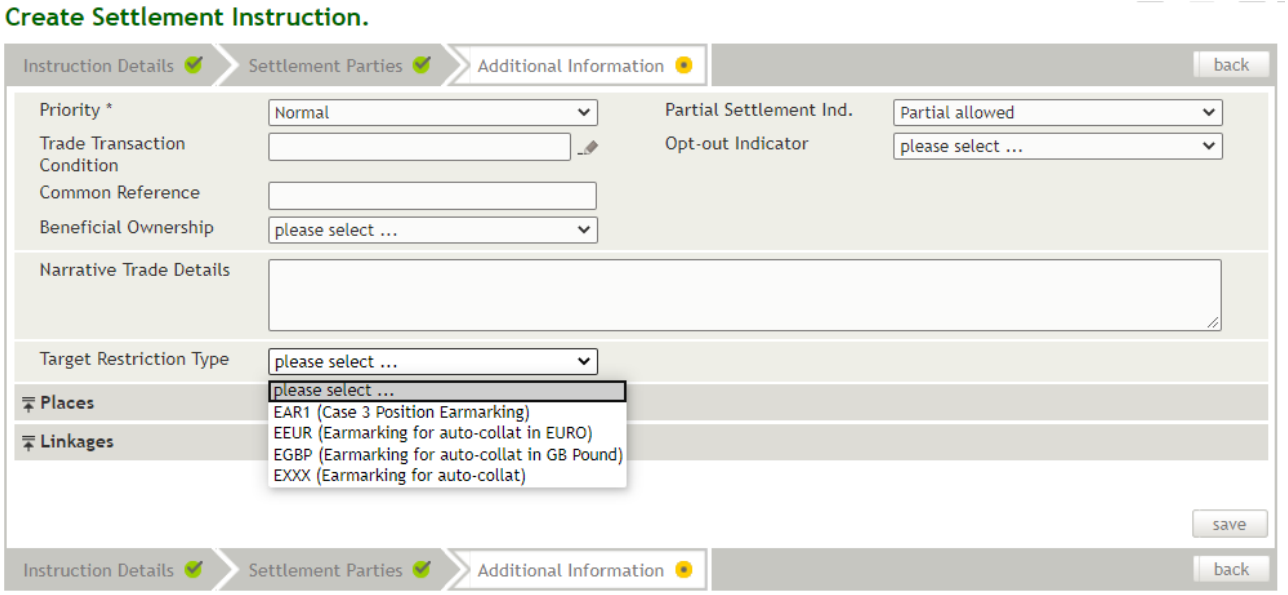


Figure 36: Target Restriction Type - dropdown field (Create Settlement Instruction - Additional Information, receive instructions)

4.1.6.1 Using Restrictions (earmarked positions) for a Receive Instruction

You can use certain positions to allocate an instruction's securities if they have been defined earlier.

NOTE Restrictions can only be used to allocate an instruction's securities if the necessary restrictions have been created in the form of intra-position movements before. For details see Create Intra-Position Movements.

How to Allocate the Securities of a Receive Instruction to an Earmarked Position

Step by Step

1. In step 3, **Additional Information**, of the **Create Settlement Instruction** screen, open the dropdown field **Target Restriction Type** (see fig. **Fehler! Verweisquelle konnte nicht gefunden werden.**) to select the type of restriction.
2. Click on the reference of the restriction to which you want to allocate the securities received in the instruction.
3. Continue entering the settlement instruction.

4.1.7 Entering Linkages for an Instruction (Example DVP)

It is possible to connect two or more instructions by means of so-called **linkages**. Entering linkages is possible during the step **Additional Information** when creating a new or editing an existing settlement instruction. Linkages are defined in the drop-down screen section **Linkages**. The following instructions can be linked:

— Two or more instructions

— Two or more intra-position movements

— Instructions with intra-position movements

NOTE It is not possible to link instructions where the counterparty is the client of an external depository.

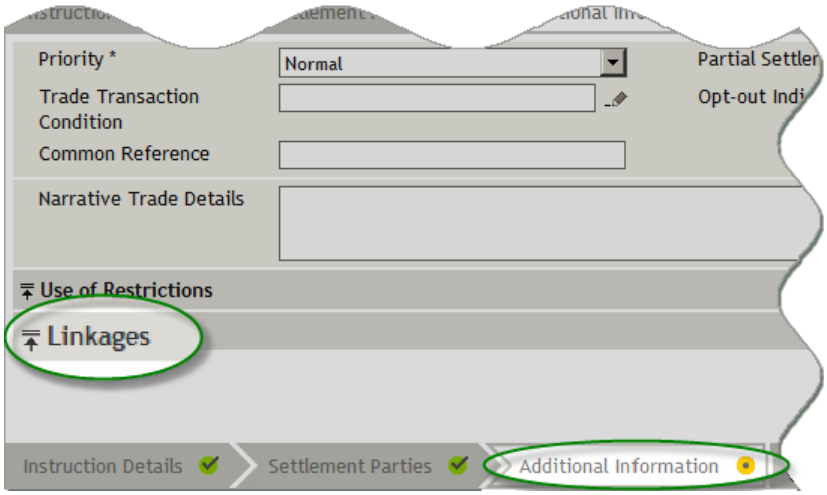


Figure 37: Function link Linkages (Create Settlement Instrcution - Additional Information)

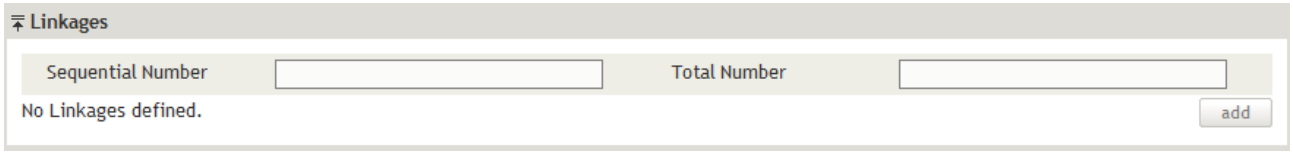


Figure 38: Linkage for an instruction (drop-down screen section)

The linkage details can be entered in a pop-up dialog, which opens as soon as you click on the **add** button.

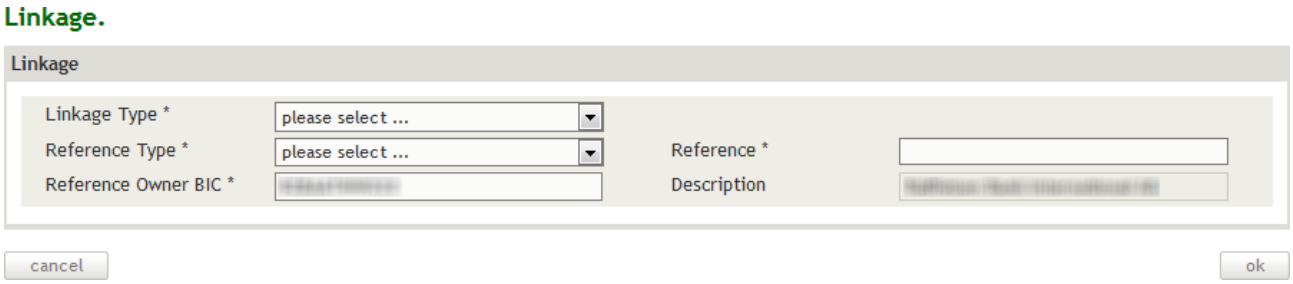


Figure 39: Linkage for an instruction (pop-up dialog)

4.1.7.1 Entering Linkages Between Two Instructions (Position Linkage)

There are three ways to connect two instructions by means of a linkage (**Linkage Type**):

— **After**: The newly created instruction will be settled after or at the same time as the linked to instruction.

— **Before**: The newly created instruction will be settled before or at the same time as the linked to instruction.

— **With**: The newly created instruction will be settled at the same time as the linked to instruction.

NOTE	Instructions with linkages cannot be settled partially.

INFO	As an additional option, you can use the **Linkage Type Information** to connect two or more instructions. This linkage type serves information purposes only. Partial settlement is permitted for linkages of the type **Information**. The system automatically generates linkages of the type **Information** for instructions related to auto-collateralisation.

TIP	With the corresponding linkage types assigned, you can create sequences of instructions which will be settled one after the other, depending on the order specified by the linkages.

How to Enter a Position Linkage Between Two Instructions

Step by Step

1. In step 3, **Additional Information**, of the **Create Settlement Instruction** screen, open the drop-down screen section **Linkages**.
   To do so, click on the **Linkages** function link. (see fig. **Fehler! Verweisquelle konnte nicht gefunden werden.**)
   The drop-down screen section **Linkages** appears (see fig. **Fehler! Verweisquelle konnte nicht gefunden werden.**).
2. Click on the **add** button.
   The pop-up dialog **Linkage** appears (see fig. **Fehler! Verweisquelle konnte nicht gefunden werden.**).
3. In the field **Linkage Type**, select the type of linkage **After**, **Before** or **With**.
4. In the field **Reference Type**, select the type of reference **Customer Reference** or **MITI**.
5. In the field **Reference**, enter the corresponding customer reference or the Market Infrastructure Transaction Identifier (MITI) of the instruction or restriction with which you want to connect the newly created instruction.
6. Click **ok** in the **Linkage** pop-up dialog to return to the Create Settlement Instruction screen.
7. Continue entering the settlement instruction.

4.1.7.2 Entering Linkages Between Several Instructions (Pool Linkage)

It is possible to link several instructions which have to be settled concurrently. To do so, use the reference type **Pool** in the **Linkages** pop-up dialog to create the linkage.

NOTE	In the case of linkages with the Pool reference type instructions or restrictions with an identical pool reference are settled either all at once or none. If one of the instructions or restrictions within a pool fails to be settled, all other instructions and restrictions in the pool are not settled as well and receive an appropriate Pending status.

How to Enter a Pool Linkage Between Several Instructions

Step by Step

1 In step 3, **Additional Information**, of the **Create Settlement Instruction** screen, open the drop-down screen section **Linkages**.
To do so, click on the **Linkages** function link. (see fig. **Fehler! Verweisquelle konnte nicht gefunden werden.**)
The drop-down screen section **Linkages** appears (see fig. **Fehler! Verweisquelle konnte nicht gefunden werden.**).

2 Click on the **add** button.
The pop-up dialog **Linkage** appears (see fig. **Fehler! Verweisquelle konnte nicht gefunden werden.**).

3 In the field **Linkage Type**, select the type of linkage **With**.

NOTE Pool linkages only allow the selection **With** in the field **Linkage Type**.

4 In the field **Reference Type**, select the type of reference **Pool ID**.

5 In the field **Reference**, enter the common pool reference all instructions and restrictions in the pool shall share.

6 Click **ok** in the **Linkage** pop-up dialog to return to the Create Settlement Instruction screen.

7 In the field **Sequential Number**, enter the current consecutive number of this instruction or restriction within the pool.

8 In the field **Total Number**, enter the total number of all instructions and restrictions linked with one another in the pool.

9 Continue entering the settlement instruction.

4.1.7.3 Entering a Linkage Between an Instruction and an Intra-Position Movement (Position Linkage)

There are three ways to connect an instruction with an intra-position movement by means of a position linkage (Linkage Type):

— **After**: The newly created instruction will be settled after or at the same time as the linked to intra-position movement.

— **Before**: The newly created instruction will be settled before or at the same time as the linked to intra-position movement.

— **With**: The newly created instruction will be settled at the same time as the linked to intra-position movement.

NOTE Instructions with linkages cannot be settled partially.

How to Enter a Position Linkage Between an Instruction and an Intra-Position Movement

Step by Step

1 In step 3, **Additional Information**, of the **Create Settlement Instruction** screen, open the drop-down screen section **Linkages**.
To do so, click on the **Linkages** function link. (see fig. **Fehler! Verweisquelle konnte nicht gefunden werden.**)
The drop-down screen section **Linkages** appears (see fig. **Fehler! Verweisquelle konnte nicht gefunden werden.**).

2 Click on the **add** button.
The pop-up dialog **Linkage** appears (see fig. **Fehler! Verweisquelle konnte nicht gefunden werden.**).

3 In the field **Linkage Type**, select the type of linkage **After**, **Before** or **With**.

4 In the field **Reference Type**, select the type of reference **Sub Balance Reference**.

5 In the field **Reference**, enter the restriction reference of the intra-position movement with which you want to connect the newly created instruction.

6 Click **ok** in the **Linkage** pop-up dialog to return to the Create Settlement Instruction screen.

7 Continue entering the settlement instruction.

4.1.8 Field Descriptions (Create Settlement Instruction)

The description of the fields in the **Create Settlement Instruction** screen is sectioned in three parts, i.e. the three steps:

— Instruction Details,
— Settlement Parties, and
— Additional Information

INFO	The **Create Settlement Instruction** screen is used as **Edit** and **Review Settlement Instruction** screen (when modifying or releasing an instruction, respectively) and as **Settlement Instruction Detail** screen (when displaying an instruction) with exactly the same appearance. Field values or entries which differ between these variants of the screen are listed with the descriptions of the respective fields further below.

4.1.8.1 Instruction Details (Step 1)

Field	Instruction Type	Content (by system)	Entry (by user)	Length
Instruction Type **Mandatory field during Create**	-	Create Input request 'please select ...'	Selection from the list: — **RFP** - Receive Free of Payment — **DFP** - Delivery Free of Payment — **RVP** - Receive versus Payment — **DVP** - Delivery versus Payment — **RWP** - Receive with Payment — **DWP** - Delivery with Payment — **PFRD** - Payment Free of Receive Debit — **PFRC** - Payment Free of Receive Credit — **PFDD** - Payment Free of Delivery Debit — **PFDC** - Payment Free of Delivery Credit	-
		Edit / Detail View The instruction type selected during creation	-	
Transaction Type **Mandatory field during Create (automatically completed by the system)**	All	Create: **TRAD** - Trade (Standard Settlement Instruction)	Selection from the list **TIP** The system already fills in the standard transaction type for settlement instructions **TRAD**. Additional transaction types are supported.	-
		Edit / Detail View: The transaction type selected during creation		
Customer Reference	All	Create: If left empty by the user, the system will generate a unique reference	Own reference	16 max alphanum.

Field	Instruction Type	Content (by system)	Entry (by user)	Length
		Edit / Detail View: The customer reference of the instruction	-	
MITI	All	Create: -	-	-
		Edit / Detail View: The unique Market Infrastructure Transaction Identifier automatically assigned as soon as the instruction has been accepted by the system		
Corporate Action Reference	All	Create: -	-	-
		Edit / Detail View: Reference of the corporate action associated with the instruction		
Matching Reference	All	Create: -	-	-
		Edit / Detail View: Reference assigned by T2S after matching		
Instructing Party BIC **Mandatory field during Create (automatically completed by the system)**	All	BIC of the inputting party	-	BIC11
[Instructing Party BIC] Description	All	The designation of the instructing party	-	-
Securities Account	All	Create: The securities account defined as the default	Selection from the securities accounts available for the instructing party	-

Field	Instruction Type	Content (by system)	Entry (by user)	Length
Mandatory field during Create			INFO In addition to the securities account number this field shows the BIC of the securities account holder. TIP Hover the mouse pointer over the icon to have additional information displayed about the securities account. See Fields, Buttons and Icons.	
		Edit / Detail View: The securities account selected during creation	-	
[Securities Account] Description	All	The designation of the selected securities account	-	-
Cash Account	— **RVP** - Receive versus Payment — **DVP** - Delivery versus Payment — **RWP** - Receive with Payment — **DWP** - Delivery with Payment — **PFRD** - Payment Free of Receive Debit — **PFRC** - Payment Free of Receive Credit	The cash account defined as the default for the currency selected in the **Settlement Amount Currency** field	Create: Selection from the cash accounts available for the instructing party Edit / Detail View: -	-

Field	Instruction Type	Content (by system)	Entry (by user)	Length
	— **PFDD** - Payment Free of Delivery Debit — **PFDC** - Payment Free of Delivery Credit			
	— **RFP** - Receive Free of Payment — **DFP** - Delivery Free of Payment	This field is not displayed in the screen for the instruction types Free of Payment (**DFP**, **RFP**).		
ISIN **Mandatory field during Create**	All	Create: **Auto-Complete**: After input of the country code the system suggests a list of ISIN.	Country code, then selection from the suggested list **TIP** Hover the mouse pointer over the icon to have additional information displayed about the ISIN. See Fields, Buttons and Icons.	12 alphanum.
		Edit / Detail View: The ISIN selected during creation	-	
[ISIN] Description	All	The designation of the financial instrument	-	-
Settlement Quantity	— **RVP** - Receive versus Payment	Create: 0	Quantity or nominal value of the financial instrument A value greater than zero	Decimal number

Field	Instruction Type	Content (by system)	Entry (by user)	Length
Mandatory field during Create	— **DVP** - Delivery versus Payment — **RWP** - Receive with Payment — **DWP** - Delivery with Payment — **RFP** - Receive Free of Payment — **DFP** - Delivery Free of Payment	Edit / Detail View: The nominal value / quantity selected during creation	-	
	— **PFRD** - Payment Free of Receive Debit — **PFRC** - Payment Free of Receive Credit — **PFDD** - Payment Free of Delivery Debit — **PFDC** - Payment Free of Delivery Credit	0	- INFO For the instruction types Free of Delivery and Free of Receive (PFR Debit, PFR Credit, PFD Debit, PFD Credit), this field is automatically filled with the value "0" and disabled for input.	-
[Quantity Type]	All	After ISIN input or selection: — **FAMT** - for financial instruments with a price as percentage of par (face amount) — **UNIT** - for financial instruments with a price per unit	-	-

Field	Instruction Type	Content (by system)	Entry (by user)	Length
Settled Quantity	All	Create: - Edit / Detail View: 0 or in case of settled instructions the settled quantity or the settled nominal value of the financial instruments	-	-
Released Quantity	All	Create: -		-
		Edit / Detail View: The Released Quantity can be changed when editing a deliver instruction, provided that the instruction is on hold and the Partial Settlement Indicator is "Partially allowed" for both instructions 0 or the released but not yet processed number of pieces for instructed partial release instructions		
Hold Quantity	All	Create: -		-
		Edit / Detail View: Displays the remaining settlement quantity for an instructed partial release, which is still on hold. 0 or in case of an instructed partial release instruction the quantity which is still on hold		
Settlement Amount		Create 0.00	Cash value of the transaction A value greater than zero	Decimal number

Field	Instruction Type	Content (by system)	Entry (by user)	Length
Mandatory field during Create	— **RVP** - Receive versus Payment — **DVP** - Delivery versus Payment — **RWP** - Receive with Payment — **DWP** - Delivery with Payment — **PFRD** - Payment Free of Receive Debit — **PFRC** - Payment Free of Receive Credit — **PFDD** - Payment Free of Delivery Debit — **PFDC** - Payment Free of Delivery Credit	Edit / Detail View The cash value of the transaction selected during creation	-	
	— **RFP** - Receive Free of Payment — **DFP** - Delivery Free of Payment	This field is not displayed in the screen for the instruction types Free of Payment (**DFP**, **RFP**).		

Field	Instruction Type	Content (by system)	Entry (by user)	Length
[Settlement Amount Currency] **'EUR'** **Mandatory field during Create (automatically completed by the system)**	— **RVP** - Receive versus Payment — **DVP** - Delivery versus Payment — **RWP** - Receive with Payment — **DWP** - Delivery with Payment — **PFRD** - Payment Free of Receive Debit — **PFRC** - Payment Free of Receive Credit — **PFDD** - Payment Free of Delivery Debit — **PFDC** - Payment Free of Delivery Credit	Create: EUR	Selection from **CHF**, **EUR**, **GBP**, **USD**	-
		Edit / Detail View: The currency selected during creation	-	
	— **RFP** - Receive Free of Payment — **DFP** - Delivery Free of Payment	This field is not displayed in the screen for the instruction types Free of Payment (**DFP**, **RFP**).		

Field	Instruction Type	Content (by system)	Entry (by user)	Length
Settled Amount	— **RVP** - Receive versus Payment — **DVP** - Delivery versus Payment — **RWP** - Receive with Payment — **DWP** - Delivery with Payment — **PFRD** - Payment Free of Receive Debit — **PFRC** - Payment Free of Receive Credit — **PFDD** - Payment Free of Delivery Debit — **PFDC** - Payment Free of Delivery Credit	Create: - Edit / Detail View: 0,00 or in case of settled instructions the settled cash value of the transaction	-	-
	— **RFP** - Receive Free of Payment — **DFP** - Delivery Free of Payment	This field is not displayed in the screen for the instruction types Free of Payment (**DFP**, **RFP**).		
Trade Date **Mandatory field during Create (automatically completed by the system)**	All	Create: The current date Edit / Detail View: The date of the trade date	Date of the trade date (may be up to 60 calendar days in the past) -	DD-MM-YYYY

Field	Instruction Type	Content (by system)	Entry (by user)	Length
Booking Timestamp	All	Create: -	-	-
		Edit / Detail View: The actual time of processing of the instruction (e.g. during start of day or night-time settlement) as opposed to the T2S Settlement Date		
Intended Settlement Date **Mandatory field during Create (automatically completed by the system)**	All	Create: The date two T2S Opening Days after the current date	Date of the settlement date	DD-MM-YYYY
		Edit / Detail View: The settlement date on which the settlement of the instruction was intended	-	
Effective Settlement Date	All	Create: -	-	DD-MM-YYYY
		Edit / Detail View: In case of settled instructions the date of the day when the instruction was actually settled		

T2S Status Information

Party Hold Status **Mandatory field during Create**	All	Create: The default value for the securities account specified in the master data	Selection between **Hold** or **Released** By selecting **Hold** it is possible to send a preadvice instruction.	-
		Edit: It is possible to select a different Party Hold Status when editing an instruction. In case of status **Hold** the instruction is also displayed as an entry below **Instruction Alerts** in the task box.		
		Detail view: **Released** or **Hold**	-	

Field	Instruction Type	Content (by system)	Entry (by user)	Length
[Party Hold Status] Additional Information	All	The designation of the displayed status	-	-
CSD Hold Status	All	Create: This field is not displayed in the **Create** screen.		-
		Edit / Detail View: **Released** or **Hold**	-	
[CSD Hold Status] Additional Information	All	Create: This field is not displayed in the **Create** screen.		-
		Edit / Detail View: The designation of the displayed status	-	
Processing Status	All	Create: This field is not displayed in the **Create** screen.		-
		Edit / Detail View: **Accepted**, **Cancellation requested**, **Cancelled**, **Rejected** or **Settled** (depends on the message type)	-	
Reason Code	All	Create: This field is not displayed in the **Create** screen.		-
		Edit / Detail View: depends on the processing status	-	
[Reason Code] **Additional Information**	All	Create: This field is not displayed in the **Create** screen.		-
		Edit / Detail View: The designation of the displayed reason codes	-	
Settlement Status	All	Create: This field is not displayed in the **Create** screen.		-
		Edit / Detail View: **Pending**	-	

Field	Instruction Type	Content (by system)	Entry (by user)	Length
Reason Code	All	Create: This field is not displayed in the **Create** screen.		-
		Edit / Detail View: depends on the settlement status	-	
[Reason Code] **Additional Information**	All	Create: This field is not displayed in the **Create** screen.		-
		Edit / Detail View: The designation of the displayed reason codes	-	
Match Status	All	Create: -	-	-
		Edit / Detail View: **Unmatched** or **Matched**		
Cancellation Requested	All	Create: -	-	-
		Edit / Detail View: **no** (as long as no cancellation has been submitted) **yes** (if a cancellation of the instruction has been entered)		

Field	Instruction Type	Content (by system)	Entry (by user)	Length
OeKB CSD Status				
INFO The fields of this screen section are only displayed in the detail view, not in the Create and Edit screens.				
Instruction Status	All	Detail view: **New**, **Accepted**, **Pending**, **Failing**, **Settled**, **Cancelled**, **Rejected** or **Ignored**	-	-
Creation Time	All	Detail view: Time at which the instruction has been entered in the system	-	-
Request Party BIC	All	Detail view: BIC of the inputting party in case of instructions subject to authorisation according to the 4-eyes principle	-	-
Request User	All	Detail view: In case of instructions, for which an authorisation according to the 4-eyes principle is intended, the user who entered the instruction	-	-
User Request Type	All	Detail view: In case of instructions, for which an authorisation according to the 4-eyes principle is intended, the type of record entered by the user	-	-

Field	Instruction Type	Content (by system)	Entry (by user)	Length
User Request Status	All	Detail view: In case of instructions, for which an authorisation according to the 4-eyes principle is intended, the release status of the record entered by the user	-	-
Additional Information	All	Detail view: Any existing additional information on the OeKB CSD Status	-	-

Open Task

INFO The fields **of this screen section are only displayed in the Edit** screen and in the detail view **if the instruction is subject to authorisation according to the 4-eyes principle and has not yet been processes by a reviewer.**

Task Type	All	Create: This field is not displayed in the **Create** screen.		-
		Edit / Detail View: In case of instructions to be authorised the type of task to be authorised	-	
Creation Time	All	Create: This field is not displayed in the **Create** screen.		-
		Edit / Detail View: Time at which the task has been entered in the system	-	
Party BIC	All	Create: This field is not displayed in the **Create** screen.		-
		Edit / Detail View: BIC of the party which has to process the task	-	

Field	Instruction Type	Content (by system)	Entry (by user)	Length
Processing User	All	Create: This field is not displayed in the **Create** screen.		-
		Edit / Detail View: In case of processed tasks the user who processed the task	-	

4.1.8.2 Settlement Parties (Step 2)

Field	Instruction Type	Content (by system)	Entry (by user)	Length
Add Delivering Party **or**	— **DFP** - Delivery Free of Payment — **DVP** - Delivery versus Payment — **DWP** - Delivery with Payment — **PFRC** - Payment Free of Receive Credit — **PFDC** - Payment Free of Delivery Credit	**BIC - Depository of the Delivering Party** (= depository of the inputting participant) **BIC/ Securities Account - Delivering Party** (= BIC and securities account of the inputting participant)	Create: Additional Delivering Party as required. Clicking on the link opens the following screen sections in consecutive order: — Depository of the Delivering Party — Delivering Party — Client of the Delivering Party (see field descriptions Client of the Receiving/Delivering Party, below) — Delivering Party 3 — Delivering Party 4 — Delivering Party 5 A maximum of 5 participants can be entered. NOTE Enter the receiving party first, before you enter additional delivering parties. Edit / Detail View: -	-

Field	Instruction Type	Content (by system)	Entry (by user)	Length
Add Receiving Party	— **RFP** - Receive Free of Payment — **RVP** - Receive versus Payment — **RWP** - Receive with Payment — **PFRD** - Payment Free of Receive Debit — **PFDD** - Payment Free of Delivery Debit	**BIC - Depository of the Receiving Party** (= depository of the inputting participant) **BIC/ Securities Account - Receiving Party** (= BIC and securities account of the inputting participant)	Create: Additional Receiving Party as required. Clicking on the link opens the following screen sections in consecutive order: — Depository of the Receiving Party — Receiving Party — Client of the Receiving Party (see field descriptions Client of the Receiving/Delivering Party, below) — Receiving Party 3 — Receiving Party 4 — Receiving Party 5 A maximum of 5 participants can be entered. NOTE Enter the delivering party first, before you enter additional receiving parties. Edit / Detail View: -	-

Field	Instruction Type	Content (by system)	Entry (by user)	Length
Depository of the Receiving/Delivering Party				
BIC (Depository of the Receiving Party) **Mandatory field during Create** **or**	— **DFP** - Delivery Free of Payment — **DVP** - Delivery versus Payment — **DWP** - Delivery with Payment — **PFRC** - Payment Free of Receive Credit — **PFDC** - Payment Free of Delivery Credit	Create: OCSDATWWXXX **Auto-Complete**: After input of the first or two consecutive characters of the BIC the system suggests a list of BICs. The complete list of all parties available in the system is displayed after putting the cursor into the field and hitting the arrow down key on the keyboard.	Selection from all central securities depositories available in the list Input of the first or two consecutive characters of the BIC, then selection from the suggested list NOTE If **ECSD** is selected as the depository, the **Securities Account** field in the section **Receiving/Delivering Party** becomes a mandatory field.	BIC11
		Edit / Detail View: The central securities depository selected during creation	-	
BIC (Depository of the Delivering Party) **Mandatory field during Create**	— **RFP** - Receive Free of Payment — **RVP** - Receive versus Payment — **RWP** - Receive with Payment — **PFRD** - Payment Free of Receive Debit — **PFDD** - Payment Free of Delivery Debit			
[BIC] **Description**	All	The designation of the selected depository	-	-

Field	Instruction Type	Content (by system)	Entry (by user)	Length
Receiving/Delivering Party				
BIC (Receiving Party) **Mandatory field during Create** **or**	— **DFP** - Delivery Free of Payment — **DVP** - Delivery versus Payment — **DWP** - Delivery with Payment — **PFRC** - Payment Free of Receive Credit — **PFDC** - Payment Free of Delivery Credit	Create: **Auto-Complete**: After input of the first or two consecutive characters of the BIC the system suggests a list of BICs. The complete list of all parties available in the system is displayed after putting the cursor into the field and hitting the arrow down key on the keyboard.	BIC of the receiving party Input of the first or two consecutive characters of the BIC, then selection from the suggested list	BIC11
		Edit / Detail View: The BIC selected during creation	-	
BIC (Delivering Party) **Mandatory field during Create**	— **RFP** - Receive Free of Payment — **RVP** - Receive versus Payment — **RWP** - Receive with Payment — **PFRD** - Payment Free of Receive Debit — **PFDD** - Payment Free of Delivery Debit		BIC of the delivering party Input of the first or two consecutive characters of the BIC, then selection from the suggested list	
			Edit / Detail View: -	
[BIC] **Description**	All	The designation of the selected counterparty	-	-

Field	Instruction Type	Content (by system)	Entry (by user)	Length
Securities Account	All	Create: The securities account defined as default for the counterparty	Selection from the securities accounts available for the counterparty NOTE This field becomes a mandatory field if the depository selected in the section **Depository of the Receiving/ Delivering Party** is **ECSD**.	-
		Edit / Detail View: The securities account selected during creation	-	
[Securities Account] **Description**	All	The designation of the selected securities account	-	-

Client of the Receiving/Delivering Party

INFO The fields **of this screen section are only displayed in the Edit** screen and in the detail view **if customer data were added when the instruction was entered.**

BIC	All	Create: -	BIC of the client If a BIC is entered, the fields for the Proprietary Information and the Name and Address field are disabled. If the Proprietary Information or a Name and Address are entered, this field is disabled.	BIC11
		Edit / Detail View: The BIC of the client selected during creation	-	
[BIC] **Description**	All	The name of the party entered if known in the system	-	-

Field	Instruction Type	Content (by system)	Entry (by user)	Length
Securities Account	All	Create: -	Securities account of the client	35 max alphanum.
		Edit / Detail View: The securities account of the client selected during creation	-	
Name and Address	All	Create: -	Identification of the client If the name and address are entered, the field for the Proprietary Information and the BIC field are disabled. If the BIC or the Proprietary Information are entered, this field is disabled.	35 max alphanum.
		Edit / Detail View: The identification of the client selected during creation	-	
Proprietary Identification	All	Create: -	ID of the client in the client's proprietary system If the proprietary identification is entered, the BIC field and the Name and Address field are disabled. If the BIC or the Name and Address are entered, this field is disabled.	35 max alphanum.
		Edit / Detail View: The ID of the client in the client's proprietary system selected during creation	-	

Field	Instruction Type	Content (by system)	Entry (by user)	Length
Proprietary Issuer	All	Create: -	Issuer ID in the client's proprietary system If the proprietary issuer is entered, the BIC field and the Name and Address field are disabled. If the BIC or the Name and Address are entered, this field is disabled.	35 max alphanum.
		Edit / Detail View: The issuer ID in the client's proprietary system selected during creation	-	
Proprietary Scheme Name	All	Create: -	Name of the scheme used by the client's proprietary system If the proprietary scheme is entered, the BIC field and the Name and Address field are disabled. If the BIC or the Name and Address are entered, this field is disabled.	35 max alphanum.
		Edit / Detail View: The name of the scheme used by the client's proprietary system selected during creation	-	

Field	Instruction Type	Content (by system)	Entry (by user)	Length
Add Receiving Party or	— **DFP** - Delivery Free of Payment — **DVP** - Delivery versus Payment — **DWP** - Delivery with Payment — **PFRC** - Payment Free of Receive Credit — **PFDC** - Payment Free of Delivery Credit	**BIC - Depository of the Receiving Party** (= depository of the inputting participant) **BIC/ Securities Account - Receiving Party** (= BIC and securities account of the inputting participant)	Create: Additional Receiving Party as required. Clicking on the link opens the following screen sections in consecutive order: ▪ Receiving Party 3 ▪ Receiving Party 4 ▪ Receiving Party 5 ▪ A maximum of 5 participants can be entered. NOTE Enter the receiving party in the section **Receiving Party** first, before you enter additional receiving parties. Edit / Detail View: -	-
Add Delivering Party	— **RFP** - Receive Free of Payment — **RVP** - Receive versus Payment — **RWP** - Receive with Payment — **PFRD** - Payment Free of Receive Debit — **PFDD** - Payment Free of Delivery Debit	**BIC - Depository of the Delivering Party** (= depository of the inputting participant) **BIC/ Securities Account - Delivering Party** (= BIC and securities account of the inputting participant)	Create: Additional Delivering Party as required. Clicking on the link opens the following screen sections in consecutive order: — Delivering Party 3 — Delivering Party 4 — Delivering Party 5 — A maximum of 5 participants can be entered. NOTE Enter the delivering party in the section **Delivering Party** first, before you enter additional delivering parties. Edit / Detail View: -	-

4.1.8.3 Additional Information (Step 3)

Field	Instruction Type	Content (by system)	Entry (by user)	Length
Priority **Mandatory field during Create (automatically completed by the system)**	All	Create: **Normal**	Selection between **Normal** or **High** Instructions with priority **High** are settled before instructions with priority **Normal**.	-
		Edit: It is possible to select a different Priority when editing an instruction.		
		Detail view: **Normal** or **High**	-	
Partial Settlement Ind.	All	Create: The default value for the securities account specified in the master data	Selection between **Partial not allowed** or **Partial allowed** Instructions with the partial settlement indicator **Partial not allowed** will not be partially settled. You can use the additional differentiations **minimum cash** and **minimum quantity** to specify whether to consider the T2S threshold values for all partial settlements of the instruction. For details see *Annex 8 Guideline Settlement and Securities Account Administration*.	-
		Edit: It is possible to select a different Partial Settlement Indicator when editing an instruction.		
		Detail view: **Partial not allowed**, **Partial allowed**, **Partial allowed (minimum cash)** or **Partial allowed (minimum quantity)**	-	
Trade Transaction Condition	All	Create: -	Use the **Edit** icon to select from: — BCBL - Board Lots (UK specific) — BCBN - Bad Names (UK specific) — BCFD - Form of Delivery (UK specific)	-
		Edit / Detail View: The trade transaction condition selected during creation		

Field	Instruction Type	Content (by system)	Entry (by user)	Length
			— BCPD - Place of Delivery (UK specific) — BCRO - Result of Option When Set (UK specific) — BCRP - Result of Repo When Set (UK specific) — CBNS - Cum Bonus — CCPN - Cum Coupon — CDIV - Cum Dividend — CRTS - Cum Rights — CWAR - Cum Warrants — GTDL - Guaranteed Delivery — MAPR - Market Price — NEGO - Negotiated Trade — NMPR - Non-Market Price — SPCU - Special Cum Dividend — SPEX - Special Ex Dividend — XBNS - Ex Bonus — XCPN - Ex Coupon — XDIV - Ex Dividend — XRTS - Ex Rights — XWAR - Ex Warrants	
Opt-out Indicator	All	Create: Input request 'please select ...'	Selection between **yes** or **no** With an Opt-out Indicator selected, this field becomes a matching criterion. For details see *Annex 8 Guideline Settlement and Securities Account Administration*.	-
		Edit / Detail View: **yes** or **no**	-	

Field	Instruction Type	Content (by system)	Entry (by user)	Length
Common Reference	All	Create: - Edit / Detail View: The common referenced used to identify the settlement instruction or the currency and amount entered by OeKB CSD for multicurrency settlement instructions	The common reference to identify the settlement instruction In case of multicurrency settlement instructions, the OeKB CSD uses this field to enter the currency and the amount in the foreign currency to ensure matching. Any data contained in this field will be overwritten in this case. With a Common Reference specified, this field becomes a matching criterion. For details see *Annex 8 Guideline Settlement and Securities Account Administration*.	16 alphanum.
BSSP	All	Create: Input request 'please select ...' Edit / Detail View: **yes** or **no**	Selection between **yes** or **no** Only when these values are present on both, the receipt and delivery instruction, LMFP would not be applied under this exemption rule. -	-
Beneficial Ownership	All	Create: Input request 'please select ...' Edit / Detail View: The Beneficial Ownership Flag entered during creation	Selection between **yes** or **no**	-

Field	Instruction Type	Content (by system)	Entry (by user)	Length
Narrative Trade Details	All	Create: - Edit / Detail View: The text entered during creation	Free text - -	350 alphanum.
Target Restriction Type or	— **RFP** - Receive Free of Payment — **RVP** - Receive versus Payment — **RWP** - Receive with Payment	Create: Input request 'please select ...' Edit / Detail View: The target restriction type selected during creation	Selection from the list: — **EAR1 (Case 3 Position Earmarking)** - earmarked securities position (labelled in an intra-position movement as **Restr. Type Balance To** "EAR1") — **EEUR (Earmarking for auto-collat in EURO)** - earmarked securities position (labelled in an intra-position movement as **Restr. Type Balance To** "EEUR") — **EGBP (Earmarking for auto-collat in GBP)** - earmarked securities position (labelled in an intra-position movement as **Restr. Type Balance To** "EGBP") — **EXXX (Earmarking for auto-collat)** - earmarked securities position (labelled in an intra-position movement as **Restr. Type Balance To** "EXXX") NOTE Restrictions can only be used to allocate an instruction's securities if the necessary restrictions have been created in the form of intra-position movements before. For details see Create Intra-Position Movements. NOTE Additional options will be added by OeKB CSD GmbH if need be	-

Field	Instruction Type	Content (by system)	Entry (by user)	Length
Use of Restrictions	— **DFP** - Delivery Free of Payment — **DVP** - Delivery versus Payment — **DWP** - Delivery with Payment	-	see Use of Restrictions (field description)	Drop-down screen section
Linkages	All	Create: - Edit: It is possible to modify linkages when editing an instruction.	see Linkages (field description)	Drop-down screen section

4.1.8.4 Places (Screen Section, Create Settlement Instruction Step 3)

Field	Instruction Type	Content (by system)	Entry (by user)	Length
Place of Trade	All	Input request 'please select ...'	Selection from the list: — **Stock Exchange (EXCH)** — **Over the Counter (OTCO)** — **Primary Market (PRIM)** — **Secondary Market (SECM)** — **Various (VARI)**	-
MIC	ALL	Market Identifier Code	Only available when “Stock Exchange” is selected as Place of Trade.	4
Place of Clearing	All	BIC of the Place of Clearing	-	BIC11
[Place of Clearing] **Description**	All	Description Place of Clearing	-	-

4.1.8.5 Use of Restrictions (Screen Section, Create Settlement Instruction Step 3)

Field	Instruction Type	Content (by system)	Entry (by user)	Length
Restriction Type	— **DFP** - Delivery Free of Payment — **DVP** - Delivery	Input request 'please select ...'	Selection from the list: — **AWAS (Deliverable Securities Position)** - available securities position — **BLO1 (Case 3 Position Blocking)** - blocked securities	-

Field	Instruction Type	Content (by system)	Entry (by user)	Length
	versus Payment — **DWP** - Delivery with Payment		position (labelled in an intra-position movement as **Restr. Type Balance To** "BLO1") — **EAR1 (Case 3 Position Earmarking)** - earmarked securities position (labelled in an intra-position movement as **Restr. Type Balance To** "EAR1") — **EEUR (Earmarking for auto-collat in EURO)** - earmarked securities position (labelled in an intra-position movement as **Restr. Type Balance To** "EEUR") — **EGBP (Earmarking for auto-collat in GBP)** - earmarked securities position (labelled in an intra-position movement as **Restr. Type Balance To** "EGBP") — **EXXX (Earmarking for auto-collat)** - earmarked securities position (labelled in an intra-position movement as **Restr. Type Balance To** "EXXX") — **RES1 (Case 3 Position Reservation)** - reserved securities position (labelled in an intra-position movement as **Restr. Type Balance To** "RES1") NOTE Restrictions can only be used for an instruction if the necessary restrictions have been created in the form of intra-position movements before. For details see Create Intra-Position Movements. NOTE Additional options will be added by OeKB CSD GmbH if need be	

Field	Instruction Type	Content (by system)	Entry (by user)	Length
Restriction References	— **DFP** - Delivery Free of Payment — **DVP** - Delivery versus Payment — **DWP** - Delivery with Payment	List of the references of all previously entered intra-position movements of the selected type For details on how to create restrictions, please refer to Create Intra-Position Movement.	The **add >** button is used to assign restrictions	-

4.1.8.6 Linkages (Screen Section, Create Settlement Instruction Schritt 3)

TIP It is possible to modify linkages in the **Edit** screen when editing an instruction.

Field	Instruction Type	Content (by system)	Entry (by user)	Length
Sequential Number	All	Create: -	Consecutive number of the newly created instruction in the pool	3 Integer
		Edit / Detail View: The consecutive number entered during creation	-	
Total Number	All	Create: -	Total number of instructions/intra-position movements in the pool	3 Integer
		Edit / Detail View: The total number of instructions/intra-position movements entered during creation	-	

Field	Instruction Type	Content (by system)	Entry (by user)	Length
Linkages Pop-Up Dialog				
Linkage Type **Mandatory field during Create**	All	-	Selection from the list: — **After** - the instruction will be settled after or at the same time as the one it is linked to — **Before** - the instruction will be settled before or at the same time as the one it is linked to — **Information** - this linkage has information purposes only and is chiefly created automatically by the system, e.g. for auto-collateralisation — **With** - the instruction will be settled at the same time as the one it is linked to	-
Reference Type **Mandatory field during Create**	All	Input request 'please select ...'	Selection from the list: — **Customer Reference** - The customer reference associated with the instruction or restriction with which the new instruction shall be linked — **MITI** - The T2S assigned Market Infrastructure Transaction Identifier associated with the instruction or restriction with which the new instruction shall be linked — **Sub Balance Reference** - The restriction reference associated with the restriction with which the new instruction shall be linked — **Pool ID** - The common reference used to identify all the instructions or restrictions in the same pool	-
Reference **Mandatory field during Create**	All	Input request 'please select ...'	The reference as determined by the type of reference selected in the **Reference Type** field	16 alphanum.

Field	Instruction Type	Content (by system)	Entry (by user)	Length
Reference Owner BIC **Mandatory field during Create**	All	Create: BIC of the inputting party **Auto-Complete**: After input of the first or two consecutive characters of the BIC the system suggests a list of BICs. The complete list of all parties available in the system is displayed after putting the cursor into the field and hitting the arrow down key on the keyboard. Edit / Detail View: The BIC selected during creation	BIC of the party in the instruction to be linked Input of the first or two consecutive characters of the BIC, then selection from the suggested list	BIC11
[Reference Owner BIC] **Description**	All	The designation of the instructing party	-	-

4.2 Search Settlement Instructions

You cansearch for settlement instructions in order to modify, copy or cancel them.

TIP If you repeatedly use the same search criteria, you can enter them and save them in a search template.

How to Open the Search Settlement Instructions Screen

Step by Step

1 In the menu bar, select *Settlement* > *Search Settlement Instructions*.
The **Search Settlement Instructions** screen appears.

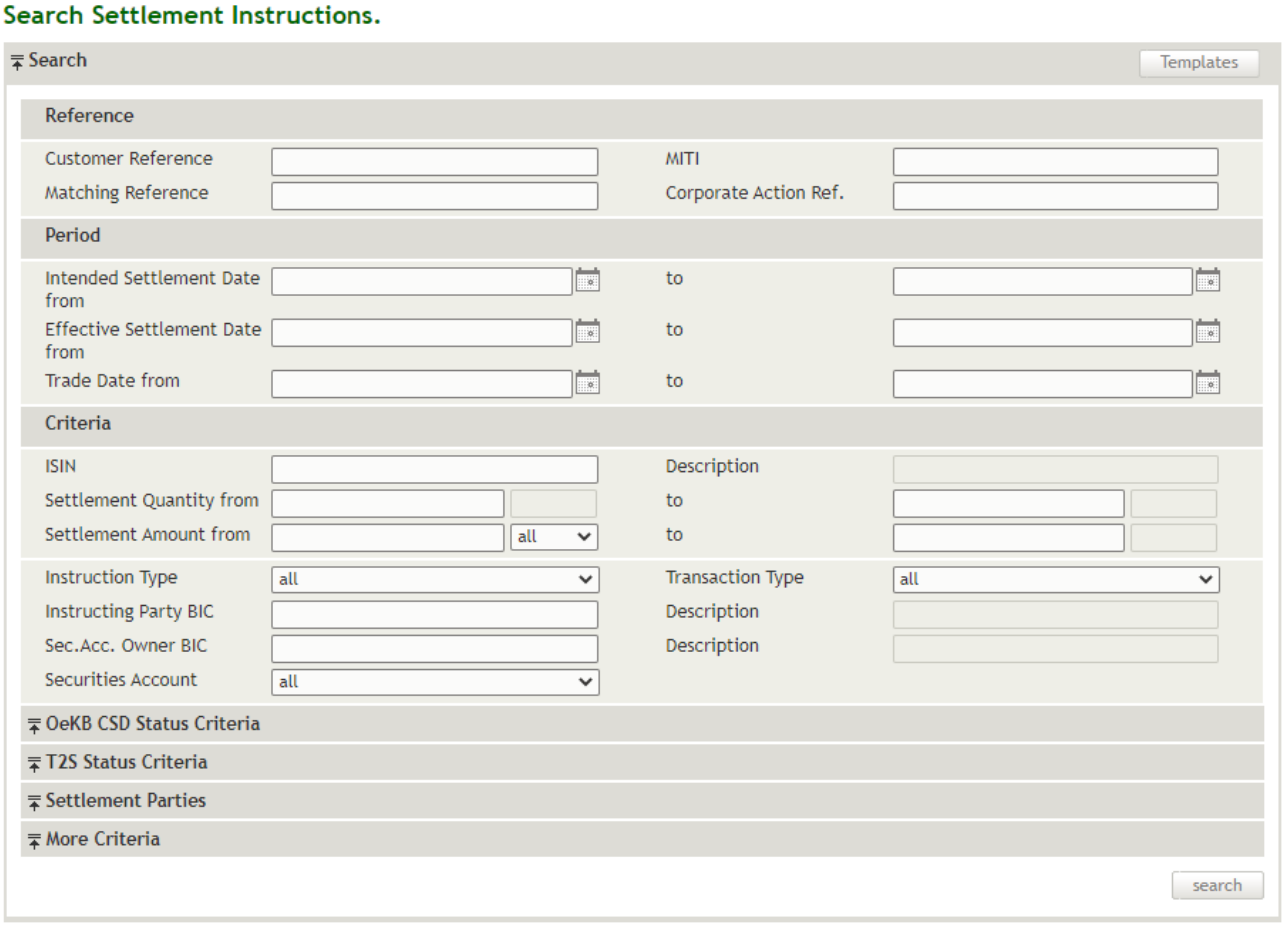


Figure 40: Search Settlement Instructions

You can use the following drop-down screen sections to enter search criteria:

- Search (this section is displayed when the screen is opened for the first time, fig. **Fehler! Verweisquelle konnte nicht gefunden werden.**)
- OeKB CSD Status Criteria (fig. **Fehler! Verweisquelle konnte nicht gefunden werden.**)
- T2S Status Criteria (fig. **Fehler! Verweisquelle konnte nicht gefunden werden.**)
- Settlement Parties (fig. **Fehler! Verweisquelle konnte nicht gefunden werden.**)
- More Criteria (fig. **Fehler! Verweisquelle konnte nicht gefunden werden.**)

TIP	The system records the screen sections displayed and the search screen appears in the same way when you open it the next time.

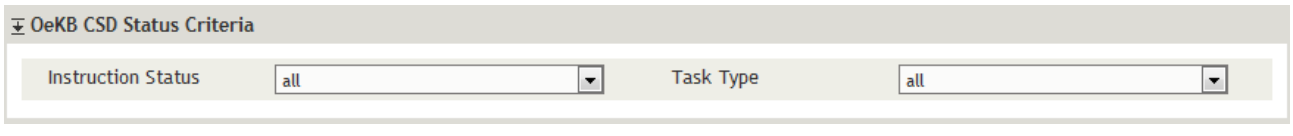


Figure 41: Search Settlement Instructions - OeKB CSD Status Criteria

Figure 42: Search Settlement Instructions - T2S-Status Criteria

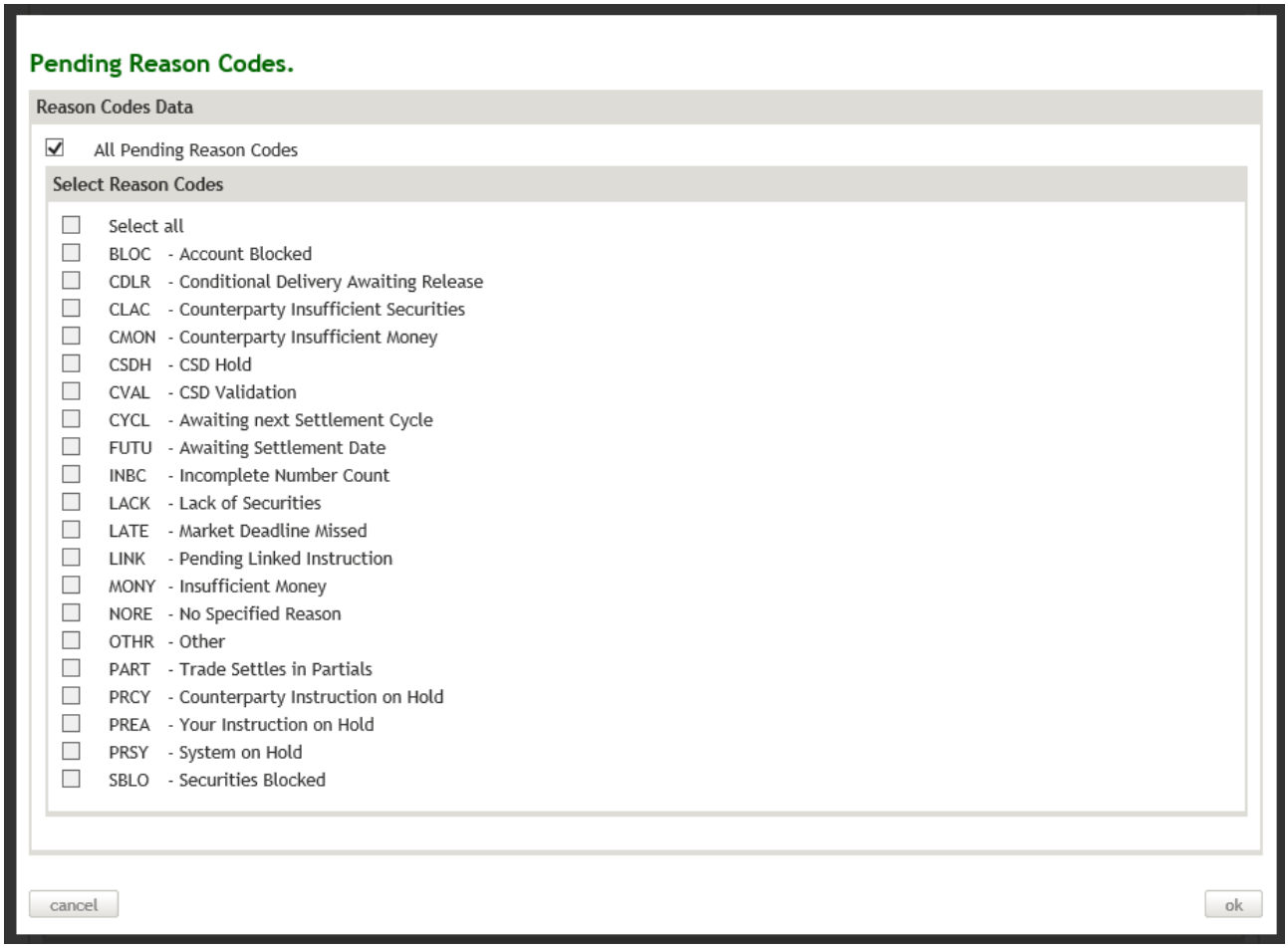


Figure 43: Search Settlement Instructions - Pending Reason Codes (pop-up-dialog)

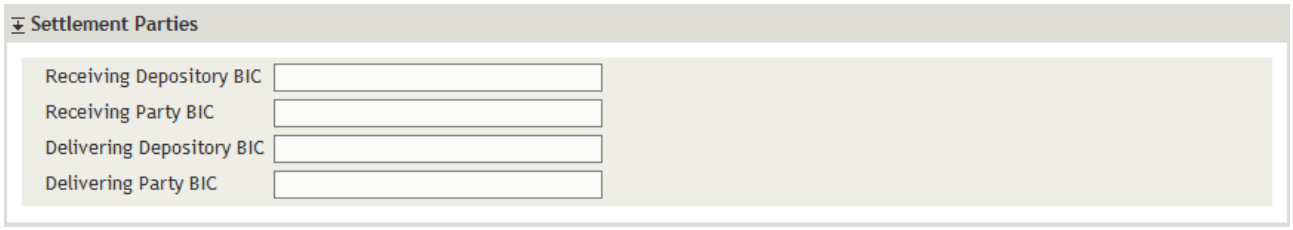


Figure 44: Search Settlement Instructions - Settlement Parties

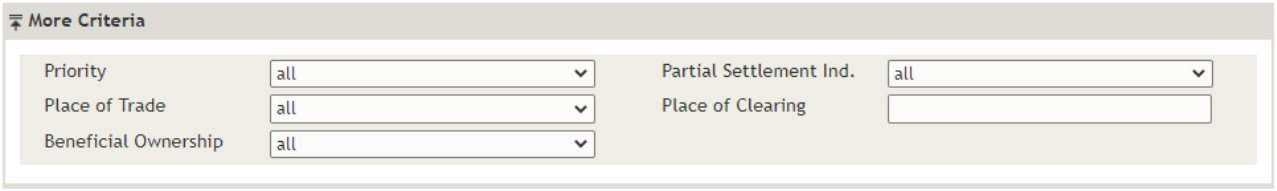


Figure 45: Search Settlement Instructions - More Criteria

TIP	Clicking on **search** without entering search criteria lists all instructions available in the system. To search for (a) specific instruction(s), enter criteria in the fields which best characterise the instruction you are looking for.

4.2.1 Modifying Settlement Instructions

To modify a settlement instruction not displayed in the task list (see Processing of Open Tasks) or among the Instruction Alerts, you need to search for the instruction you are looking for. Then you can use the Edit screen to make the desired changes. You may change the entries in the following fields of the Edit screen:

— Released Quantity (step: Instruction Details)
— Party Hold Status (step: Instruction Details)
— Priority (step: Additional Information)
— Partial Settlement Ind. (step: Additional Information)
— Linkages (drop-down screen section in step: Additional Information)

NOTE	Depending on the processing status and the instruction type some fields may be disabled or not visible.

TIP	Editing an instruction is also possible from the detail view using the **edit** button.
TIP	The detailed description of the fields in the **Edit Settlement Instruction** screen are available in the individual Field Descriptions tables in chapter Create Settlement Instruction.

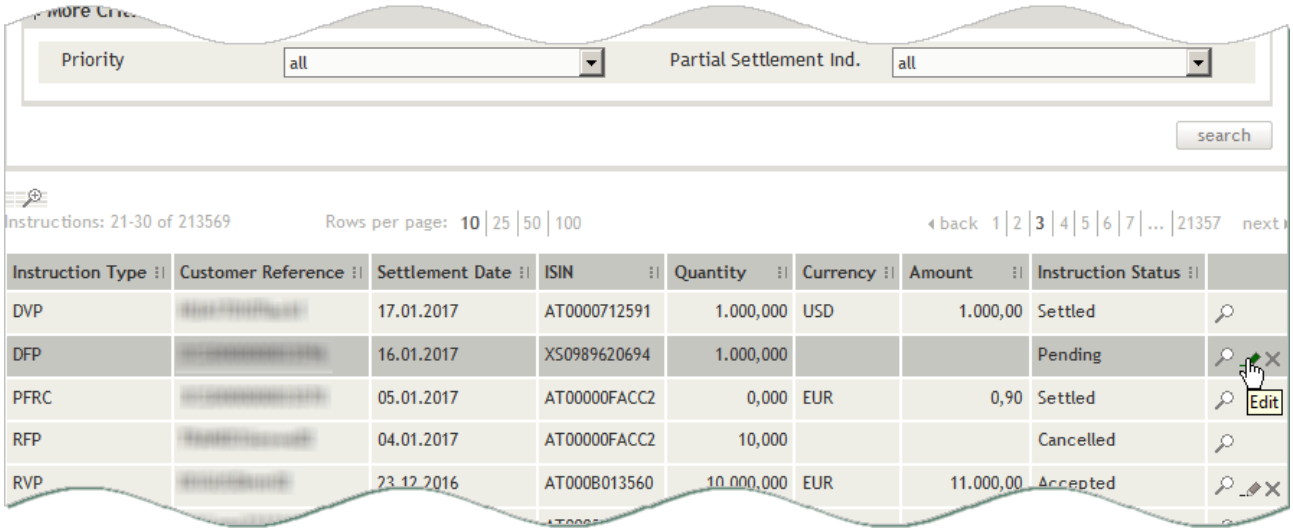


Figure 46: Search Settlement Instructions - search result list (example: edit)

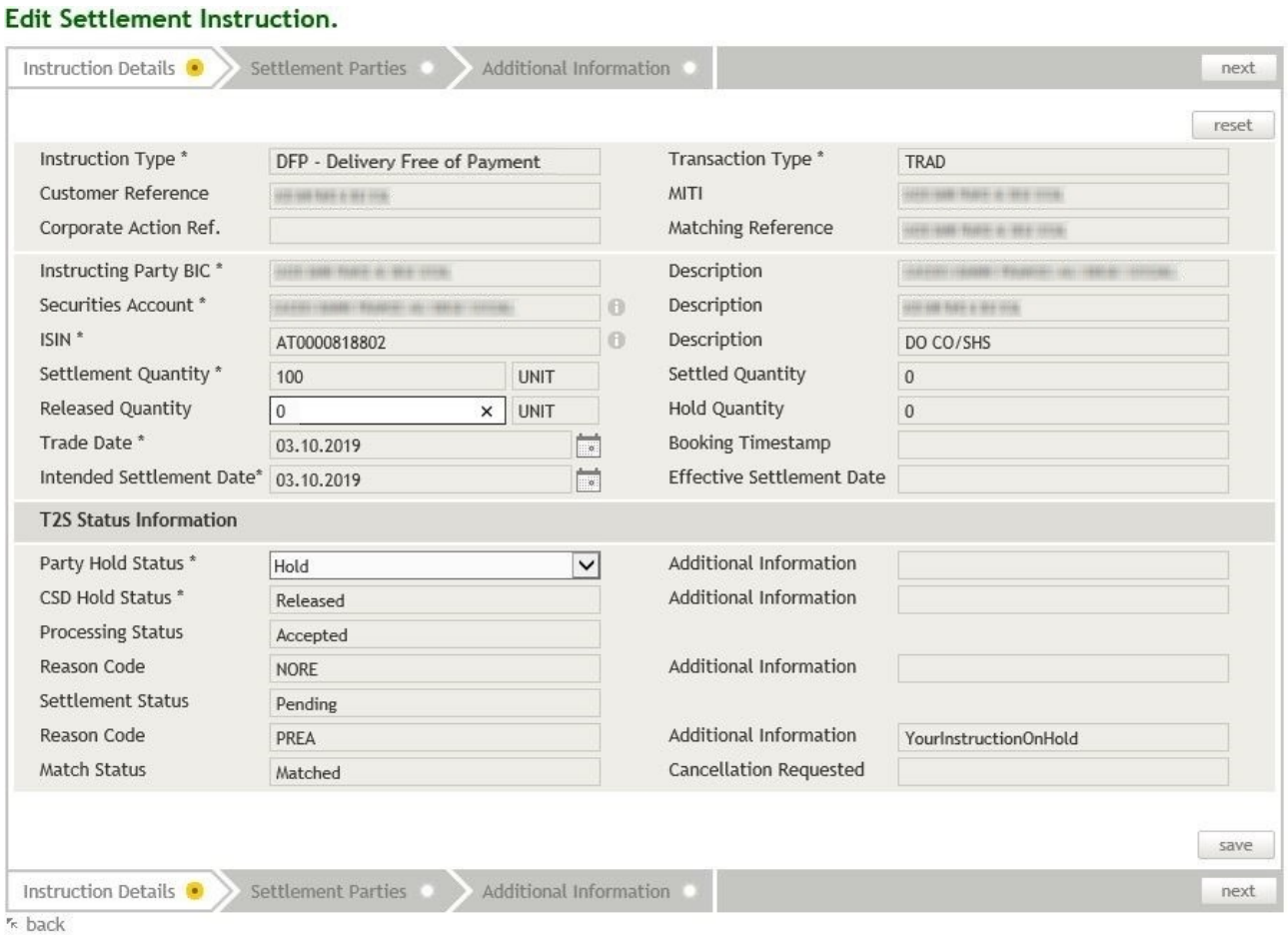


Figure 47: Edit Settlement Instruction - Instruction Details (example: DFP)

Edit Settlement Instruction.

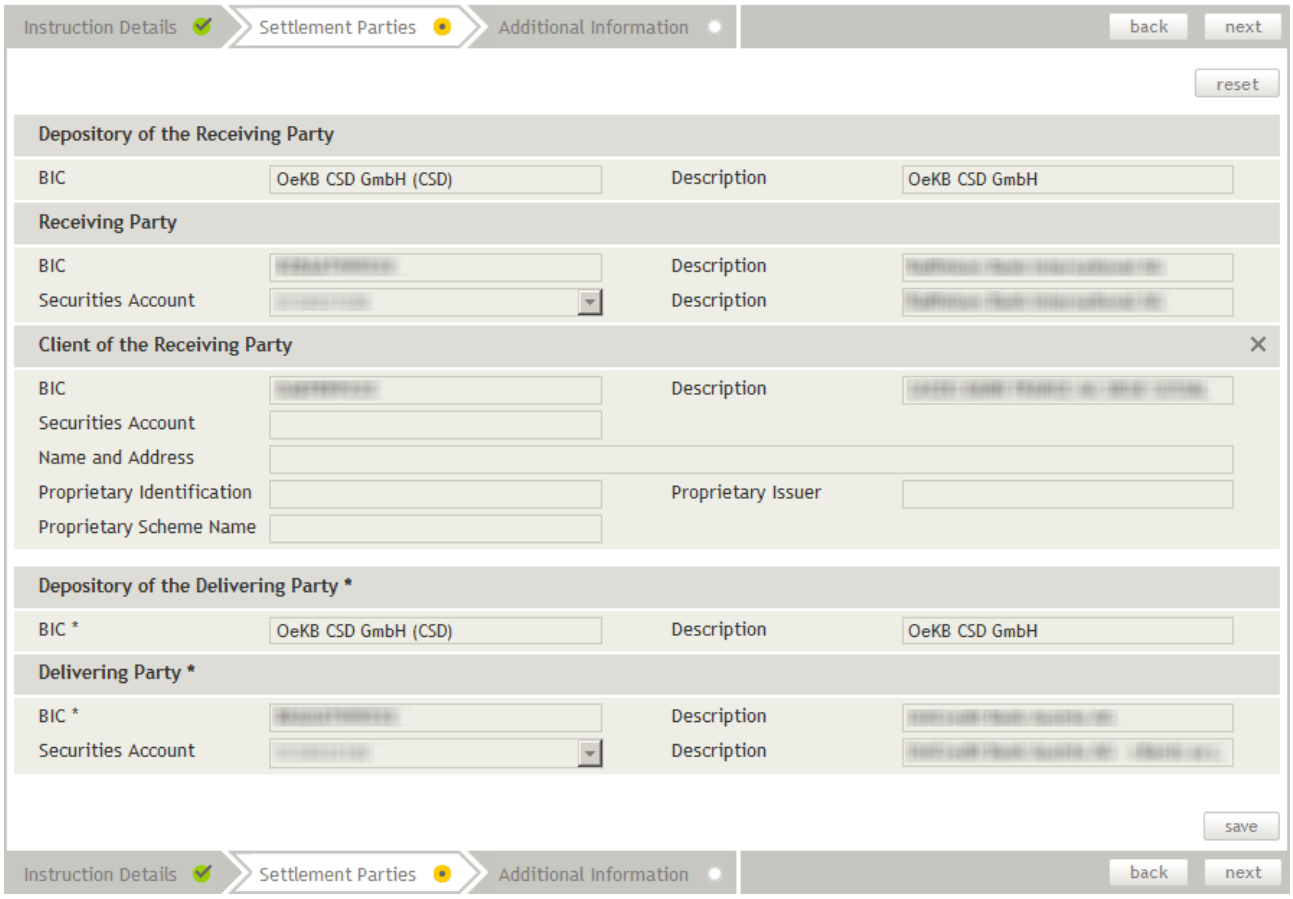


Figure 48: Edit Settlement Instruction - Settlement Parties

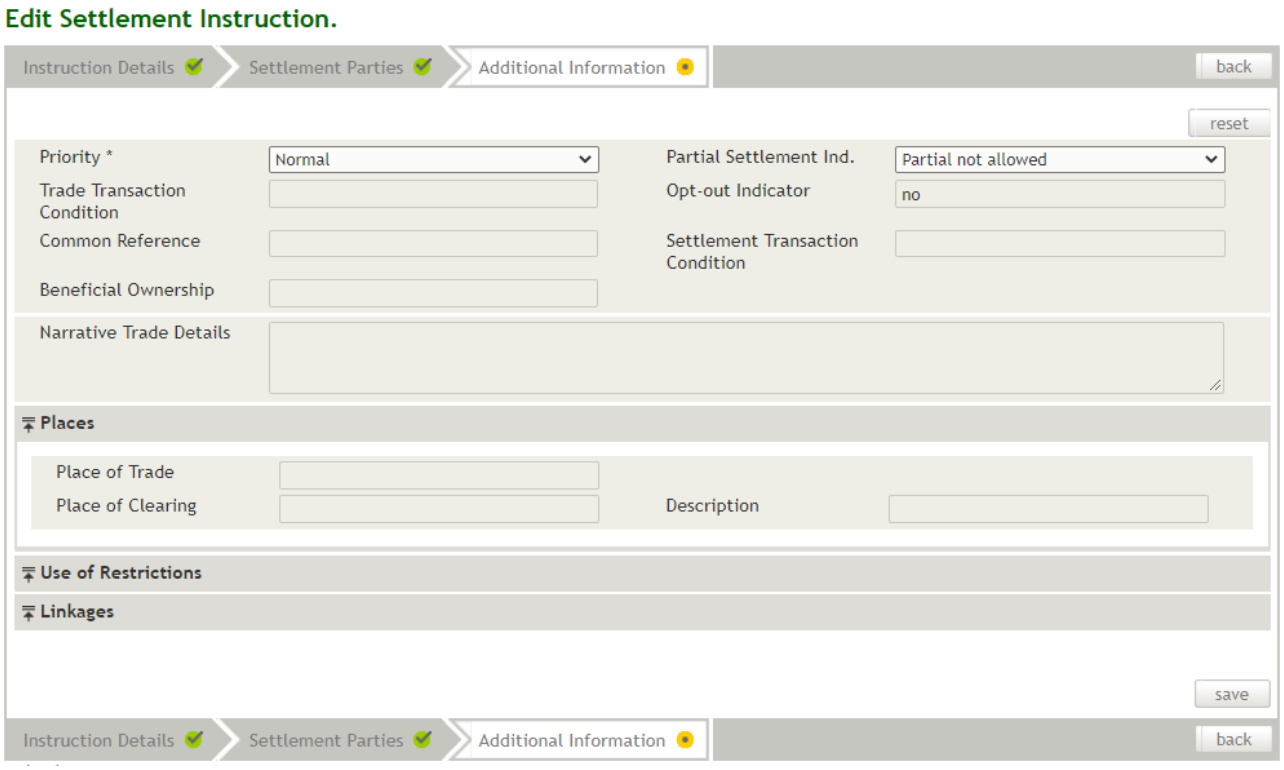


Figure 49: Edit Settlement Instruction - Additional Information

TIP	In case of instructions not yet settled the system displays the type of error and the reason why settlement has failed at the top left and the bottom left of the screen, respectively, in red typeface.

How to Modify a Settlement Instruction

Step by Step

1 In the menu bar, select *Settlement* > *Search Settlement Instructions*.
The **Search Settlement Instructions** screen appears.
The system automatically inserts the appropriate predefined values into the fields:

- Settlement Amount Currency (= all)
- Instruction Type (= all)
- Transaction Type (= all)
- Securities Account (= all)
- Instruction Status (= all)
- Task Type (= all)
- Party Hold Status (= all)
- CSD Hold Status (= all)
- CSD Validation Hold Status (= all)
- CoSD Hold Status (= all)
- Processing Status (= all)
- Pending Reason Codes (= all)
- Match Status (= all)
- Priority (= all)
- Partial Settlement Ind. (= all)
- Place of Trade (= all)
- Beneficial Ownership (=all)

2 Enter the desired search criteria in the available fields or limit the selections in the fields completed by the system.

3 Click on the **search** button.
The search result list containing all instructions matching your search criteria appears.

4 You have the following options:

a1 In the row of the record you want to modify, click on the **Details** icon to open the detail view.

a2 Click **edit** to open the **Edit** screen of the record.

INFO	The system only displays the **edit** button if your user permissions allow you to modify data.

b In the row of the record you want to modify, click on the **Edit** icon to open the **Edit** screen.

INFO	The system only displays the **Edit** icon if your user permissions allow you to modify data.

5 Modify the record as required.

NOTE	Depending on the processing status and the instruction type some fields may be disabled.

INFO	Only **Party Hold Status**, **Released Quantity, Priority**, **Partial Settlement Indicator** and **Linkages** can be modified when editing instructions.

TIP	In case of instructions not yet settled the system displays the type of error and the reason why settlement has failed at the top left and the bottom left of the screen, respectively, in red typeface.

6 Click **save** to save your changes.

INFO	If an authorisation according to the 4-eyes principle is required, this record will be listed in the **Tasks waiting for approval** section of the task box until it gets authorised by a releaser.

The instruction is saved and submitted to the system for processing or for 4EP authorisation. The system displays the **Settlement Instruction Summary**, where you can verify the data you have entered. The screen includes the Instruction History and the Status History in separate tabs.

7 Click **ok** in the **Settlement Instruction Summary** to confirm your entries.
The entry page appears.

4.2.2 Modifying a Linkage for an Instruction

The concept and modification of linkages for instructions is identical to entering linkages for instructions for the first time. See Entering Linkages for an Instruction

4.2.3 Searching for a Settlement Instruction

How to Search for a Settlement Instruction

Step by Step

1 In the menu bar, select *Settlement* > *Search Settlement Instructions*.
The **Search Settlement Instructions** screen appears.
The system automatically inserts the appropriate predefined values into the fields:

- Settlement Amount Currency (= all)
- Instruction Type (= all)
- Transaction Type (= all)
- Securities Account (= all)
- Instruction Status (= all)
- Task Type (= all)
- Party Hold Status (= all)
- CSD Hold Status (= all)
- CSD Validation Hold Status (= all)
- CoSD Hold Status (= all)
- Processing Status (= all)
- Pending Reason Codes (= all)
- Match Status (= all)
- Priority (= all)
- Partial Settlement Ind. (= all)
- Place of Trade (= all)
- Beneficial Ownership (=all)

2 Enter the desired search criteria in the available fields or limit the selections in the fields completed by the system.

3 Click on the **search** button.
The search result list containing all instructions matching your search criteria appears.

4.2.4 Copying a Settlement Instruction

In the detail view of an instruction you can create a copy of the current instruction.

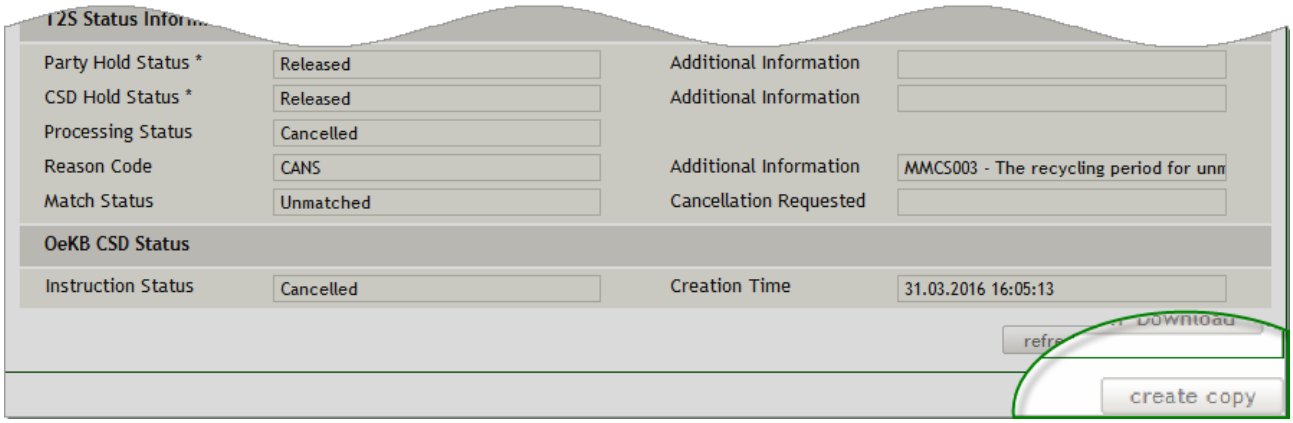


Figure 50: Copying a settlement instruction

How to Copy a Settlement Instruction

Step by Step

1 In the menu bar, select *Settlement* > *Search Settlement Instructions*.
The **Search Settlement Instructions** screen appears.
The system automatically inserts the appropriate predefined values into the fields:

- Settlement Amount Currency (= all)
- Instruction Type (= all)
- Transaction Type (= all)
- Securities Account (= all)
- Instruction Status (= all)
- Task Type (= all)
- Party Hold Status (= all)
- CSD Hold Status (= all)
- CSD Validation Hold Status (= all)
- CoSD Hold Status (= all)
- Processing Status (= all)
- Pending Reason Codes (= all)
- Match Status (= all)
- Priority (= all)
- Partial Settlement Ind. (= all)
- Place of Trade (= all)
- Beneficial Ownership (=all)

2 Enter the desired search criteria in the available fields or limit the selections in the fields completed by the system.

3 Click on the **search** button.
The search result list containing all instructions matching your search criteria appears.

4 In the row of the record you want to copy, click on the **Details** icon to open the detail view.

5 Click on the **create copy** button.
The **Create Settlement Instruction** screen appears.
The fields are filled with the data of the copied instruction.

6 In all three steps of the screen (see Create Settlement Instruction), enter or modify the data which should be different in the new instruction.

7 Click **save** to save your changes.

INFO	If an authorisation according to the 4-eyes principle is required, this record will be listed in the **Tasks waiting for approval** section of the task box until it gets authorised by a releaser.

The instruction is saved and submitted to the system for processing or for 4EP authorisation. The system displays the **Settlement Instruction Summary**, where you can verify the data you have entered. The screen includes the Instruction History and the Status History in separate tabs.

8 Click **ok** in the **Settlement Instruction Summary** to confirm your entries.
The entry page appears.

4.2.5 Cancelling Settlement Instructions

If you want to cancel a settlement instruction, you need to search for the instruction you are looking for. Then you can click on the **X** icon on the right-hand side of the row which displays the instruction to be cancelled.

TIP	Cancelling an instruction is also possible from the detail view using the **cancel instruction** button.

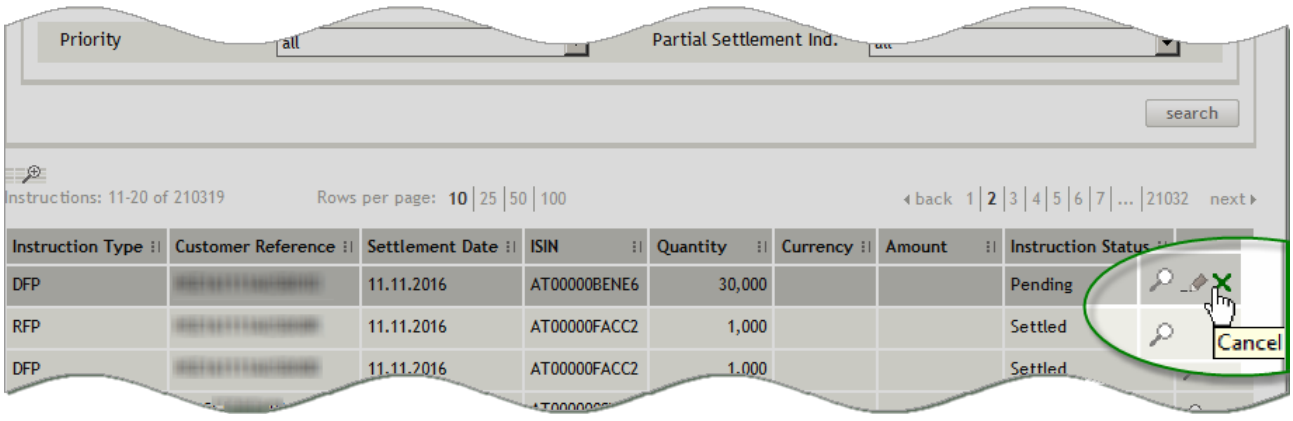


Figure 51: Search Settlement Instructions - search result list (example: cancel)

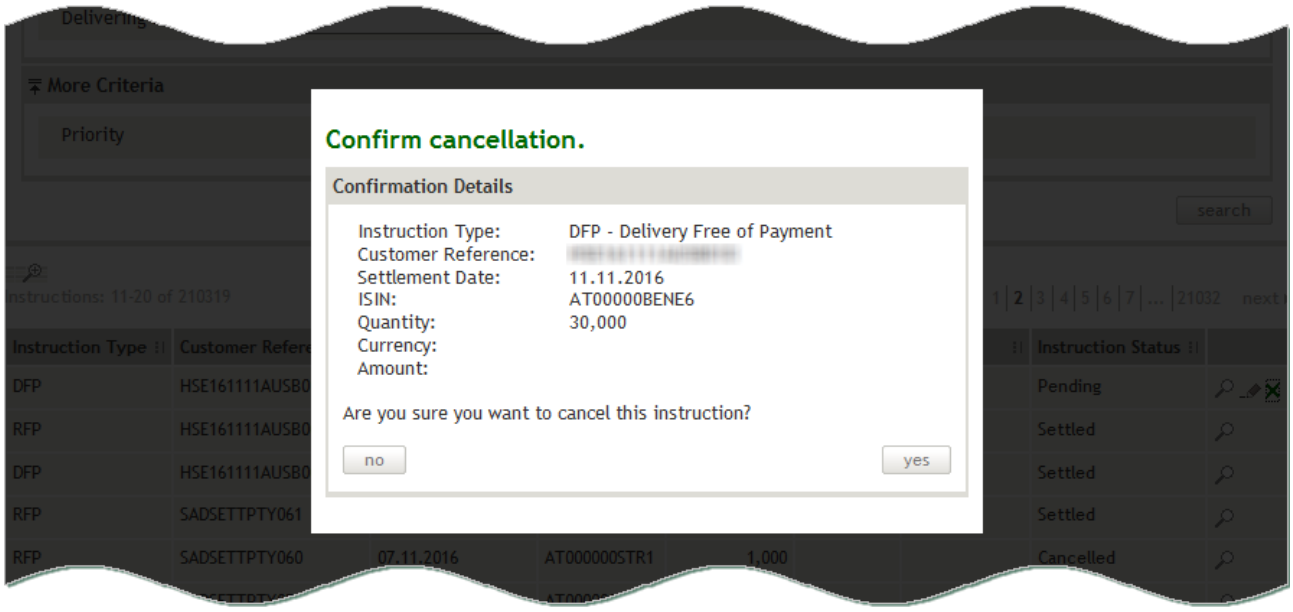


Figure 52: Confirm cancellation (settlement instruction)

How to Cancel a Settlement Instructions

Step by Step

1 In the menu bar, select *Settlement* > *Search Settlement Instructions*.
The **Search Settlement Instructions** screen appears.
The system automatically inserts the appropriate predefined values into the fields:

- Settlement Amount Currency (= all)
- Instruction Type (= all)
- Transaction Type (= TRAD, standard type for instructions)
- Securities Account (= all)
- Instruction Status (= all)
- Task Type (= all)
- Party Hold Status (= all)
- CSD Hold Status (= all)
- CSD Validation Hold Status (= all)
- CoSD Hold Status (= all)
- Processing Status (= all)
- Pending Reason Codes (= all)
- Match Status (= all)
- Priority (= all)
- Partial Settlement Ind. (= all)
- Place of Trade (= all)
- Beneficial Ownership (=all)

2 Enter the desired search criteria in the available fields or limit the selections in the fields completed by the system.

3 Click on the **search** button.
The search result list containing all instructions matching your search criteria appears.

4 In the row containing the instruction to be cancelled, click on the **X** icon.

TIP	Cancelling an instruction is also possible from the detail view using the **cancel instruction** button.

5 Click **yes** in the pop-up dialog.

INFO	If an authorisation according to the 4-eyes principle is required, this record will be listed in the **Tasks waiting for approval** section of the task box until it gets authorised by a releaser.

The instruction is cancelled and submitted to the system for processing or for 4EP authorisation.
The search result list is still available on the screen.

4.2.6 Saving a Settlement Instruction in PDF Format

In the detail view of an instruction you can save the details of the current instruction in PDF format and store it locally on your computer if you like.

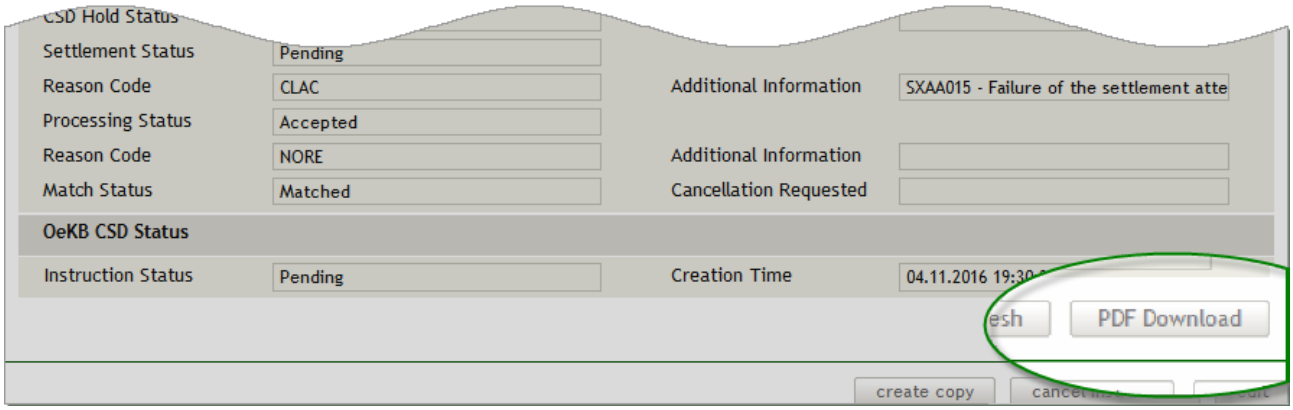


Figure 53: Saving a settlement instruction in PDF format

How to Save a Settlement Instruction in PDF Format

Step by Step

1 In the menu bar, select *Settlement* > *Search Settlement Instructions*.
The **Search Settlement Instructions** screen appears.
The system automatically inserts the appropriate predefined values into the fields:

- Settlement Amount Currency (= all)
- Instruction Type (= all)
- Transaction Type (= TRAD, standard type for instructions)
- Securities Account (= all)
- Instruction Status (= all)
- Task Type (= all)
- Party Hold Status (= all)
- CSD Hold Status (= all)
- CSD Validation Hold Status (= all)
- CoSD Hold Status (= all)
- Processing Status (= all)
- Pending Reason Codes (= all)
- Match Status (= all)
- Priority (= all)
- Partial Settlement Ind. (= all)
- Place of Trade (= all)
- Beneficial Ownership (=all)

2 Enter the desired search criteria in the available fields or limit the selections in the fields completed by the system.

3 Click on the **search** button.
The search result list containing all instructions matching your search criteria appears.

4 In the row of the record you want to save in PDF format, click on the **Details** icon 🔎 to open the detail view.

5 Click on the **PDF download** button.

6 In the system screen, choose whether to open the PDF file or save it to your computer.

4.2.7 Instruction History (Settlement Instruction)

The Instruction History in the detail view of an instruction shows the detailed sequence of user actions (see Securities Accounts list) and user tasks (see Task Box) carried out for the specific instruction. It also shows all messages (inbound and outbound) of the instruction. The original messages can be accessed by clicking on the **Detail** icon.

NOTE It is not possible to edit entries in the Instruction History.

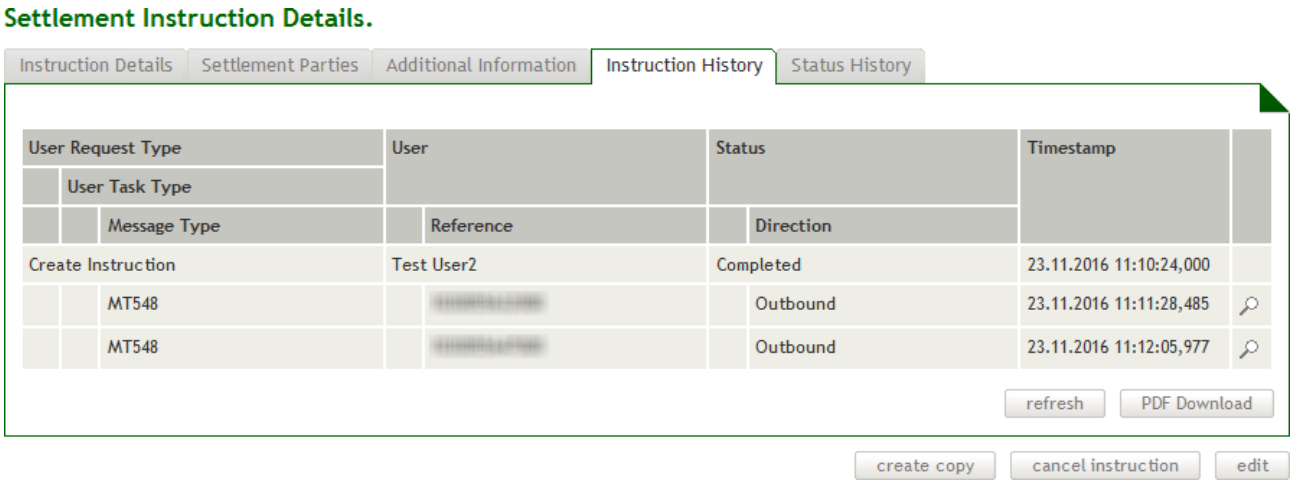


Figure 54: Instruction History - settlement instruction

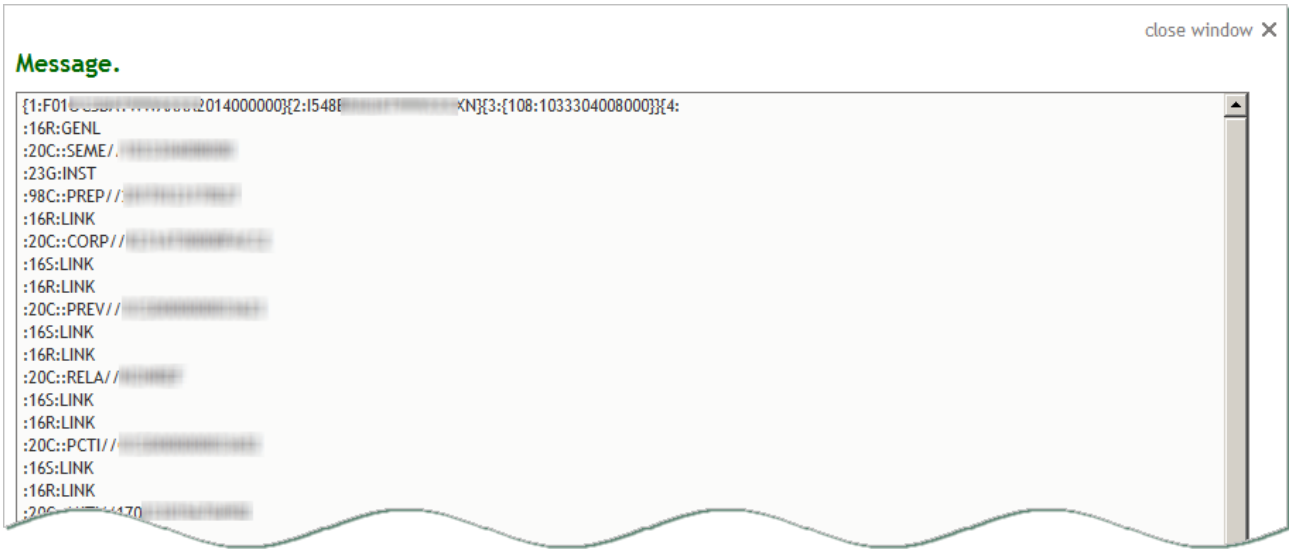


Figure 55: Instruction History - settlement instruction (message detail)

4.2.8 Status History (Settlement Instruction)

The Status History in the detail view of an instruction shows the detailed sequence of status modifications applied to the specific instruction.

NOTE It is not possible to edit entries in the Status History.

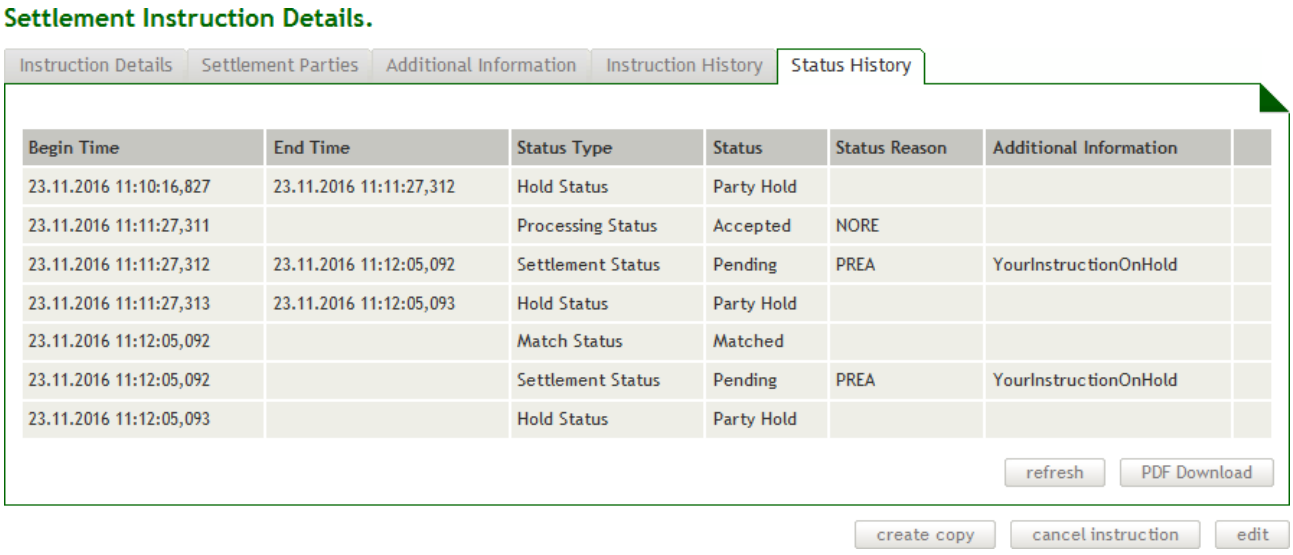
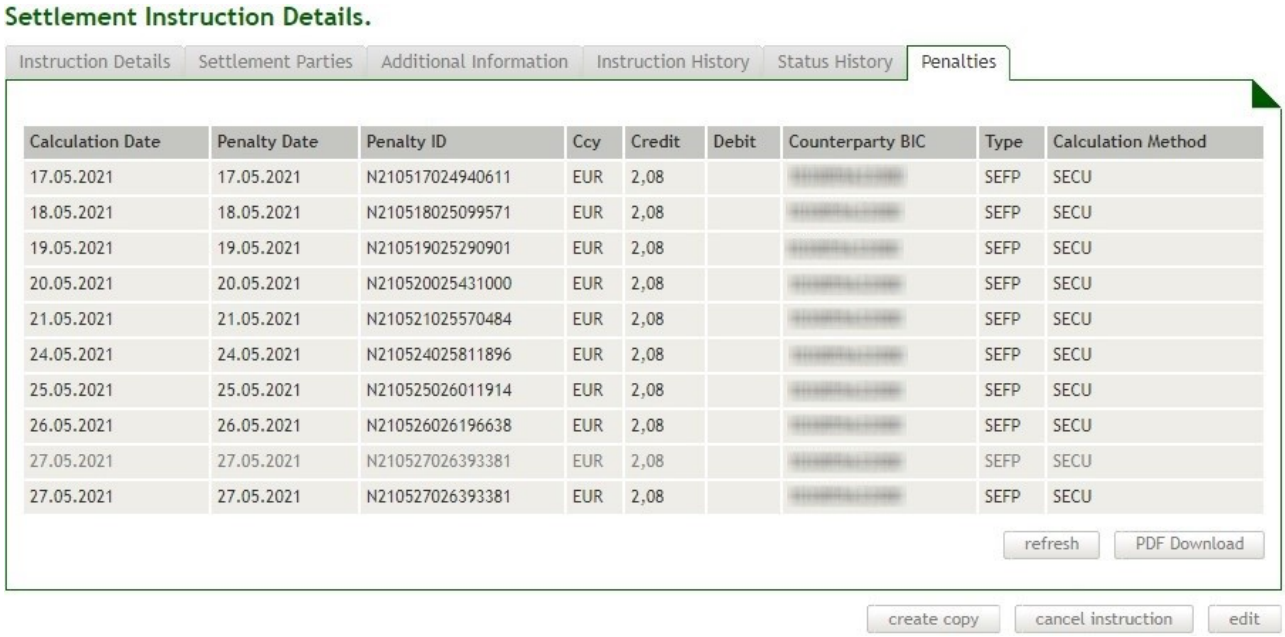


Figure 56: Status History - Settlement Instruction

4.2.9 Penalties (Settlement Instruction)

The Penalties in the detail view of an instruction shows the detailed sequence of penalties for this Instruction.

NOTE Modified penalties are displayed in yellow, deactivated penalties in gray



Calculation Date	Penalty Date	Penalty ID	Ccy	Credit	Debit	Counterparty BIC	Type	Calculation Method
17.05.2021	17.05.2021	N210517024940611	EUR	2,08			SEFP	SECU
18.05.2021	18.05.2021	N210518025099571	EUR	2,08			SEFP	SECU
19.05.2021	19.05.2021	N210519025290901	EUR	2,08			SEFP	SECU
20.05.2021	20.05.2021	N210520025431000	EUR	2,08			SEFP	SECU
21.05.2021	21.05.2021	N210521025570484	EUR	2,08			SEFP	SECU
24.05.2021	24.05.2021	N210524025811896	EUR	2,08			SEFP	SECU
25.05.2021	25.05.2021	N210525026011914	EUR	2,08			SEFP	SECU
26.05.2021	26.05.2021	N210526026196638	EUR	2,08			SEFP	SECU
27.05.2021	27.05.2021	N210527026393381	EUR	2,08			SEFP	SECU
27.05.2021	27.05.2021	N210527026393381	EUR	2,08			SEFP	SECU

Figure 57: Penalties - Settlement Instruction

4.2.10 Refreshing Data in the Settlement Instruction Detail View

The **Settlement Instruction Details** screen shows data current at the time when the screen was opened. In order to display status changes which were carried out by the system or received in the meantime, click on the **refresh** button.

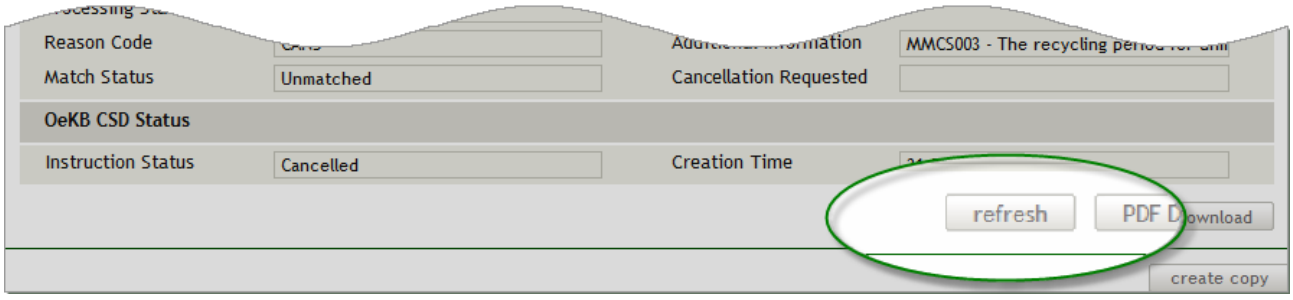


Figure 58: Refreshing data (Settlement Instruction Details)

4.2.11 Field Descriptions (Search Settlement Instructions)

The description of the fields in the **Search Settlement Instructions** screen is sectioned in four parts, i.e. the four drop-down screen sections:

— Search (this section is displayed when the screen is opened for the first time)

— OeKB CSD Status Criteria

— T2S Status Criteria

— Settlement Parties

— More Criteria

TIP	The system records the screen sections displayed and the search screen appears in the same way when you open it the next time.

4.2.11.1 Search (Screen Section, Search Settlement Instructions)

Field	Content (by system)	Entry (by user)	Input Assist.	Length
Reference				
Customer Reference	-	Customer reference of the instruction(s) to be found	-	16 max alphanum.
MITI	-	Market Infrastructure Transaction Identifier of the instruction(s) to be found	-	16 max alphanum.
Matching Reference	-	Reference of the instruction(s) to be found assigned by T2S after matching	-	16 max alphanum.
Corporate Action Reference	-	Reference of the corporate action associated with the instruction(s) to be found	-	16 max alphanum.
Period				
Intended Settlement Date from - to	-	Date range within which the intended settlement date of the instruction(s) to be found shall lie If you leave one of the fields empty, the system will search starting from or ending with the date that has been entered. If you are searching for a specific day, enter the same date into both fields.	Calendar icon	DD-MM-YYYY
Effective Settlement Date from - to	-	Date range within which the effective settlement date of the instruction(s) to be found shall lie If you leave one of the fields empty, the system will search starting from or ending with the date that has been entered. If you are searching for a specific day, enter the same date into both fields.	Calendar icon	DD-MM-YYYY

Field	Content (by system)	Entry (by user)	Input Assist.	Length
Trade Date from - to	-	Date range within which the trade date of the instruction(s) to be found shall lie If you leave one of the fields empty, the system will search starting from or ending with the date that has been entered. If you are searching for a specific day, enter the same date into both fields.	Calendar icon	DD-MM-YYYY

Criteria

ISIN	**Auto-Complete**: After input of the country code the system suggests a list of ISIN.	ISIN of the instruction(s) to be found Country code, then selection from the suggested list	Selection list after input of country code	12 alphanum.
[ISIN] Description	The designation of the financial instrument	-	-	-
Settlement Quantity from - to	-	Value range within which the quantity or nominal value of the financial instrument in the instruction(s) to be found shall lie If you leave one of the fields empty, the system will search starting from or ending with the value that has been entered. If you are searching for a specific quantity, enter the same value into both fields.	-	positive decimal number
[Quantity Type]	After ISIN input or selection: — **FAMT** - for financial instruments with a price as percentage of par (face amount) — **UNIT** - for financial instruments with a price per unit	-	-	-

Field	Content (by system)	Entry (by user)	Input Assist.	Length
Settlement Amount from - to	-	Value range within which the corresponding cash value of the instruction(s) to be found shall lie If you leave one of the fields empty, the system will search starting from or ending with the value that has been entered. If you are searching for a specific quantity, enter the same value into both fields.	-	positive decimal number
[Settlement Amount Currency]	all The system searches for instructions with any currency	Selection from **CHF**, **EUR**, **GBP**, **USD**	Selection	-

Field	Content (by system)	Entry (by user)	Input Assist.	Length
Instruction Type	all The system searches for instructions with any instruction type.	Selection from the list: — **RFP** - Receive Free of Payment, to search only for instructions of type RFP — **DFP** - Delivery Free of Payment, to search only for instructions of type DFP — **RVP** - Receive versus Payment, to search only for instructions of type RVP — **DVP** - Delivery versus Payment, to search only for instructions of type DVP — **RWP** - Receive with Payment, to search only for instructions of type RWP — **DWP** - Delivery with Payment, to search only for instructions of type DWP — **PFRD** - Payment Free of Receive Debit, to search only for instructions of type **PFR Debit** — **PFDD** - Payment Free of Delivery Debit, to search only for instructions of type **PFD Debit** — **PFRC** - Payment Free of Receive Credit, to search only for instructions of type **PFR Credit** — **PFDC** - Payment Free of Delivery Credit, to search only for instructions of type **PFD Credit**	Selection	-

Field	Content (by system)	Entry (by user)	Input Assist.	Length
Transaction Type	**TRAD** - Standard Instruction The system searches only for instructions of transaction type TRAD.	Selection from the list	Selection	-
Instructing Party BIC	- **Auto-Complete**: After input of the first or two consecutive characters of the BIC the system suggests a list of BICs. The complete list of all parties available in the system is displayed after putting the cursor into the field and hitting the arrow down key on the keyboard.	Input of the first or two consecutive characters of the BIC, then selection from the suggested list of parties for which you are authorised to access data	Selection list after input of the first or of two consecutive character(s)	BIC11
[Instructing Party BIC] Description	The designation of the instructing party	-	-	-
Securities Account	all The system searches for instructions with any securities account of the inputting party.	Selection from the securities accounts available for the instructing party INFO In addition to the securities account number this field shows the BIC of the securities account holder.	Selection	35 max alphanum.

4.2.11.2 OeKB CSD Status Criteria (Screen Section, Search Settlement Instructions)

Field	Content (by system)	Entry (by user)	Input Assist.	Length
Instruction Status	all The system searches for instructions with any instruction status.	Selection from the list: — **New**, to search only for newly created instructions. — **Accepted**, to search only for instructions already accepted for processing by T2S. — **Pending**, to search only for instructions for which T2S has returned status Pending. — **Failing**, to search only for instructions for which T2S has returned status Failing. — **Settled**, to search only for settled instructions. — **Cancelled,** to search only for cancelled instructions. — **Rejected**, to search only for instructions rejected by the system.	Selection	-
Task Type	all The system searches for instructions with any type of task.	Selection from **All open tasks**, **User approval task** or **User processing task** By selecting **All open tasks** it is possible to search for instructions which are open tasks. By selecting **User approval tasks** it is possible to search for instructions which are tasks to be approved by another user. By selecting **User processing task** it is possible to search for instructions which are tasks with status **Cancelled** or **Rejected**.	Selection	-

4.2.11.3 T2S Status Criteria (Screen Section, Search Settlement Instructions)

Field	Content (by system)	Entry (by user)	Input Assist.	Length
Party Hold Status	all The system searches for instructions with any **Party Hold** Status.	Selection between **Hold** or **Released** By selecting **Hold** it is possible e.g. to search only for preadvice instructions.	Selection	-

Field	Content (by system)	Entry (by user)	Input Assist.	Length
CSD Hold Status	all The system searches for instructions with any **Hold** status set by the OeKB CSD.	Selection between **Hold** or **Released** By selecting **Hold** it is possible to search exclusively for instructions set on status **Hold** by the OeKB CSD.	Selection	-
CSD Validation Hold Status	all The system searches for instructions with any Hold status related to blocked securities accounts. For more details about blocked securities account categories and the settlement of instructions for blocked securities accounts, please refer to *Annex 8 Guideline Settlement and Securities Account Administration*.	Selection between **Hold** or **Released** By selecting **Hold** it is possible e.g. to search exclusively for instructions which require other processing steps due to the blocked status of a securities account.	Selection	-
CoSD Hold Status	all The system searches for instructions with any Conditional Securities Delivery Hold status.	Selection between **Hold** or **Released** By selecting **Hold** it is possible e.g. to search exclusively for multicurrency **DVP** instructions which have not yet been settled externally.	Selection	-

Field	Content (by system)	Entry (by user)	Input Assist.	Length
Processing Status	all The system searches for instructions with any processing status.	Selection from **Accepted**, **Cancelled**, **Rejected** or **Cancellation Requested** By selecting **Accepted** it is possible to search exclusively for instructions which have already been accepted by the system for processing. By selecting **Cancelled** it is possible to search exclusively for cancelled instructions. By selecting **Rejected** it is possible to search exclusively for instructions which have been rejected by the system. By selecting **Cancellation Requested** it is possible to search exclusively for instructions for which the counterparty has submitted a cancellation.	Selection	-
Pending Reason Codes	all	Selection from the list by clicking on the icon : — **BLOC** - Account Blocked — **CDLR** - Conditional Delivery Awaiting Release — **CLAC** - Counterparty Insufficient Securities — **CMON** - Counterparty Insufficient Money — **CSDH** - CSD Hold — **CVAL** - CSD Validation — **CYCL** - Awaiting next Settlement Cycle — **FUTU** - Awaiting Settlement Date — **INBC** - Incomplete Number Count — **LACK** - Lack of Securities — **LATE** - Market Deadline Missed — **LINK** - Pending Linked Instruction — **MONY** - Insufficient Money — **NORE** - No Specified Reason — **OTHR** - Other — **PART** - Trade Settles In Partials	Selection	-

Field	Content (by system)	Entry (by user)	Input Assist.	Length
		— **PRCY** - Counterparty Instruction on Hold — **PREA** - Your Instruction on Hold — **PRSY** - System on Hold — **SBLO** - Securities Blocked		
Match Status	all The system searches for instructions with any matching status.	Selection between **Matched** or **Unmatched**	Selection	-

4.2.11.4 Settlement Parties (Screen Section, Search Settlement Instructions)

Field	Content (by system)	Entry (by user)	Input Assist.	Length
Receiving Depository BIC	-	BIC of the depository of the receiving party in the instruction(s) to be found	-	BIC11
Receiving Party BIC	-	BIC of the receiving party in the instruction(s) to be found	-	BIC11
Delivering Depository BIC	-	BIC of the depository of the delivering party in the instruction(s) to be found	-	BIC11
Delivering Party BIC	-	BIC of the delivering party in the instruction(s) to be found	-	BIC11

4.2.11.5 More Criteria (Screen Section, Search Settlement Instructions)

Field	Content (by system)	Entry (by user)	Input Assist.	Length
Priority	all The system searches for instructions with any priority.	Selection between **High** or **Normal** By selecting **High** it is possible e.g. to search exclusively for instructions with high priority.	Selection	-

Field	Content (by system)	Entry (by user)	Input Assist.	Length
Partial Settlement Ind.	all The system searches for instructions with any Partial Settlement Indicator.	Selection between **Partial allowed** or **Partial not allowed** By selecting **Partial allowed** it is possible e.g. to search for instructions where partial settlement is permitted. You can use the additional differentiations **minimum cash** and **minimum quantity** to specify whether to limit the results to partially settling instructions where the T2S threshold values are observed. For details see *Annex 8 Guideline Settlement and Securities Account Administration*.	Selection	-
Place of Trade	all The system searches for instructions with any place of trade.	Selection between: - Stock Exchange - Over the Counter - Primary Market - Secondary Market - Various	Selection	-
Place of Clearing		BIC of the Place of Trade in the instruction(s) to be found	-	BIC11
Beneficial Ownership	all The system searches for instructions with any Beneficial Ownership	Selection between: - yes - no	Selection	-

5. Intra-Position Movements

Via the menu item *Settlement* you can create new intra-position movements or search for specific intra-position movements in the system.

Intra-Position Movements are used to block, reserve or earmark positions on a securities account for later use as specific positions to be settled in a settlement instruction.

5.1 Create Intra-Position Movement

How to Open the Create Intra-Position Movement Screen

Step by Step

1 In the menu bar, select *Settlement* > *Create Intra-Position Movement*.
The **Create Intra-Position Movement** screen appears.

A detailed description of all fields, their interdependences from one another or from master data settings, and permitted input (e.g. numbers, text, dates, length, etc.) is available in the Field Descriptions table.

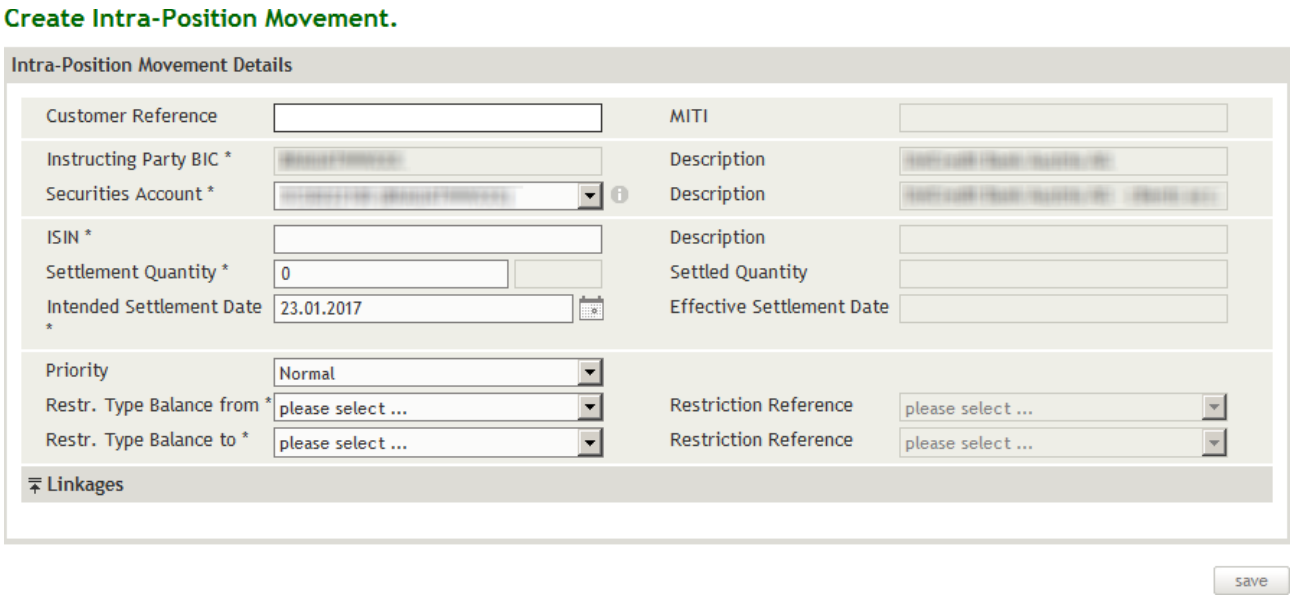


Figure 59: Create Intra Position Movement

The following chapters are step-by-step descriptions of how to create new intra-position movements of the types

— Blocking (blocking of a securities position up to the entire position max.)
— Reservation (reservation of a securities position without limitation to the current quantity of the position)
— Earmarking (earmarking of a position, e.g. for auto-collateralisation)

INFO	To use a position labelled **Blocking** or **Reservation** in an instruction, specify the restriction reference of the blocked or reserved position intended to be used in the settlement instruction as previously specified in an intra-position movement. See Create Settlement Instruction, step Additional Information. For more information on intra-position movements, please refer to *Annex 8 Guideline Settlement and Securities Account Administration.*

5.1.1 Blocking a Securities Position

INFO	The restriction type **Blocking** only allows to block the quantity of securities currently available in the position.

TIP	You can use the menu items *Holdings* > *Securities Positions* to enquire the current securities positions available on a securities account.

How to Block a Securities Position (current quantity max.)

Step by Step

1 In the menu bar, select *Settlement* > *Create Intra-Position Movement*.
The **Create Intra-Position Movement** screen appears.
The system automatically inserts the appropriate predefined values into the fields:

- Instructing Party BIC (= inputting party) incl. Description
- Securities Account (= default securities account of the inputting party) incl. Description

INFO	The field **Securities Account** additionally displays the BIC of the securities account holder.

TIP	Hover the mouse pointer over the icon ⓘ to have additional information displayed about the securities account. See Fields, Buttons and Icons.

- Settlement Quantity (= 0)
- Intended Settlement Date (= current date)
- Priority (= Normal)

NOTE	Remember to verify all the fields automatically completed by the system to make sure all details have been entered correctly.

INFO	If you do not enter your own reference in the optional **Customer Reference** field, the system will automatically generate a unique reference for identification of the intra-position movement.

2 In the field **ISIN**, enter the desired financial instrument.
In the field **Description**, the system automatically completes the details stored for the selected financial instrument and in the field **Quantity Type** the type of listing.

TIP	There is an auto-complete function available in the **ISIN** field: You need only enter the country code; the system will then suggest a list of available ISIN.
TIP	Hover the mouse pointer over the icon ⓘ to have additional information displayed about the ISIN. See Fields, Buttons and Icons.

3 In the field **Settlement Quantity**, enter the desired quantity or nominal value (greater than 0).

INFO	The system automatically fills in the current date in the **Intended Settlement Date** field. You may modify the date if required.
INFO	If you do not make a selection in the optional **Priority** field, the system will automatically assign priority **Normal**.

4 In the field **Restr. Type Balance From**, select the freely available position **AWAS**.

TIP	You may also use earmarked positions for this type of intra-position movement. In the field **Restr. Type Balance From**, select the respective earmarked position..

5 In the field **Restr. Type Balance To**, select one of the options defined for positions of the type **Blockings**.

6 Click **save** to save the intra-position movement.

INFO	If an authorisation according to the 4-eyes principle is required, this record will be listed in the **Tasks waiting for approval** section of the task box until it gets authorised by a releaser.

The intra-position movement is saved and submitted to the system for processing or for 4EP authorisation. The system displays the **Intra-Position Movement Summary**, where you can verify the data you have entered. The screen includes the Instruction History and the Status History in separate tabs.

7 Click **ok** in the **Intra-Position Movement Summary** to confirm your entries. The entry page appears.

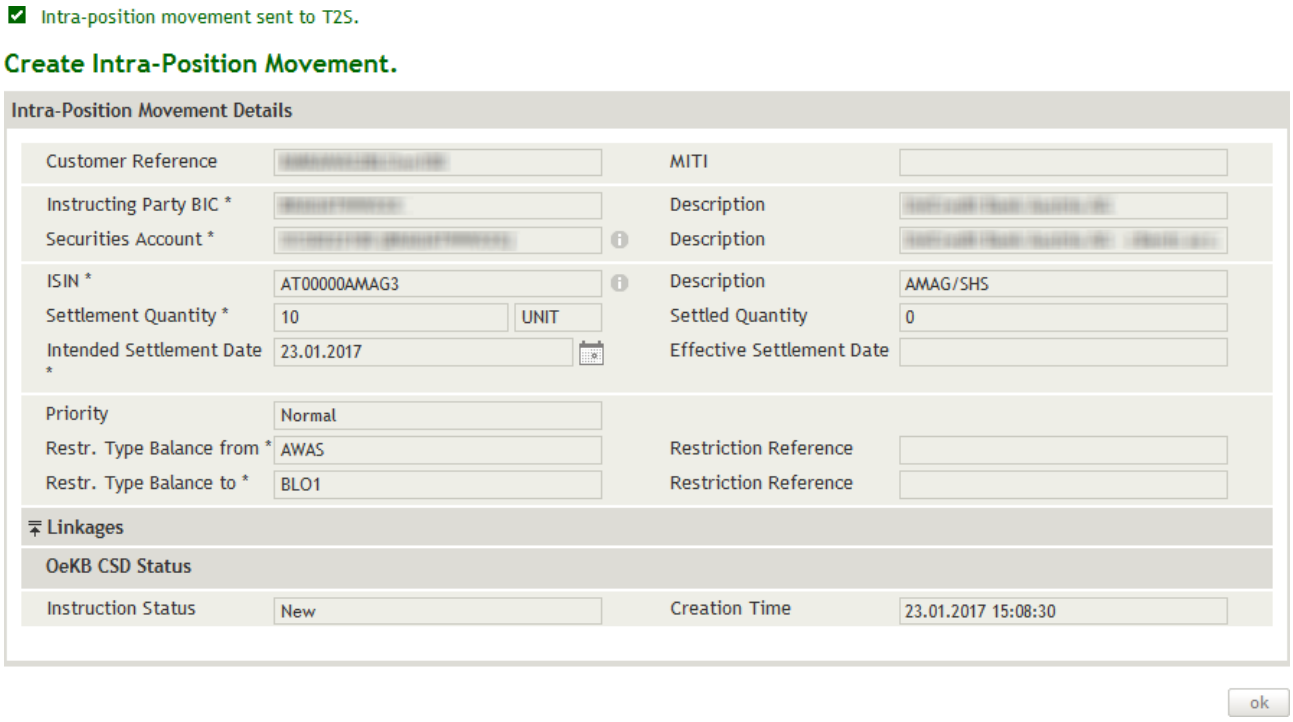


Figure 60: Create Intra Position Movement (Summary after saving))

5.1.2 Reserving a Securities Position

INFO	If the quantity of the intra-position movement exceeds the securities available in the position. All future securities of the same ISIN booked on the same securities account will be automatically reserved until the total quantity of the reservation is covered.

TIP	With a reservation you can flag more securities for a specific purpose than currently available in the position. In this case the intra-position movements are partially settled.

How to Reserve a Securities Position on a Securities Account

Step by Step

1 In the menu bar, select *Settlement* > *Create Intra-Position Movement*.
The **Create Intra-Position Movement** screen appears.
The system automatically inserts the appropriate predefined values into the fields:

— Instructing Party BIC (= inputting party) incl. Description

— Securities Account (= default securities account of the inputting party) incl. Description

INFO	The field **Securities Account** additionally displays the BIC of the securities account holder.

— Settlement Quantity (= 0)
— Intended Settlement Date (= current date)
— Priority (= Normal)

NOTE	Remember to verify all the fields automatically completed by the system to make sure all details have been entered correctly.

INFO	If you do not enter your own reference in the optional **Customer Reference** field, the system will automatically generate a unique reference for identification of the intra-position movement.

2 In the field **ISIN**, enter the desired financial instrument.
In the field **Description**, the system automatically completes the details stored for the selected financial instrument and in the field **Quantity Type** the type of listing.

TIP	There is an auto-complete function available in the **ISIN** field: You need only enter the country code; the system will then suggest a list of available ISIN.

3 In the field **Settlement Quantity**, enter the desired quantity or nominal value (greater than 0).

INFO	The system automatically fills in the current date in the **Intended Settlement Date** field. You may modify the date if required.
INFO	If you do not make a selection in the optional **Priority** field, the system will automatically assign priority **Normal**.

4 In the field **Restr. Type Balance From**, select the freely available position **AWAS**.

TIP	You may also use earmarked positions for this type of intra-position movement. In the field **Restr. Type Balance From**, select the appropriate earmarked position.

5 In the field **Restr. Type Balance To**, select one of the options defined for positions of the type **Reservations**.

6 Click **save** to save the intra-position movement.

INFO	If an authorisation according to the 4-eyes principle is required, this record will be listed in the **Tasks waiting for approval** section of the task box until it gets authorised by a releaser.

The intra-position movement is saved and submitted to the system for processing or for 4EP authorisation. The system displays the **Intra-Position Movement Summary**, where you can verify the data you have entered. The screen includes the Instruction History and the Status History in separate tabs.

7 Click **ok** in the **Intra-Position Movement Summary** to confirm your entries. The entry page appears.

5.1.3 Earmarking a Securities Position

How to Earmark a Securities Position

Step by Step

1 In the menu bar, select *Settlement* > *Create Intra-Position Movement*.
The **Create Intra-Position Movement** screen appears.
The system automatically inserts the appropriate predefined values into the fields:

— Instructing Party BIC (= inputting party) incl. Description

— Securities Account (= default securities account of the inputting party) incl. Description

INFO	The field **Securities Account** additionally displays the BIC of the securities account holder.

— Settlement Quantity (= 0)

— Intended Settlement Date (= current date)

— Priority (= Normal)

NOTE	Remember to verify all the fields automatically completed by the system to make sure all details have been entered correctly.

INFO	If you do not enter your own reference in the optional **Customer Reference** field, the system will automatically generate a unique reference for identification of the intra-position movement.

2 In the field **ISIN**, enter the desired financial instrument.
In the field **Description**, the system automatically completes the details stored for the selected financial instrument and in the field **Quantity Type** the type of listing.

TIP	There is an auto-complete function available in the **ISIN** field: You need only enter the country code; the system will then suggest a list of available ISIN.

3 In the field **Settlement Quantity**, enter the desired quantity or nominal value (greater than 0).

INFO	The system automatically fills in the current date in the **Intended Settlement Date** field. You may modify the date if required.
INFO	If you do not make a selection in the optional **Priority** field, the system will automatically assign priority **Normal**.

4 In the field **Restr. Type Balance From**, select the freely available position **AWAS**.

TIP	You may also use other positions to define earmarked positions. In the field **Restr. Type Balance From**, select the appropriate blocked, reserved or another earmarked position.

5 In the field **Restr. Type Balance To**, select one of the options defined for positions of the type **Earmarking**.

6 Click **save** to save the intra-position movement.

INFO	If an authorisation according to the 4-eyes principle is required, this record will be listed in the **Tasks waiting for approval** section of the task box until it gets authorised by a releaser.

The intra-position movement is saved and submitted to the system for processing or for 4EP authorisation. The system displays the **Intra-Position Movement Summary**, where you can verify the data you have entered. The screen includes the Instruction History and the Status History in separate tabs.

7 Click **ok** in the **Intra-Position Movement Summary** to confirm your entries. The entry page appears.

5.1.4 Entering Linkages for an Intra-Position Movement

The concept and entry of linkages for intra-position movements is identical to linkages for instructions. See Entering Linkages for an Instruction.

5.1.5 Field Descriptions (Create Intra-Position Movement)

INFO	The **Create Intra-Position Movement** screen is used as **Intra-Position Movement Detail** (when displaying an intra-position movement) with exactly the same appearance. Field values or entries which differ between these variants of the screen are listed with the descriptions of the respective fields further below.

Field	Content (by system)	Entry (by user)	Length
Customer Reference	Create If left empty by the user, the system will generate a unique reference	Own reference	16 max alphanum.
	Edit / Detail View: The customer reference of the instruction	-	

Field	Content (by system)	Entry (by user)	Length
MITI	Create: - Edit / Detail View: The unique Market Infrastructure Transaction Identifier automatically assigned as soon as the intra-position movement has been accepted by the system	-	-
Instructing Party BIC **Mandatory field during Create (automatically completed by the system)**	BIC of the inputting party	-	BIC11
[Instructing Party BIC] Description	The designation of the instructing party	-	-
Securities Account **Mandatory field during Create**	The securities account defined as the default	Create: Selection from the securities accounts available for the instructing party **INFO** In addition to the securities account number this field shows the BIC of the securities account holder. **TIP** Hover the mouse pointer over the icon ⓘ to have additional information displayed about the securities account. See Fields, Buttons and Icons. Edit / Detail View: -	-
[Securities Account] Description	The designation of the selected securities account	-	-

Field	Content (by system)	Entry (by user)	Length
ISIN **Mandatory field during Create**	Create: **Auto-Complete**: After input of the country code the system suggests a list of ISIN.	Country code, then selection from the suggested list **TIP** Hover the mouse pointer over the icon ⓘ to have additional information displayed about the ISIN. See Fields, Buttons and Icons.	12 alphanum.
	Edit / Detail View: The ISIN selected during creation	-	
[ISIN] Description	The designation of the financial instrument	-	-
Settlement Quantity **Mandatory field during Create**	Create: 0	Quantity of the securities position to be blocked, reserved or earmarked.	Decimal number
	Edit / Detail View: Quantity of the securities position to be blocked, reserved or earmarked selected during creation.	-	
[Quantity Type]	After ISIN input or selection: — **FAMT** - for financial instruments with a price as percentage of par (face amount) — **UNIT** - for financial instruments with a price per unit	-	-
Settled Quantity	Create: -	-	Decimal number
	Edit / Detail View: 0 or in case of settled intra-position movements the settled quantity or the settled nominal value of the financial instruments		

Field	Content (by system)	Entry (by user)	Length
Intended Settlement Date **Mandatory field during Create (automatically completed by the system)**	Create: The current date Edit / Detail View: The settlement date on which the settlement of the intra-position movement was intended	Date of the settlement date	DD-MM-YYYY
Effective Settlement Date	Create: - Detail view: In case of settled intra-position movements the date of the day when the intra-position movement was actually settled	-	DD-MM-YYYY
Priority	Create: **Normal**	Selection between **Normal** or **High** Intra-position movements with priority **High** are settled before intra-position movements with priority **Normal**.	-
	Edit: It is possible to select a different Priority when editing an intra-position movement.		
	Detail view: **Normal** or **High**	-	
Restr. Type Balance From **Mandatory field during Create**	Create Input request 'please select ...'	Selection from the list: — **AWAS (Deliverable Securities Position)** - available securities position — **BLO1 (Case 3 Position Blocking)** - blocked securities position (labelled in an intra-position movement as **Restr. Type Balance To** "BLO1") — **EAR1 (Case 3 Position Earmarking)** - earmarked securities position (labelled in an intra-position movement as **Restr. Type Balance To** "EAR1") — **EEUR (Earmarking for auto-collat in EURO)** - earmarked securities position (labelled in an intra-position movement as **Restr. Type Balance To** "EEUR") — **EGBP (Earmarking for auto-collat in GBP)** - earmarked securities position (labelled in an intra-position	-

Field	Content (by system)	Entry (by user)	Length
		movement as **Restr. Type Balance To** "EGBP") — **EXXX (Earmarking for auto-collat)** - earmarked securities position (labelled in an intra-position movement as **Restr. Type Balance To** "EXXX") — **RES1 (Case 3 Position Reservation)** - reserved securities position (labelled in an intra-position movement as **Restr. Type Balance To** "RES1") NOTE There are restrictions as to which combinations of **Restr. Type Balance From** and **Restr. Type Balance To** are permitted. For details please refer to *Annex 8 Guideline Settlement and Securities Account Administration* and to the corresponding step-by-step descriptions for Blockings, Reservations and Earmarking. NOTE Additional options will be added by OeKB CSD GmbH if need be	
	Edit / Detail View The original position entered during creation	-	
[Restr. **Type Balance From]** Restriction Reference	The unique reference of the securities position automatically assigned as soon as the intra-position movement has been accepted by the system.	-	-

Field	Content (by system)	Entry (by user)	Length
Restr. Type Balance To **Mandatory field during Create**	Create Input request 'please select ...'	Selection from the list: — **AWAS (Deliverable Securities Position)** - designation as available securities position — **BLO1 (Case 3 Position Blocking)** - designation as blocked securities position (labelled in an intra-position movement as **Restr. Type Balance To** "BLO1") — **EAR1 (Case 3 Position Earmarking)** - designation as earmarked securities position (labelled in an intra-position movement as **Restr. Type Balance To** "EAR1") — **EEUR (Earmarking for auto-collat in EURO)** - designation as earmarked securities position (labelled in an intra-position movement as **Restr. Type Balance To** "EEUR") — **EGBP (Earmarking for auto-collat in EGBP)** - designation as earmarked securities position (labelled in an intra-position movement as **Restr. Type Balance To** "EGBP") — **EXXX (Earmarking for auto-collat)** - designation as earmarked securities position (labelled in an intra-position movement as **Restr. Type Balance To** "EXXX") — **RES1 (Case 3 Position Reservation)** - designation as reserved securities position (labelled in an intra-position movement as **Restr. Type Balance To** "RES1") NOTE There are restrictions as to which combinations of **Restr. Type Balance From** and **Restr. Type Balance To** are permitted. For details please refer to *Annex 8 Guideline Settlement and Securities Account Administration* and to the corresponding step-by-step descriptions for Blockings, Reservations and Earmarking.	-

Field	Content (by system)	Entry (by user)	Length
		NOTE Additional options will be added by OeKB CSD GmbH if need be	
	Edit / Detail View The designated position entered during creation	-	
[Restr. **Type Balance To]** Restriction Reference	The unique reference of the securities position automatically assigned as soon as the intra-position movement has been accepted by the system.	-	-
Linkages	-	see Linkages (field description)	Drop-down screen section

T2S Status Information

Processing Status	All	Create: This field is not displayed in the **Create** screen.	-
		Edit / Detail View: - **Accepted**, **Cancellation requested**, **Cancelled** or **Rejected** (depends on the message type)	
Reason Code	All	Create: This field is not displayed in the **Create** screen.	-
		Edit / Detail View: - depends on the processing status	

Field	Content (by system)	Entry (by user)		Length
[Reason Code] **Additional Information**	All	Create: This field is not displayed in the **Create** screen.		-
		Edit / Detail View: The designation of the displayed reason codes	-	
Processing Status	All	Create: This field is not displayed in the **Create** screen.		-
		Edit / Detail View: **Pending** or **Settled**	-	

OeKB CSD Status

INFO The fields of this screen section are only displayed in the detail view, not in the Create and Edit screens.

Instruction Status	All	Detail view: **New**, **Accepted**, **Pending**, **Failling**, **Settled**, **Cancelled**, **Rejected** or **Ignored**	-	-
Creation Time	All	Detail view: Time at which the instruction has been entered in the system	-	-
Request Party BIC	All	Detail view: BIC of the inputting party in case of instructions subject to authorisation according to the 4-eyes principle	-	-
Request User	All	Detail view: In case of instructions, for which an authorisation according to the 4-eyes principle is intended, the user who entered the instruction	-	-

Field	Content (by system)	Entry (by user)		Length
User Request Type	All	Detail view: In case of instructions, for which an authorisation according to the 4-eyes principle is intended, the type of record entered by the user	-	-
User Request Status	All	Detail view: In case of instructions, for which an authorisation according to the 4-eyes principle is intended, the release status of the record entered by the user	-	-

5.2 Search Intra-Position Movements

You can search for intra-position movements in order to modify them (e.g. to increase or decrease positions), copy them or to find out which intra-position movements are available to be assigned to instructions.

TIP	If you repeatedly use the same search criteria, you can enter them and save them in a search template

How to Open the Search Intra-Position Movement Screen

Step by Step

1 In the menu bar, select *Settlement* > *Search Intra-Position Movements*.
The **Search Intra-Position Movements** screen appears.

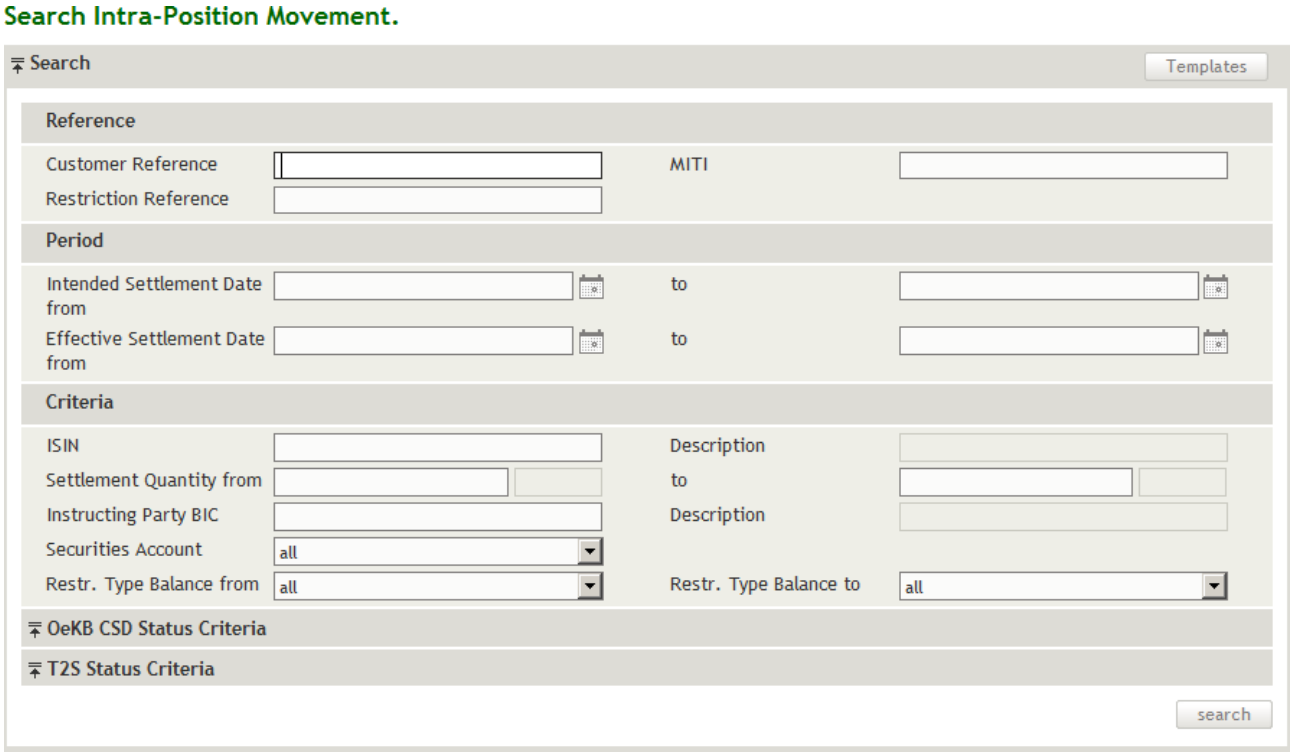


Figure 61: Search Intra Position Movements

You can use the following drop-down screen sections to enter search criteria:

— Search (this section is displayed when the screen is opened for the first time**Fehler! Verweisquelle konnte nicht gefunden werden.**)

— OeKB CSD Status Criteria

— T2S Status Criteria

TIP	The system records the screen sections displayed and the search screen appears in the same way when you open it the next time.

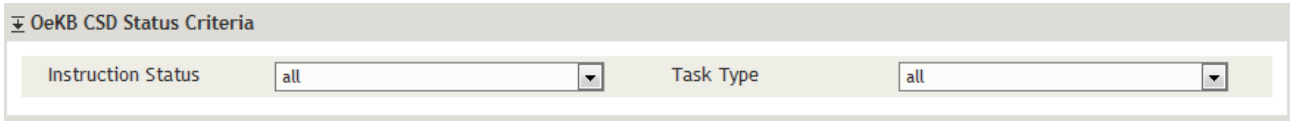


Figure 62: Search Intra Position Movements - OeKB CSD Status Criteria

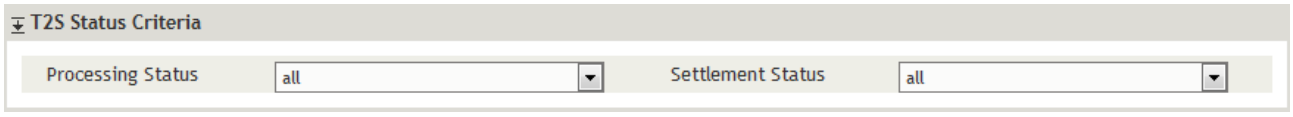


Figure 63: Search Intra Position Movements - T2S Status Criteria

TIP	Clicking on **search** without entering search criteria lists all intra-position movements available in the system. To search for (a) specific intra-position movement(s), enter criteria in the fields which best characterise the intra-position movement you are looking for.

5.2.1 Modifying Intra-Position Movements

If you want to modify the priority of an intra-position movement or add or modify linkages for the intra-position movement, you need to search for the intra-position movement you are looking for. Then you can use the **Edit** screen to make the desired changes. You may change the entries in the following fields of the **Edit** screen:

— Priority

— Linkages (drop-down screen section)

NOTE	Depending on the processing status and the type of the intra-position movement some fields may be disabled.

TIP	Editing an intra-position movement is also possible from the detail view using the **edit** button.
TIP	The detailed description of the fields in the **Edit Intra-Position Movement** screen are available in the individual Field Descriptions tables in chapter Create Intra-Position Movement.

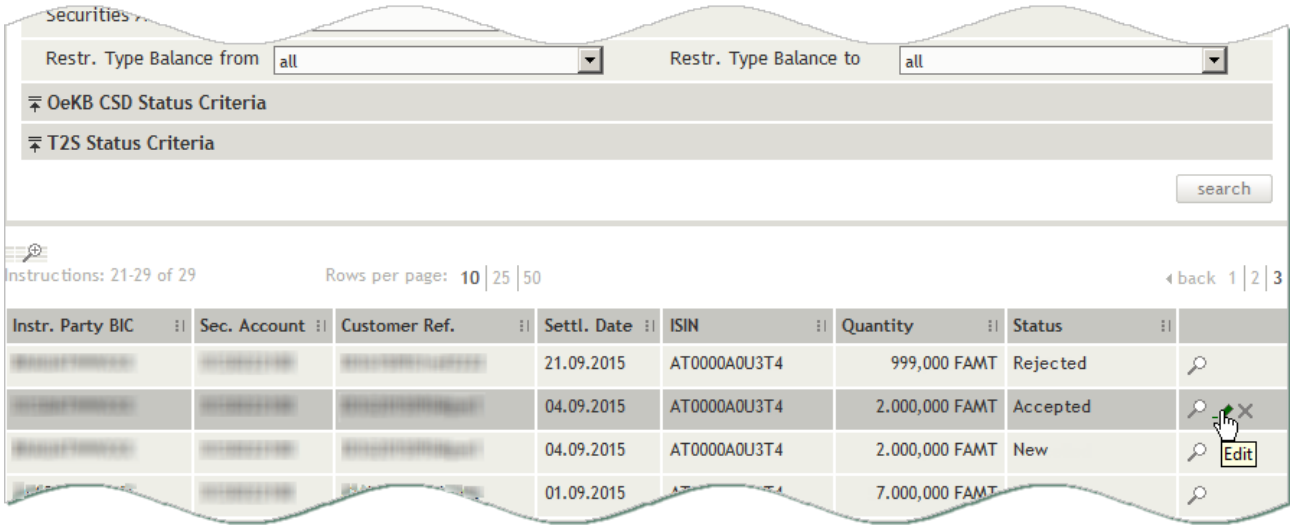


Figure 64: Search Intra Position Movement - search result list (example: edit)

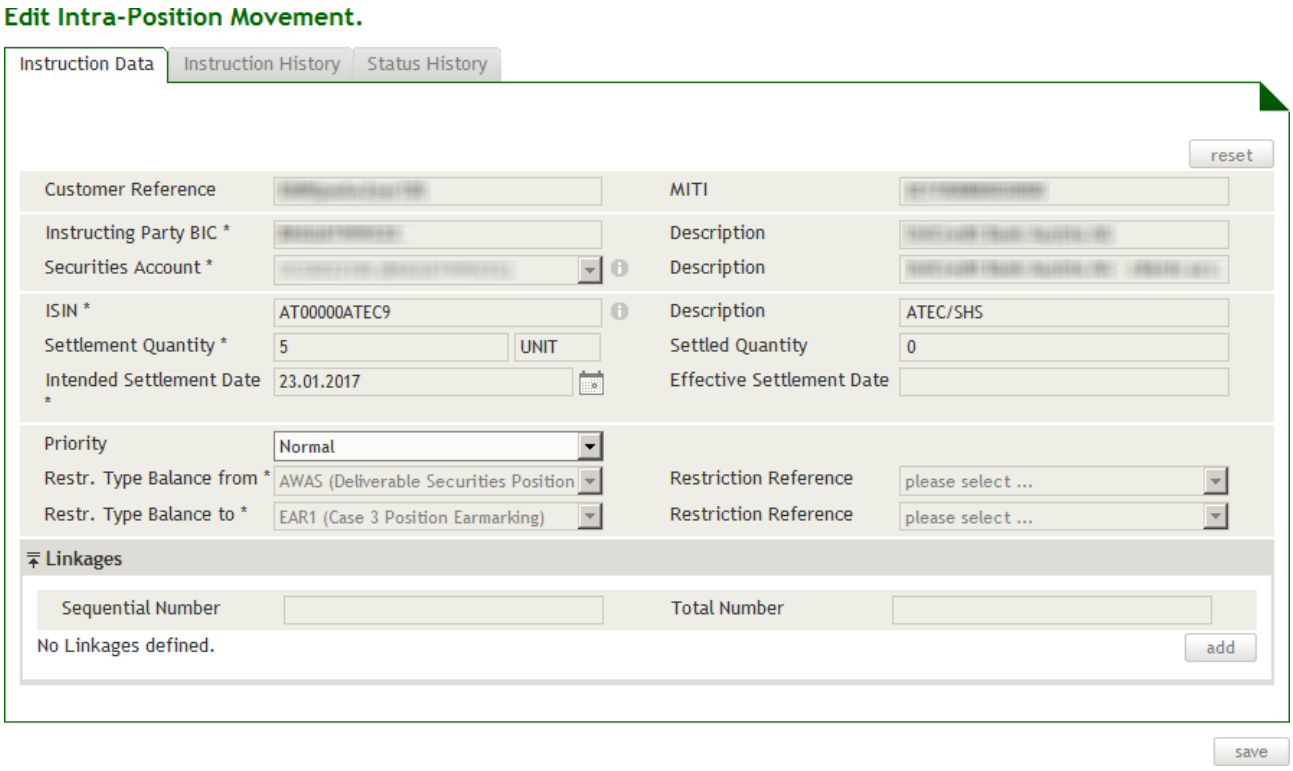


Figure 65: Edit Intra Position Movement

How to Modify an Intra-Position Movement

Step by Step

1 In the menu bar, select *Settlement* > *Search Intra-Position Movements*.
The **Search Intra-Position Movements** screen appears.
The system automatically inserts the appropriate predefined values into the fields:

- Securities Account (= all)
- Restr. Type Balance from (= all)
- Restr. Type Balance to (= all)
- Instruction Status (= all)
- Task Type (= all)
- Processing Status (= all)
- Settlement Status (= all)

2 Enter the desired search criteria in the available fields or limit the selections in the fields completed by the system.

3 Click on the **search** button.
The search result list containing all intra-position movements matching your search criteria appears.

4 You have the following options:

a1 In the row of the record you want to modify, click on the **Details** icon to open the detail view.

a2 Click **edit** to open the **Edit** screen of the record.

INFO	The system only displays the **edit** button if your user permissions allow you to modify data.

b In the row of the record you want to modify, click on the **Edit** icon to open the **Edit** screen.

INFO	The system only displays the **Edit** icon if your user permissions allow you to modify data.

5 Modify the record as required.

NOTE	Depending on the processing status and the type of the intra-position movement some fields may be disabled.

INFO	Only **Priority** and **Linkages** can be modified when editing instructions.

TIPP	If you would like to increase or decrease the securities positions of an intra-position movement, enter the modifications accordingly in the **Create Intra-Position Movement** screen.

6 Click **save** to save the intra-position movement.

INFO	If an authorisation according to the 4-eyes principle is required, this record will be listed in the **Tasks waiting for approval** section of the task box until it gets authorised by a releaser.

The intra-position movement is saved and submitted to the system for processing or for 4EP authorisation. The system displays the **Intra-Position Movement Summary**, where you can verify the data you have entered. The screen includes the Instruction History and the Status History in separate tabs.

7 Click **ok** in the **Intra-Position Movement Summary** to confirm your entries. The entry page appears.

5.2.2 Modifying Linkages for an Intra-Position Movement

The concept and modification of linkages for intra-position movements is identical to entering linkages for instructions. See Entering Linkages for an Instruction

5.2.3 Increasing the Positions of an Intra-Position Movement

To increase the positions of an intra-position movement you need to create a new intra-position movement.

How to Increase the Positions of an Intra-Position Movement

Step by Step

1 In the menu bar, select *Settlement* > *Create Intra-Position Movement*.
The **Create Intra-Position Movement** screen appears.
The system automatically inserts the appropriate predefined values into the fields:

— Instructing Party BIC (= inputting party) incl. Description

— Securities Account (= default securities account of the inputting party) incl. Description

INFO	The field **Securities Account** additionally displays the BIC of the securities account holder.

— Settlement Quantity (= 0)

— Intended Settlement Date (= current date)

— Priority (= Normal)

NOTE	Remember to verify all the fields automatically completed by the system to make sure all details have been entered correctly.

INFO	If you do not enter your own reference in the optional **Customer Reference** field, the system will automatically generate a unique reference for identification of the intra-position movement.

2 In the field **ISIN**, enter the desired financial instrument.
In the field **Description**, the system automatically completes the details stored for the selected financial instrument and in the field **Quantity Type** the type of listing.

TIP	There is an auto-complete function available in the **ISIN** field: You need only enter the country code; the system will then suggest a list of available ISIN.

3 In the field **Settlement Quantity**, enter the desired quantity or nominal value (greater than 0).

INFO	The system automatically fills in the current date in the **Intended Settlement Date** field. You may modify the date if required.
INFO	If you do not make a selection in the optional **Priority** field, the system will automatically assign priority **Normal**.

4 In the field **Restr. Type Balance From**, select the positions type from which to allocate the securities to the blocked, reserved or earmarked position.

NOTE	There are restrictions as to which combinations of **Restr. Type Balance From** and **Restr. Type Balance To** are permitted. For details please refer to the *Annex 8 Guideline Settlement and Securities Account Administration* and to the corresponding step-by-step descriptions for Blockings, Reservations and Earmarking (Create Settlement Restriction)

TIP	If you want to use securities from a position already allocated to an intra-position movement, select the reference of the corresponding restriction position in the field **Restriction Reference** (Restr. Type Balance From). There are options available in the field **Restriction Reference** only if intra-position movements of the selected type have been previously entered.

5 In the field **Restr. Type Balance To** select the positions type of the position to which you want to allocate the securities.

6 In the field **Restriction Reference** (Restr. Type Balance To) select the reference of the intra-position movement to which you want to allocate the position.

7 Click **save** to save the intra-position movement.

INFO	If an authorisation according to the 4-eyes principle is required, this record will be listed in the **Tasks waiting for approval** section of the task box until it gets authorised by a releaser.

The intra-position movement is saved and submitted to the system for processing or for 4EP authorisation. The system displays the **Intra-Position Movement Summary**, where you can verify the data you have entered. The screen includes the Instruction History and the Status History in separate tabs.

8 Click **ok** in the **Intra-Position Movement Summary** to confirm your entries.
The entry page appears.

5.2.4 Decreasing the Positions of an Intra-Position Movement

To decrease the positions of an intra-position movement you need to create a new intra-position movement.

How to Decrease the Positions of an Intra-Position Movement

Step by Step

1 In the menu bar, select *Settlement* > *Create Intra-Position Movement*.
The **Create Intra-Position Movement** screen appears.
The system automatically inserts the appropriate predefined values into the fields:

— Instructing Party BIC (= inputting party) incl. Description

— Securities Account (= default securities account of the inputting party) incl. Description

INFO	The field **Securities Account** additionally displays the BIC of the securities account holder.

— Settlement Quantity (= 0)

— Intended Settlement Date (= current date)

— Priority (= Normal)

NOTE	Remember to verify all the fields automatically completed by the system to make sure all details have been entered correctly.

INFO	If you do not enter your own reference in the optional **Customer Reference** field, the system will automatically generate a unique reference for identification of the intra-position movement.

2 In the field **ISIN**, enter the desired financial instrument.
In the field **Description**, the system automatically completes the details stored for the selected financial instrument and in the field **Quantity Type** the type of listing.

TIP	There is an auto-complete function available in the **ISIN** field: You need only enter the country code; the system will then suggest a list of available ISIN.

3 In the field **Settlement Quantity**, enter the desired quantity or nominal value (greater than 0).

INFO	The system automatically fills in the current date in the **Intended Settlement Date** field. You may modify the date if required.
INFO	If you do not make a selection in the optional **Priority** field, the system will automatically assign priority **Normal**.

4 In the field **Restr. Type Balance From** select the positions type of the position where you want to decrease the securities.

NOTE	There are restrictions as to which combinations of **Restr. Type Balance From** and **Restr. Type Balance To** are permitted. For details please refer to *Annex 8 Guideline Settlement and Securities Account Administration* and to the corresponding step-by-step descriptions for Blockings, Reservations and Earmarking (Create Settlement Restriction)

5 In the field **Restriction Reference** (Restr. Type Balance From) select the reference of the intra-position movement where you want to decrease the position.

6 In the field **Restr. Type Balance To** select the positions type of the position to which you want to allocate the securities.

TIP	If you want to add the securities directly to a position already allocated to an intra-position movement, select the reference of the corresponding intra-position movement in the field **Restriction Reference** (Restr. Type Balance To). There are options available in the field **Restriction Reference** only if intra-position movements of the selected type have been previously entered.

7 Click **save** to save the intra-position movement.

INFO	If an authorisation according to the 4-eyes principle is required, this record will be listed in the **Tasks waiting for approval** section of the task box until it gets authorised by a releaser.

The intra-position movement is saved and submitted to the system for processing or for 4EP authorisation. The system displays the **Intra-Position Movement Summary**, where you can verify the data you have entered. The screen includes the Instruction History and the Status History in separate tabs.

8 Click **ok** in the **Intra-Position Movement Summary** to confirm your entries. The entry page appears.

5.2.5 Searching for an Intra-Position Movement

How to Search for an Intra-Position Movement Available to be Used in an Instruction

Step by Step

1 In the menu bar, select *Settlement* > *Search Intra-Position Movements*.
The **Search Intra-Position Movements** screen appears.
The system automatically inserts the appropriate predefined values into the fields:

- Securities Account (= all)
- Restr. Type Balance from (= all)
- Restr. Type Balance to (= all)
- Instruction Status (= all)
- Task Type (= all)
- Processing Status (= all)
- Settlement Status (= all)

2 Enter the desired search criteria in the available fields or limit the selections in the fields completed by the system.

3 Click on the **search** button.
The search result list containing all intra-position movements matching your search criteria appears.

5.2.6 Copying an Intra-Position Movement

In the detail view of an intra-position movement you can create a copy of the current intra-position movement.

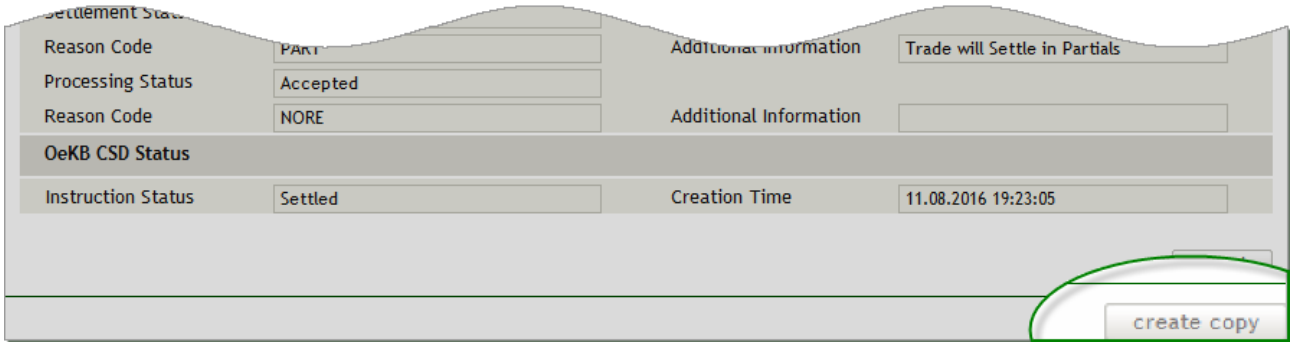


Figure 66: Copying an intra-position movement

How to Copy an Intra-Position Movement

Step by Step

1 In the menu bar, select *Settlement* > *Search Intra-Position Movements*.
The **Search Intra-Position Movements** screen appears.
The system automatically inserts the appropriate predefined values into the fields:

- Securities Account (= all)
- Restr. Type Balance from (= all)
- Restr. Type Balance to (= all)
- Instruction Status (= all)
- Task Type (= all)
- Processing Status (= all)
- Settlement Status (= all)

2 Enter the desired search criteria in the available fields or limit the selections in the fields completed by the system.

3 Click on the **search** button.
The search result list containing all intra-position movements matching your search criteria appears.

4 In the row of the record you want to copy, click on the **Details** icon to open the detail view.

5 Click on the **create copy** button.
The **Create Intra-Position Movement** screen appears.
The fields are filled with the data of the copied intra-position movement.

6 Enter or modify the data (see Create Intra-Position Movement) which should be different in the new intra-position movement.

7 Click **save** to save the intra-position movement.

INFO	If an authorisation according to the 4-eyes principle is required, this record will be listed in the **Tasks waiting for approval** section of the task box until it gets authorised by a releaser.

The intra-position movement is saved and submitted to the system for processing or for 4EP authorisation. The system displays the **Intra-Position Movement Summary**, where you can verify the data you have entered. The screen includes the Instruction History and the Status History in separate tabs.

8 Click **ok** in the **Intra-Position Movement Summary** to confirm your entries.
The entry page appears.

5.2.7 Cancelling an Intra-Position Movement

If you want to cancel an intra-position movement, you need to search for the intra-position movement you are looking for. Then you can click on the **X** icon on the right-hand side of the row which displays the intra-position movement to be cancelled.

TIP	Cancelling an intra-position movement is also possible from the detail view using the **cancel instruction** button.

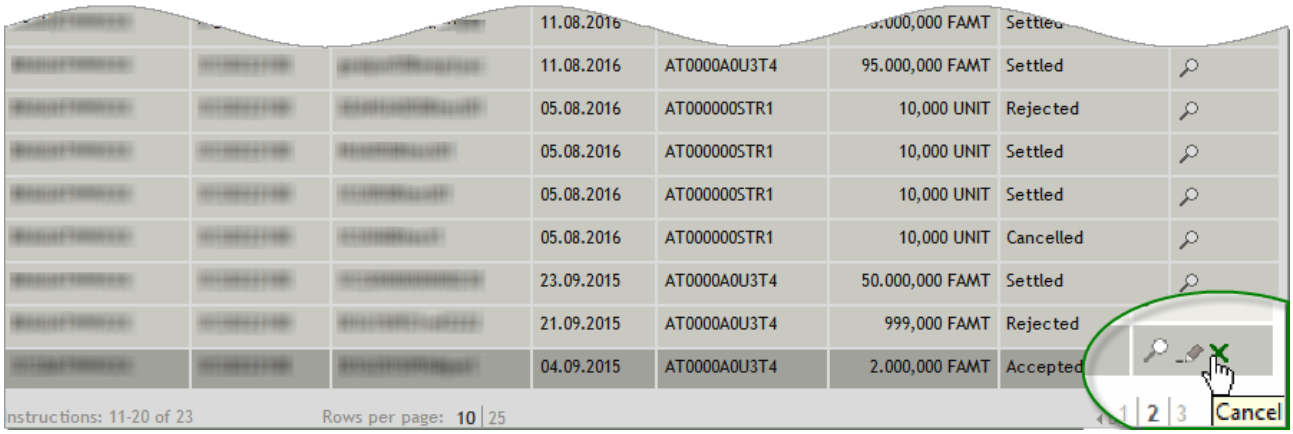


Figure 67: Search Intra-Position Movement - search result list (example: cancel)

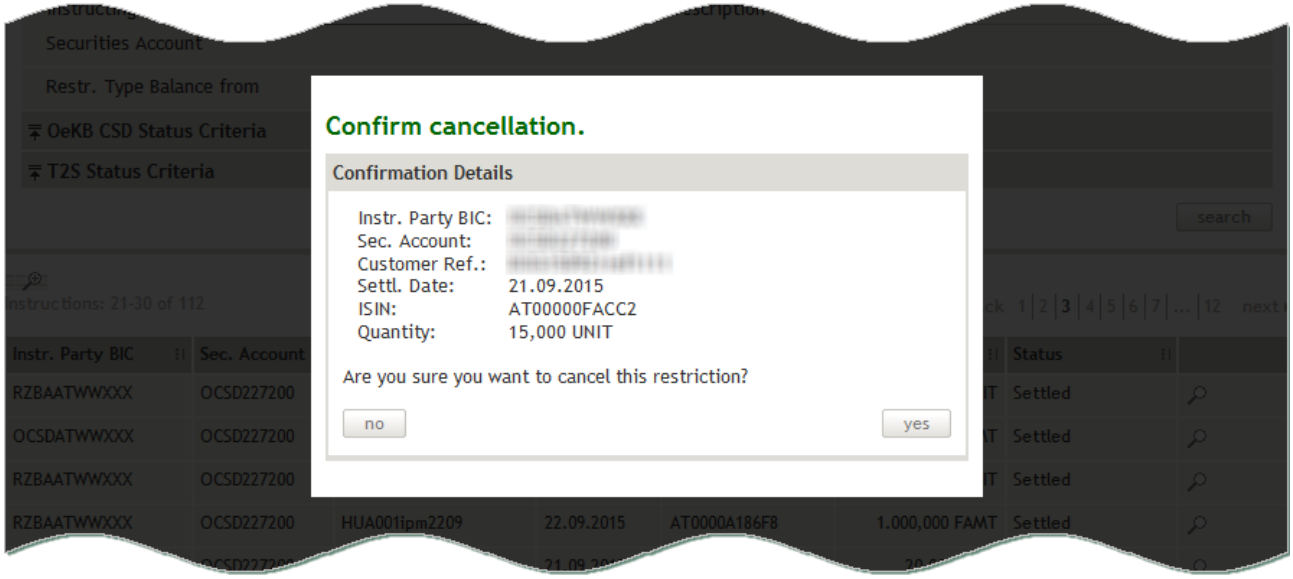


Figure 68: Confirm cancellation (intra-position movement)

How to Cancel an Intra-Position Movement

Step by Step

1 In the menu bar, select *Settlement* > *Search Intra-Position Movements*.
The **Search Intra-Position Movements** screen appears.
The system automatically inserts the appropriate predefined values into the fields:

- Securities Account (= all)
- Restr. Type Balance from (= all)
- Restr. Type Balance to (= all)
- Instruction Status (= all)
- Task Type (= all)
- Processing Status (= all)
- Settlement Status (= all)

2 Enter the desired search criteria in the available fields or limit the selections in the fields completed by the system.

3 Click on the **search** button.
The search result list containing all intra-position movements matching your search criteria appears.

4 In the row containing the intra-position movement to be cancelled, click on the **X** icon.

5 Click **yes** in the pop-up dialog.

> **INFO** If an authorisation according to the 4-eyes principle is required, this record will be listed in the **Tasks waiting for approval** section of the task box until it gets authorised by a releaser.

The intra-position movement is cancelled and submitted to the system for processing or for 4EP authorisation.
The search result list is still available on the screen.

5.2.8 Instruction History (Intra-Position Movement)

The Instruction History in the detail view of an intra-position movement shows the detailed sequence of user actions (see modifying, increasing or decreasing intra-position movements) and user tasks (see Taskbox) carried out for the specific intra-position movement. It also shows all messages (inbound and outbound) of the intra-position movement. The original messages can be accessed by clicking on the **Detail** icon.

> **NOTE** It is not possible to edit entries in the Instruction History.

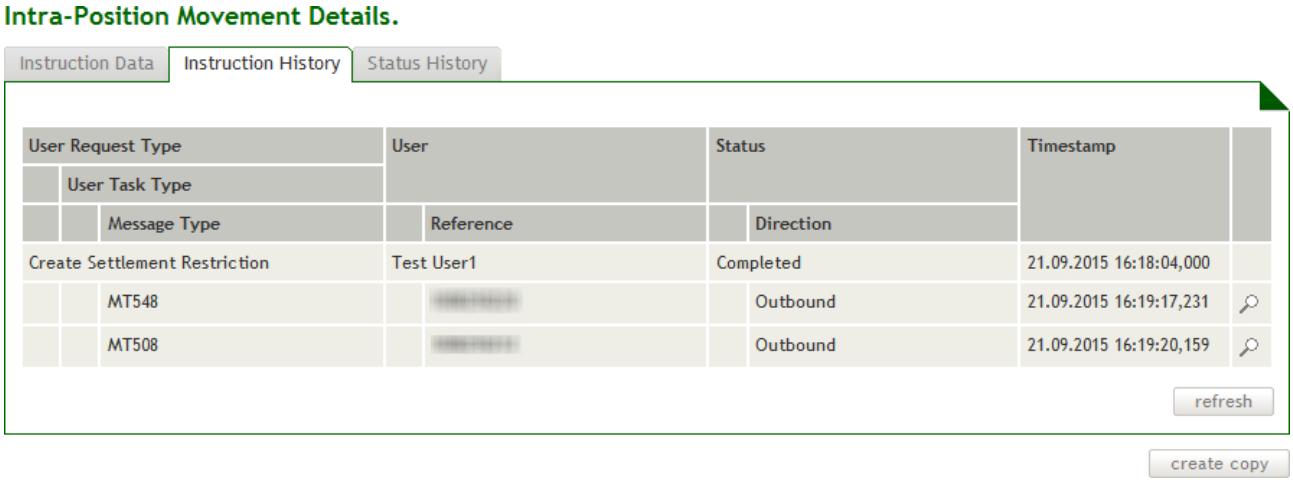


Figure 69: Instruction History - intra position movement

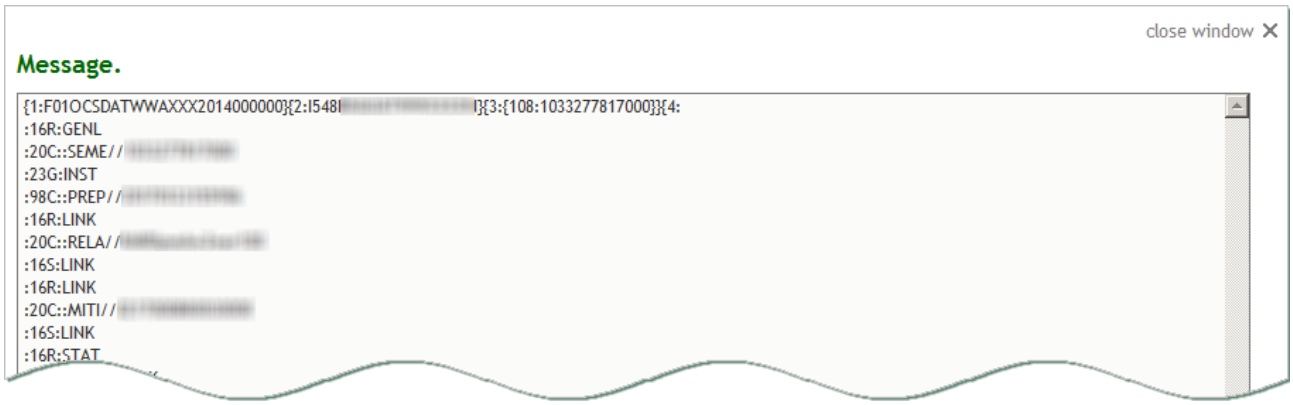


Figure 70: Instruction History - intra position movement (message detail)

5.2.9 Status History (Intra-Position Movement)

The Status History in the detail view of an intra-position movement shows the detailed sequence of status modifications applied to the specific intra-position movement.

NOTE It is not possible to edit entries in the Status History.

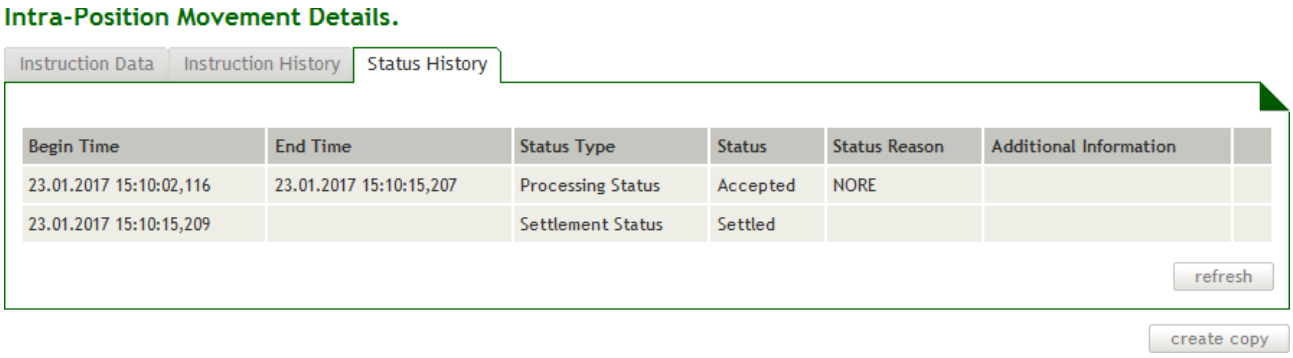


Figure 71: Status History - intra position movement

5.2.10 Refreshing Data in the Intra-Position Movement Detail View

The Intra-Position Movement Details screen shows data current at the time when the screen was opened. In order to display status changes which were carried out by the system or received in the meantime, click on the refresh button.

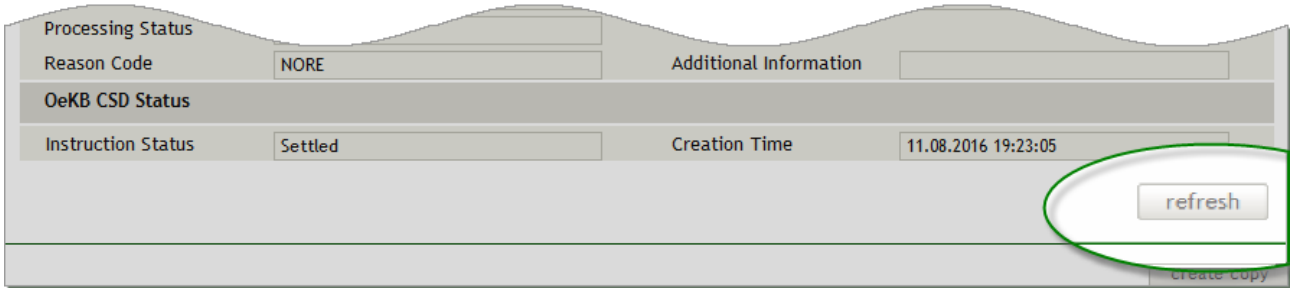


Figure 72: Refreshing data (Intra-Position Movement Details)

5.2.11 Field Descriptions (Search Intra-Position Movements)

The description of the fields in the **Search Intra-Position Movements** screen is sectioned in two parts, i.e. the two drop-down screen sections:

— Search (this section is displayed when the screen is opened for the first time, fig. **Fehler! Verweisquelle konnte nicht gefunden werden.**)

— OeKB CSD Status Criteria (fig. **Fehler! Verweisquelle konnte nicht gefunden werden.**)

— T2S Status Criteria (fig. **Fehler! Verweisquelle konnte nicht gefunden werden.**)

TIP	The system records the screen sections displayed and the search screen appears in the same way when you open it the next time.

5.2.11.1 Search (Screen Section, Search Intra-Position Movements)

Field	Content (by system)	Entry (by user)	Input Assist.	Length
Reference				
Customer Reference	-	Customer reference of the intra-position movement(s) to be found	-	16 max alphanum.
MITI	-	Market Infrastructure Transaction Identifier of the intra-position movement(s) to be found	-	16 max alphanum.
Restriction References	-	Reference of the intra-position movement(s) to be found assigned by T2S after settlement	-	16 max alphanum.
Period				
Intended Settlement Date from - to	-	Date range within which the intended settlement date of the intra-position movement(s) to be found shall lie If you leave one of the fields empty, the system will search starting from or ending with the date that has been entered. If you are searching for a specific day, enter the same date into both fields.	Calendar icon	DD-MM-YYYY
Effective Settlement Date from - to	-	Date range within which the effective settlement date of the intra-position movement(s) to be found shall lie. If you leave one of the fields empty, the system will search starting from or ending with the date that has been entered. If you are searching for a specific day, enter the same date into both fields.	Calendar icon	DD-MM-YYYY
Criteria				
ISIN	**Auto-Complete**: After input of the country code the system suggests a list of ISIN.	ISIN of the intra-position movement(s) to be found Country code, then selection from the suggested list	Selection list after input of country code	12 alphanum.
[ISIN] Description	The designation of the financial instrument	-	-	-

Field	Content (by system)	Entry (by user)	Input Assist.	Length
Settlement Quantity from - to	-	Value range within which the quantity or nominal value of the financial instrument in the intra-position movement(s) to be found shall lie If you leave one of the fields empty, the system will search starting from or ending with the value that has been entered. If you are searching for a specific quantity, enter the same value into both fields.	-	positive decimal number
[Quantity Type]	After ISIN input or selection: — **FAMT** - for financial instruments with a price as percentage of par (face amount) — **UNIT** - for financial instruments with a price per unit	-	-	-
Instructing Party BIC	- **Auto-Complete**: After input of the first or two consecutive characters of the BIC the system suggests a list of BICs. The complete list of all parties available in the system is displayed after putting the cursor into the field and hitting the arrow down key on the keyboard.	Input of the first or two consecutive characters of the BIC, then selection from the suggested list of parties for which you are authorised to access data	Selection list after input of the first or of two consecutive character(s)	BIC11
[Instructing Party BIC] Description	The designation of the instructing party	-	-	-
Securities Account	all The system searches for intra-position movements with any securities account of the inputting party.	Selection from the securities accounts available for the instructing party INFO In addition to the securities account number this field shows the BIC of the securities account holder.	Selection	35 max alphanum.

Field	Content (by system)	Entry (by user)	Input Assist.	Length
Restr. Type Balance From	all The system searches for intra-position movements with any original restriction type.	Selection from the list: — **AWAS (Deliverable Securities Position)** - freely available, to search only for intra-position movements of the original restriction type **AWAS.** — **BLO1 (Case 3 Position Blocking)** - blocked for Case 3 Position, to search only for intra-position movements of the original restriction type **BLO1**. — **EAR1 (Case 3 Position Earmarking)** - earmarked for Case 3 Position, to search only for intra-position movements of the original restriction type **EAR1**. — **EEUR (Earmarking for auto-collat in EURO)** - earmarked for auto-collateral in EUR, to search only for intra-position movements of the original restriction type **EEUR**. — **EGBP (Earmarking for auto-collat in GBP)** - earmarked for auto-collateral in GBP, to search only for intra-position movements of the original restriction type **EGBP.** — **EXXX (Earmarking for auto-collat)** - earmarked for auto-collateral, to search only for intra-position movements of the original restriction type **EXXX.** — **RES1 (Case 3 Position Reservation)** - reserved for Case 3 Position, to search only for intra-position movements of the original restriction type **RES1**. NOTE Additional options will be added by OeKB CSD GmbH if need be	Selection	-

Field	Content (by system)	Entry (by user)	Input Assist.	Length
Restr. Type Balance To	all The system searches for intra-position movements with any intended restriction type.	Selection from the list: — **AWAS (Deliverable Securities Position)** - freely available, to search only for intra-position movements of the intended restriction type **AWAS**. — **BLO1 (Case 3 Position Blocking)** - blocked for Case 3 Position, to search only for intra-position movements of the intended restriction type **BLO1**. — **EAR1 (Case 3 Position Earmarking)** - earmarked for Case 3 Position, to search only for intra-position movements of the intended restriction type **EAR1**. — **EEUR (Earmarking for auto-collat in EURO)** - earmarked for auto-collateral in EUR, to search only for intra-position movements of the intended restriction type **EEUR**. — **EGBP (Earmarking for auto-collat in GBP)** - earmarked for auto-collateral in GBP, to search only for intra-position movements of the intended restriction type **EGBP**. — **EXXX (Earmarking for auto-collat)** - earmarked for auto-collateral, to search only for intra-position movements of the intended restriction type **EXXX**. — **RES1 (Case 3 Position Reservation)** - reserved for Case 3 Position, to search only for intra-position movements of the intended restriction type **RES1**. NOTE Additional options will be added by OeKB CSD GmbH if need be	Selection	-

5.2.11.2 OeKB CSD Status Criteria (Screen Section, Search Intra-Position Movements)

Field	Content (by system)	Entry (by user)	Input Assist.	Length
Instruction Status	all The system searches for intra-position movements with any instruction status.	Selection from the list: — **New**, to search only for newly created intra-position movements. — **Accepted**, to search only for intra-position movements already accepted for processing by T2S. — **Pending**, to search only for intra-position movements for which T2S has returned status Pending. — **Failing**, to search only for intra-position movements for which T2S has returned status Failing. — **Settled**, to search only for settled intra-position movements. — **Cancelled**, to search only for cancelled intra-position movements. — **Rejected**, to search only for intra-position movements rejected by the system.	Selection	-
Task Type	all The system searches for intra-position movements with any type of task.	Selection from **All open tasks**, **User approval task** or **User processing task** By selecting **All open tasks** it is possible to search for intra-position movements which are open tasks. By selecting **User approval tasks** it is possible to search for intra-position movements which are tasks to be approved by another user. By selecting **User processing tasks** it is possible to search for intra-position movements which are tasks with status **Cancelled** or **Rejected**.	Selection	-

5.2.11.3 T2S Status Criteria (Screen Section, Search Intra-Position Movements)

Field	Content (by system)	Entry (by user)	Input Assist.	Length
Processing Status	all The system searches for intra-position movements with any processing status.	Selection from **Accepted**, **Cancelled** or **Rejected** By selecting **Accepted** it is possible to search exclusively for intra-position movements which have already been accepted by the system for processing. By selecting **Cancelled** it is possible to search exclusively for cancelled intra-position movements. By selecting **Rejected** it is possible to search exclusively for intra-position movements which have been rejected by the system.	Selection	-
Settlement Status	all The system searches for intra-position movements with any settlement status.	Selection from **Unsettled**, **Partially Settled** or **Settled** By selecting **Unsettled** it is possible to search exclusively for intra-position movements for which the Intended Settlement Day has not yet arrived. For details please refer to *Annex 8 Guideline Settlement and Securities Account Administration*. By selecting **Partially Settled** it is possible to search exclusively for partially settled intra-position movements for which the Intended Settlement Day has not yet arrived. For details please refer to *Annex 8 Guideline Settlement and Securities Account Administration*.	Selection	-

6. Physical Instructions

Via the menu item *Settlement* you can search for specific instructions in the system.

6.1 Search Physical Instructions

You can search for physical instructions.

TIP	If you repeatedly use the same search criteria, you can enter them and save them in a search template.

How to Open the Search Physical Instructions Screen

Step by Step

1 In the menu bar, select *Settlement* > *Search Physical Instructions*.
The **Search Physical Instructions** screen appears.

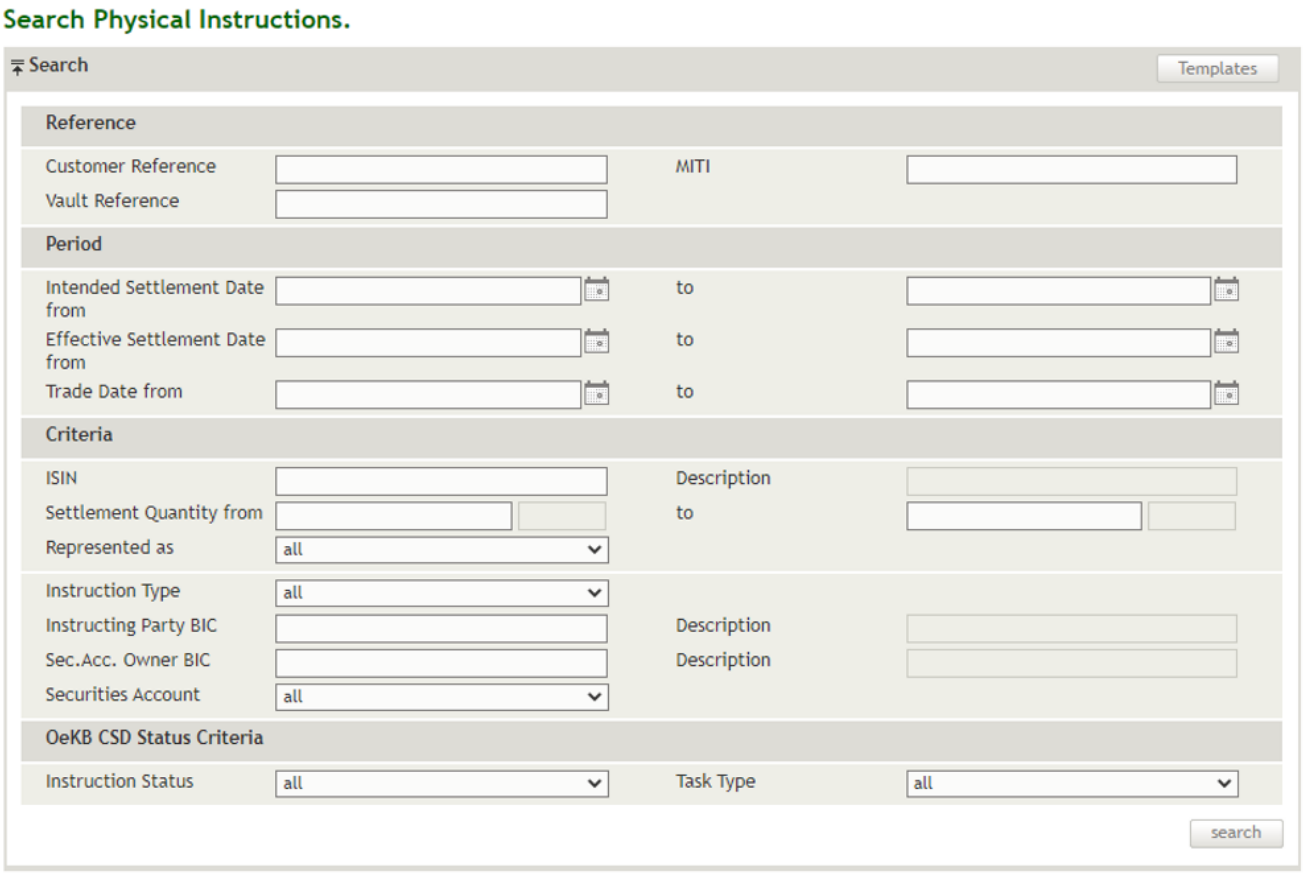


Figure 73: Search Physical Instructions

You can use the following drop-down screen sections to enter search criteria:

— Search (this section is displayed when the screen is opened for the first time, fig. 77)

TIP	The system records the screen sections displayed and the search screen appears in the same way when you open it the next time.

6.1.1 Searching for a Physical Instruction

How to Search for a Physical Instruction

Step by Step

1 In the menu bar, select *Settlement* > *Search Physical Instructions*.
The **Search Physical Instructions** screen appears.
The system automatically inserts the appropriate predefined values into the fields:

— Represented as (= all)
— Instruction Type (= all)
— Securities Account (= all)
— Instruction Status (= all)
— Task Type (= all)

2 Enter the desired search criteria in the available fields or limit the selections in the fields completed by the system.

3 Click on the **search** button.
The search result list containing all instructions matching your search criteria appears.

6.1.2 Instruction History (Physical Instruction)

The Instruction History in the detail view of an instruction shows the detailed sequence of user actions (see Securities Accounts list) and user tasks (see Task Box) carried out for the specific instruction. It also shows all messages (inbound and outbound) of the instruction. The original messages can be accessed by clicking on the **Detail** icon.

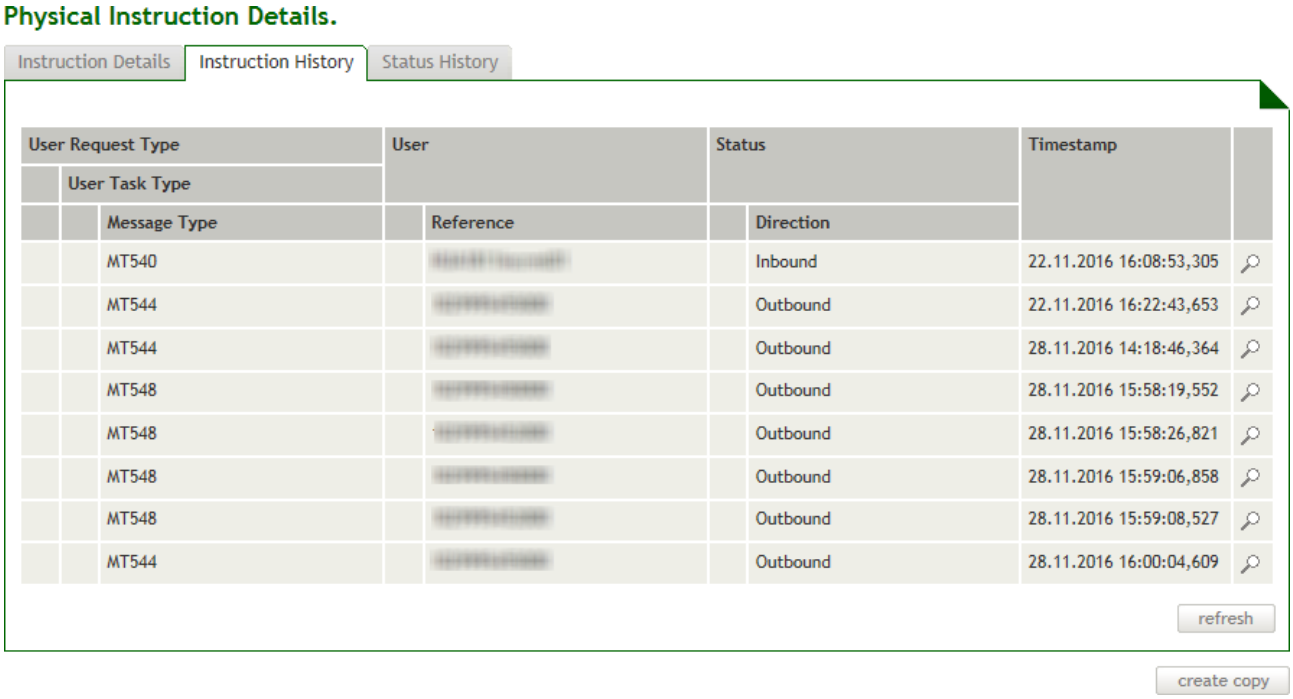


Figure 74: Instruction History - phyisical instruction

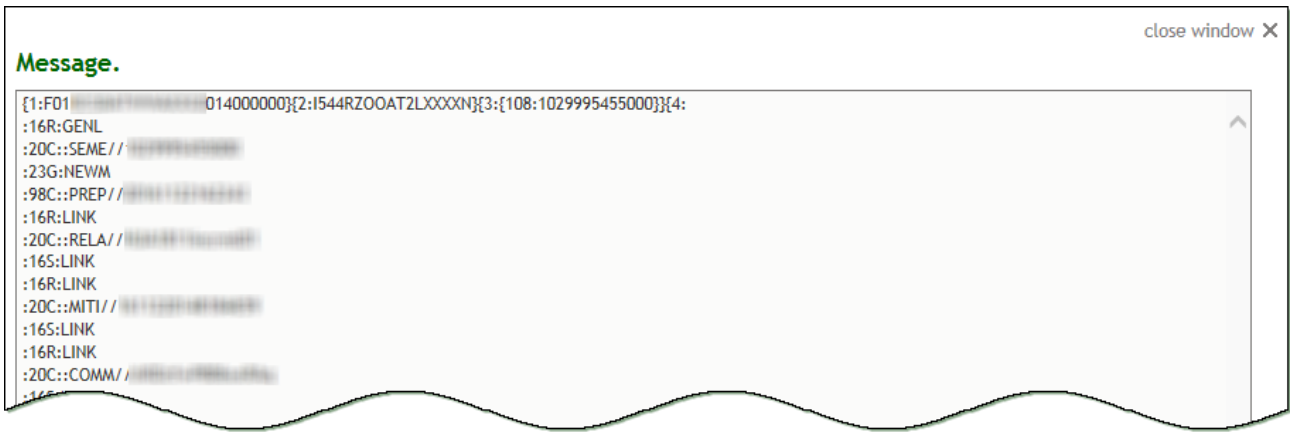


Figure 75: Instruction History - physical instruction (message detail)

6.1.3 Status History (Physical Instruction)

The Status History in the detail view of an instruction shows the detailed sequence of status modifications applied to the specific instruction.

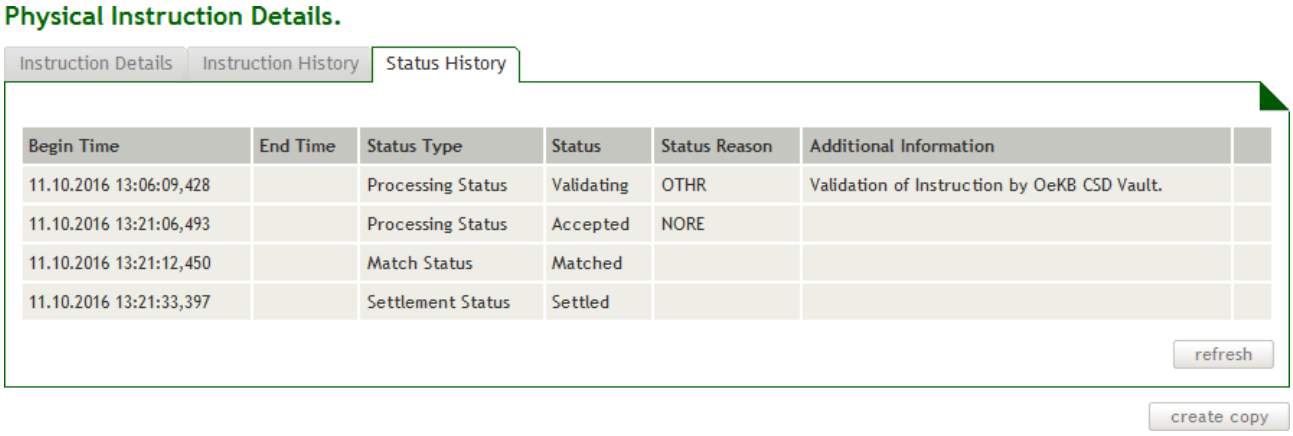


Figure 76: Status History - Physical Instruction

6.1.4 Refreshing Data in the Physical Instruction Detail View

The **Physical Instruction Details** screen shows data current at the time when the screen was opened. In order to display status changes which were carried out by the system or received in the meantime, click on the **refresh** button.

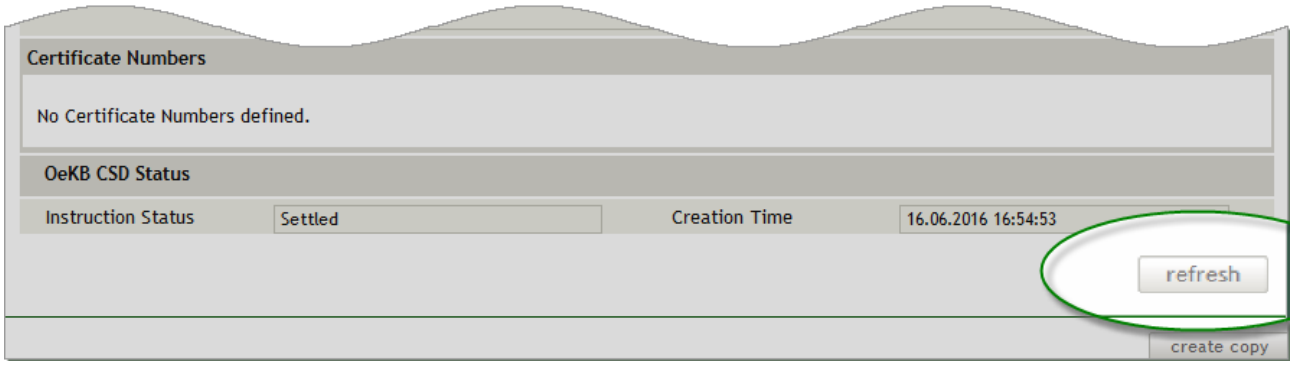


Figure 77: Refreshing data (Physical Instruction Details)

6.1.5 Field Descriptions (Search Physical Instructions)

The description of the fields in the **Search Physical Instructions** comprises the drop-down screen section:

— Search (this section is displayed when the screen is opened for the first time, fig. 77)

TIP	The system records the screen sections displayed and the search screen appears in the same way when you open it the next time.

6.1.5.1 Search (Screen Section, Search Physical Instructions)

Field	Content (by system)	Entry (by user)	Input Assist.	Length
Reference				

Field	Content (by system)	Entry (by user)	Input Assist.	Length
Customer Reference	-	Customer reference of the instruction(s) to be found	-	16 max alphanum.
MITI	-	Market Infrastructure Transaction Identifier of the instruction(s) to be found	-	16 max alphanum.
Period				
Intended Settlement Date from - to	-	Date range within which the intended settlement date of the instruction(s) to be found shall lie If you leave one of the fields empty, the system will search starting from or ending with the date that has been entered. If you are searching for a specific day, enter the same date into both fields.	Calendar icon	DD-MM-YYYY
Effective Settlement Date from - to	-	Date range within which the effective settlement date of the instruction(s) to be found shall lie If you leave one of the fields empty, the system will search starting from or ending with the date that has been entered. If you are searching for a specific day, enter the same date into both fields.	Calendar icon	DD-MM-YYYY
Trade Date from - to	-	Date range within which the trade date of the instruction(s) to be found shall lie If you leave one of the fields empty, the system will search starting from or ending with the date that has been entered. If you are searching for a specific day, enter the same date into both fields.	Calendar icon	DD-MM-YYYY
Criteria				
ISIN	**Auto-Complete**: After input of the country code the system suggests a list of ISIN.	ISIN of the instruction(s) to be found Country code, then selection from the suggested list	Selection list after input of country code	12 alphanum.
[ISIN] Description	The designation of the financial instrument	-	-	-

Field	Content (by system)	Entry (by user)	Input Assist.	Length
Settlement Quantity from - to	-	Value range within which the quantity or nominal value of the financial instrument in the instruction(s) to be found shall lie If you leave one of the fields empty, the system will search starting from or ending with the value that has been entered. If you are searching for a specific quantity, enter the same value into both fields.	-	positive decimal number
[Quantity Type]	After ISIN input or selection: — **FAMT** - for financial instruments with a price as percentage of par (face amount) — **UNIT** - for financial instruments with a price per unit	-	-	-
Represented as	all	Select from **Global certificate** or **Individual certificate** By selecting **Global certificate** it is possible to search exclusively for physical instructions of securities with representation type global certificate By selecting **Individual certificate** it is possible to search exclusively for physical instructions of securities with representation type individual certificate	Selection	-

Field	Content (by system)	Entry (by user)	Input Assist.	Length
Instruction Type	all The system searches for instructions with any instruction type.	Selection from the list: — **Deposit** - Deposit of Physical Instructions, to search only for instructions of type **securities deposit** — **Withdrawal** - Withdrawal of Physical Instructions, to search only for instructions of type **securities withdrawal** — **Increase** - Increase of Global Certificate, to search only for instructions of type **increase of global certificate** — **Decrease** - Decrease of Global Certificate, to search only for instructions of type **decrease of global certificate**	Selection	-
Instructing Party BIC	- **Auto-Complete**: After input of the first or two consecutive characters of the BIC the system suggests a list of BICs. The complete list of all parties available in the system is displayed after putting the cursor into the field and hitting the arrow down key on the keyboard.	Input of the first or two consecutive characters of the BIC, then selection from the suggested list	Selection list after input of the first or of two consecutive character(s)	BIC11
[Instructing Party BIC] Description	The designation of the instructing party	-	-	-
Securities Account	all The system searches for instructions with any securities account of the inputting party.	Selection from the securities accounts available for the instructing party INFO In addition to the securities account number this field shows the BIC of the securities account holder.	Selection	35 max alphanum.

6.1.5.2 OeKB CSD Status Criteria (Screen Section, Search Physical Instructions)

Field	Content (by system)	Entry (by user)	Input Assist.	Length
Instruction Status	all The system searches for instructions with any instruction status.	Selection from the list: — **New**, to search only for newly created instructions. — **Validated**, to search only for instructions which have been received by OeKB CSD and are undergoing a syntactic validation. (before their vault validation) — **Accepted**, to search only for instructions already accepted for processing by T2S. — **Pending**, to search only for instructions for which T2S has returned status Pending. — **Failing**, to search only for instructions for which T2S has returned status Failing. — **Settled**, to search only for settled instructions. — **Cancelled**, to search only for cancelled instructions. — **Rejected**, to search only for instructions rejected by the system.	Selection	-
Task Type	all The system searches for instructions with any type of task.	Selection from **All open tasks**, **User approval task** or **User processing task** By selecting **All open tasks** it is possible to search for instructions which are open tasks. By selecting **User approval tasks** it is possible to search for instructions which are tasks to be approved by another user. By selecting **User processing tasks** it is possible to search for instructions which are tasks with status **Cancelled** or **Rejected**.	Selection	-

7. Allegements

Via the menu item *Settlement* you can search for counterparty instructions in the system (allegements) with lacking own instructions.

7.1 Search Allegements

You can search for allegements to instructions to identify counterparty instructions where the own instruction is still missing or not yet processed. The system allows you to immediately create the counter instruction to an allegement.

TIP	If you repeatedly use the same search criteria, you can enter them and save them in a search template.

How to Open the Search Allegements Screen

Step by Step

1 In the menu bar, select the menu item *Allegement*.
The **Search Allegements** screen appears.

Search Allegements.

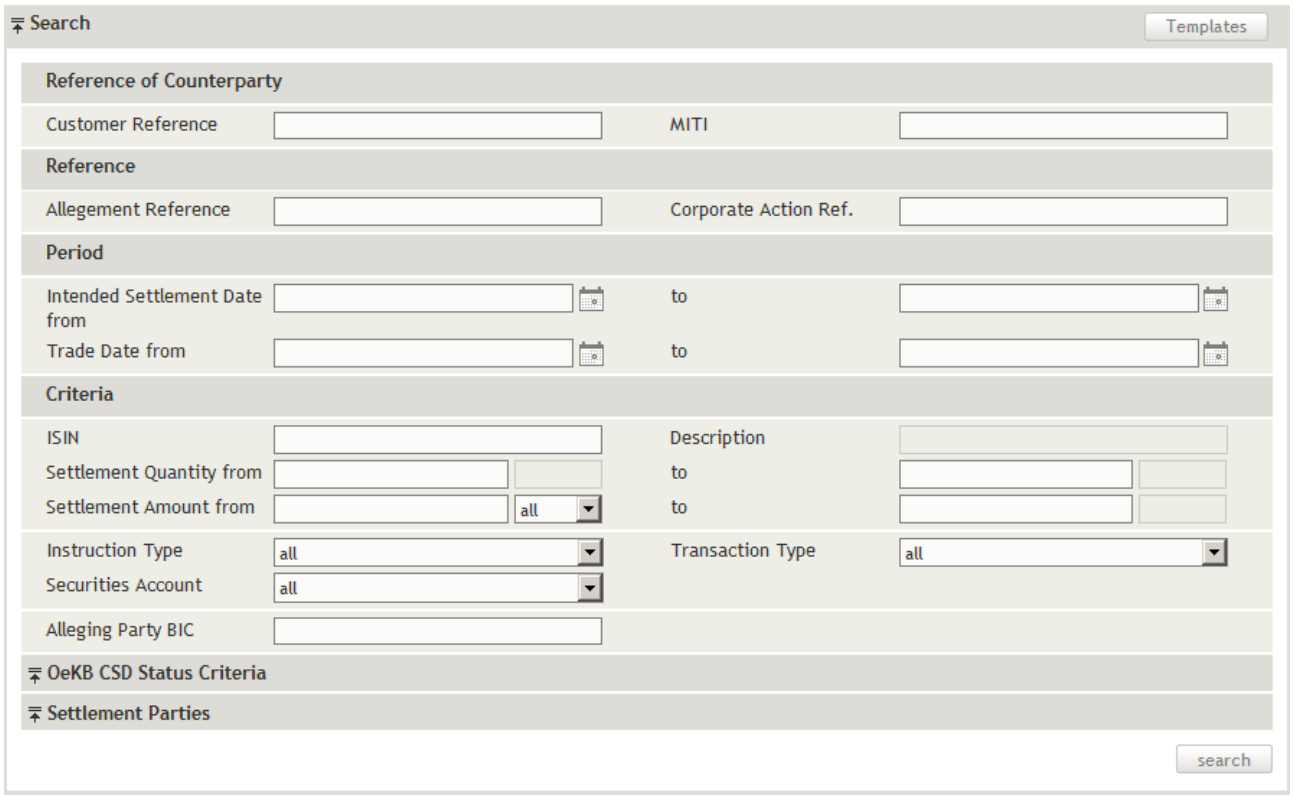


Figure 78: Search Allegements

You can use the following drop-down screen sections to enter search criteria:

— Search (this section is displayed when the screen is opened for the first time, fig. 86)

— OeKB CSD Status Criteria (fig.87)

— Settlement Parties (fig.88)

TIP	The system records the screen sections displayed and the search screen appears in the same way when you open it the next time.

Figure 79: Search Allegements - OeKB CSD Status Criteria

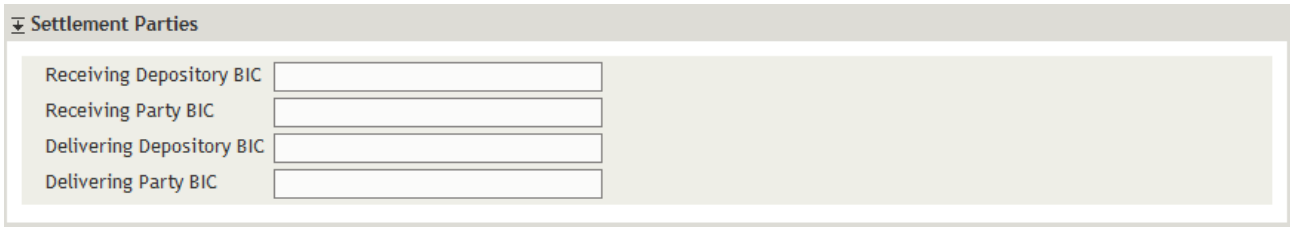


Figure 80: Search Allegemts - Settlement Parties

TIP	Clicking on **search** without entering search criteria lists all allegements available in the system. To search for (a) specific allegement(s), enter criteria in the fields which best characterise the allegement you are looking for.

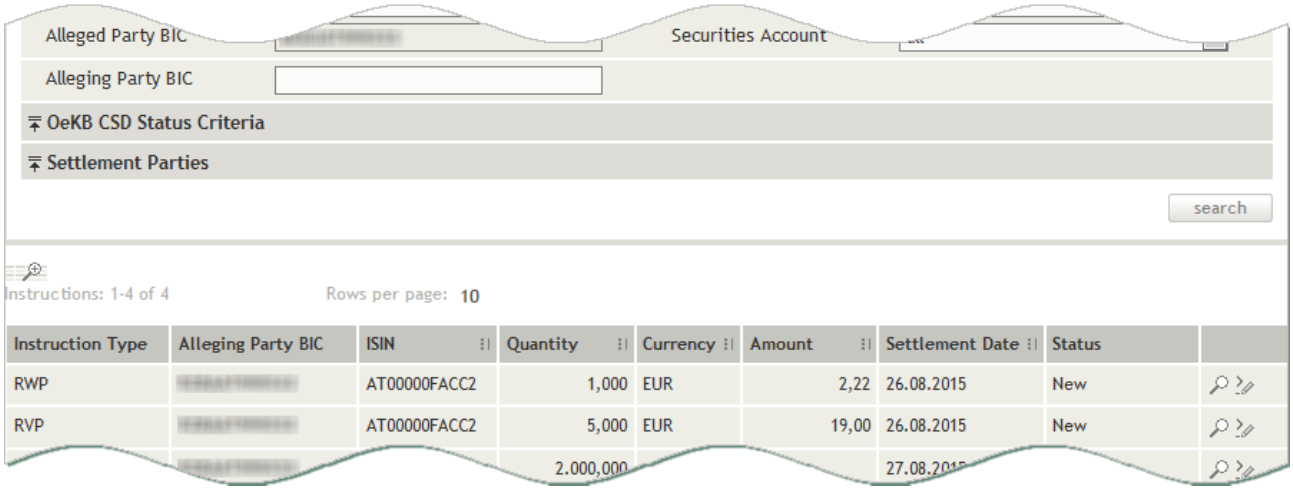


Figure 81: Search Allegement - search result list

7.1.1 Generating a Counter Instruction to an Allegement

If you want to create the counter instructions to received allegement messages, you need to search for allegements first. You can then generate the corresponding counter instruction in an immediately following step.

TIP	Creating an own instruction to an allegement is also possible from the detail view using the **create counter instruction** button.

How to Generate a Counter Instruction to an Allegement

Step by Step

1 In the menu bar, select the menu item *Allegement*.
The **Search Allegements** screen appears.
The system automatically inserts the appropriate predefined values into the fields:

— Settlement Amount Currency (= all)

— Instruction Type (= all)

— Transaction Type (= all)

— Securities Account (= all)

— Instruction Status (= New)

2 Enter the desired search criteria in the available fields or limit the selections in the fields completed by the system.

3 Click on the **search** button.
The search result list containing all allegements matching your search criteria appears.

4 In the row of the allegement to which you want to generate a counter instruction, click on the **Generate Counter Instruction** icon.
The **Create Settlement Instruction** screen appears.

5 Continue entering the settlement instruction to match the received allegement.

7.1.2 Searching for an Allegement

How to Search for an Allegement:

Step by Step

1 In the menu bar, select the menu item *Allegement*.
The **Search Allegements** screen appears.
The system automatically inserts the appropriate predefined values into the fields:

— Settlement Amount Currency (= all)

— Instruction Type (= all)

— Transaction Type (= all)

— Securities Account (= all)

— Instruction Status (= New)

2 Enter the desired search criteria in the available fields or limit the selections in the fields completed by the system.

3 Click on the **search** button.
The search result list containing all allegements matching your search criteria appears.

7.1.3 Saving an Allegement in PDF Format

In the detail view of an allegement you can save the details of the current allegement in PDF format and store it locally on your computer if you like.

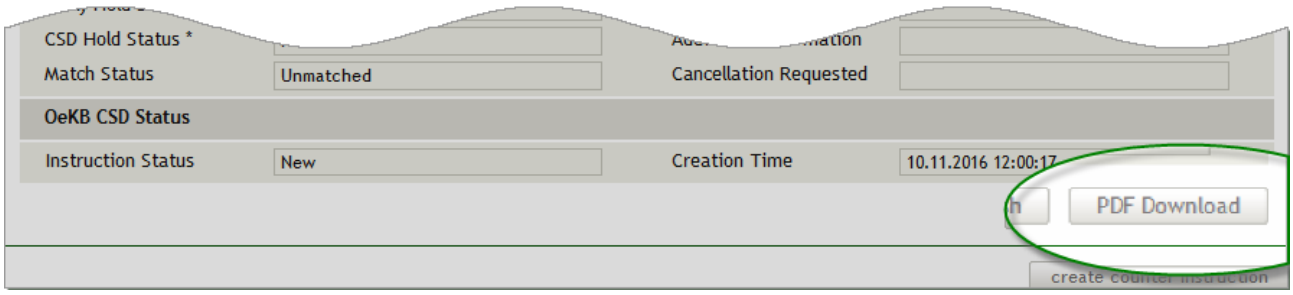


Figure 82: Saving an allegement in PDF format

How to Save an Allegement in PDF Format

Step by Step

1. In the menu bar, select the menu item *Allegement*.
   The **Search Allegements** screen appears.
   The system automatically inserts the appropriate predefined values into the fields:
   - Settlement Amount Currency (= all)
   - Instruction Type (= all)
   - Transaction Type (= all)
   - Securities Account (= all)
   - Instruction Status (= New)
2. Enter the desired search criteria in the available fields or limit the selections in the fields completed by the system.
3. Click on the **search** button.
   The search result list containing all allegements matching your search criteria appears.
4. In the row of the record you want to save in PDF format, click on the **Details** icon 🔎 to open the detail view.
5. Click on the **PDF download** button.
6. In the system screen, choose whether to open the PDF file or save it to your computer.

7.1.4 Instruction History (Allegement)

The Instruction History in the detail view of an allegement shows all messages (outbound) of the allegement. The original messages can be accessed by clicking on the **Detail** icon.

NOTE It is not possible to edit entries in the Instruction History.

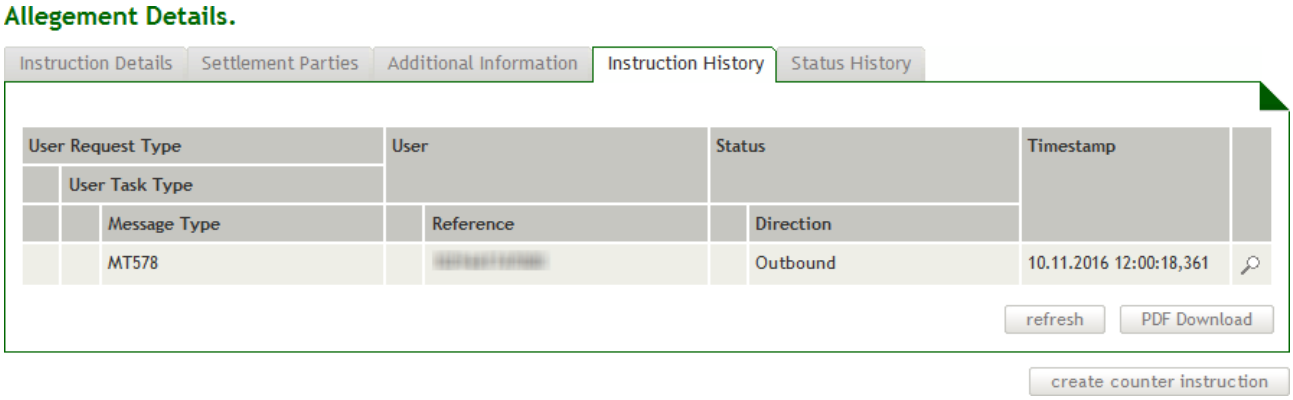


Figure 83: Instruction History - allegement

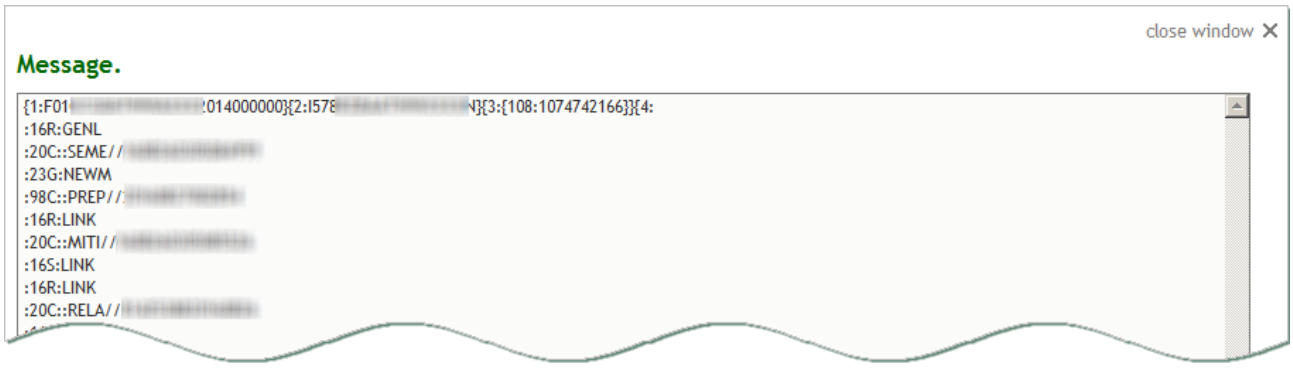


Figure 84: Instruction History - allegement (message detail)

7.1.5 Status History (Allegement)

The Status History in the detail view of an allegement shows the detailed sequence of status modifications applied to the specific allegement.

NOTE It is not possible to edit entries in the Status History.

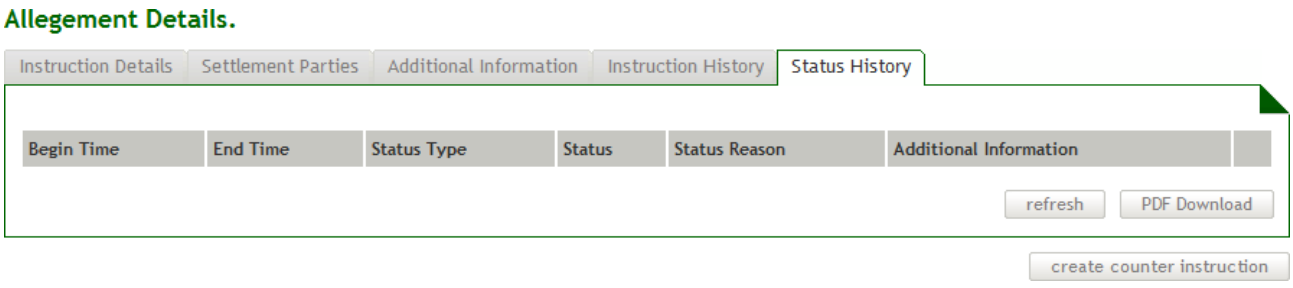


Figure 85: Status History (Allegement)

7.1.6 Refreshing Data in the Allegement Detail View

The **Allegement Details** screen shows data current at the time when the screen was opened. In order to display status changes which were carried out by the system or received in the meantime, click on the **refresh** button.

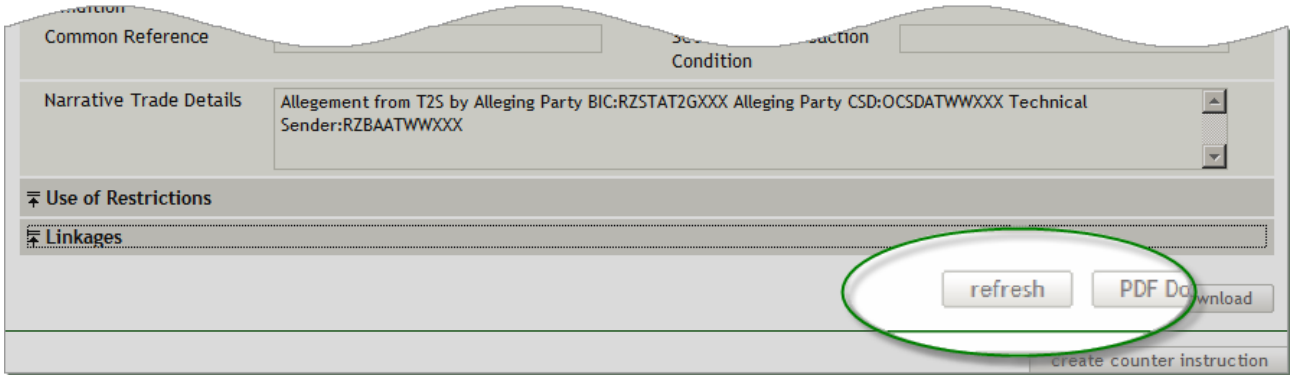


Figure 86: Refreshing data (Allegement Details)

7.1.7 Field Descriptions (Search Allegements)

The description of the fields in the **Search Allegements** screen is sectioned in two parts, i.e. the two drop-down screen sections:

— Search (this section is displayed when the screen is opened for the first time, fig.86)

— OeKB CSD Status Criteria (fig.87)

— Settlement Parties (fig.88)

7.1.7.1 Search (Screen Section, Search Allegements)

Field	Content (by system)	Entry (by user)	Input Assist.	Length
Reference of Counterparty				
Customer Reference	-	Customer reference of the allegement(s) to be found	-	16 max alphanum.
MITI	-	Market Infrastructure Transaction Identifier of the allegement(s) to be found	-	16 max alphanum.
Reference				
Allegement Reference	-	Reference of the allegement(s) to be found assigned by T2S after settlement	-	16 max alphanum.
Corporate Action Reference	-	Reference of the corporate action associated with the allegement to be found	-	16 max alphanum.

Field	Content (by system)	Entry (by user)	Input Assist.	Length
Period				
Intended Settlement Date from - to	-	Date range within which the intended settlement date of the allegement(s) to be found shall lie If you leave one of the fields empty, the system will search starting from or ending with the date that has been entered. If you are searching for a specific day, enter the same date into both fields.	Calendar icon	DD-MM-YYYY
Trade Date from - to	-	Date range within which the trade date of the allegement(s) to be found shall lie If you leave one of the fields empty, the system will search starting from or ending with the date that has been entered. If you are searching for a specific day, enter the same date into both fields.	Calendar icon	DD-MM-YYYY
Criteria				
ISIN	**Auto-Complete**: After input of the country code the system suggests a list of ISIN.	ISIN of the allegement(s) to be found Country code, then selection from the suggested list	Selection list after input of country code	12 alphanum.
[ISIN] Description	The designation of the financial instrument	-	-	-
Settlement Quantity from - to	-	Value range within which the quantity or nominal value of the financial instrument in the allegement(s) to be found shall lie If you leave one of the fields empty, the system will search starting from or ending with the value that has been entered. If you are searching for a specific quantity, enter the same value into both fields.	-	positive decimal number

Field	Content (by system)	Entry (by user)	Input Assist.	Length
[Quantity Type]	After ISIN input or selection: — **FAMT** - for financial instruments with a price as percentage of par (face amount) — **UNIT** - for financial instruments with a price per unit	-	-	-
Settlement Amount from - to	-	Value range within which the corresponding cash value of the allegement(s) to be found shall lie If you leave one of the fields empty, the system will search starting from or ending with the value that has been entered. If you are searching for a specific quantity, enter the same value into both fields.	-	positive decimal number
[Settlement Amount Currency]	all The system searches for allegements with any currency.	Selection from **CHF, EUR, GBP, USD**	Selection	3 alphanum.
Instruction Type	all The system searches for allegements with any instruction type.	Selection from the list: ▪ **RFP** - Receive Free of Payment, to search only for allegements of type **RFP** ▪ **DFP** - Delivery Free of Payment, to search only for allegements of type **DFP** ▪ **RVP** - Receive versus Payment, to search only for allegements of type **RVP** — **DVP** - Delivery versus Payment, to search only for allegements of type **DVP** — **RWP** - Receive with Payment, to search only for allegements of type **RWP** — **DWP** - Delivery with Payment, to search only for allegements of type **DWP** — **PFRD** - Payment Free of Receive Debit, to search only for allegements of type **PFR Debit**	Selection	-

Field	Content (by system)	Entry (by user)	Input Assist.	Length
		— **PFDD** - Payment Free of Delivery Debit, to search only for allegements of type **PFD Debit** — **PFRC** - Payment Free of Receive Credit, to search only for allegements of type **PFR Credit** — **PFDC** - Payment Free of Delivery Credit, to search only for allegements of type **PFD Credit**		
Transaction Type	all The system searches for allegements with any transaction type.	Selection from the list: — **TRAD** - Standard Instruction, to search only for allegements of type standard instruction TIP Additional transaction types are supported.	Selection	-
Securities Account	all The system searches for allegements with any securities account of the inputting party.	Selection from the securities accounts available for the instructing party INFO In addition to the securities account number this field shows the BIC of the securities account holder.	Selection	35 max alphanum.
Alleging Party BIC	-	BIC of the party who created the allegement as an instruction where the inputting party is the counterparty	-	BIC11

7.1.7.2 OeKB CSD Status Criteria (Screen Section, Search Allegements)

Field	Content (by system)	Entry (by user)	Input Assist.	Length
Instruction Status	New The system searches for allegements with status **New**	Selection from **all**, **New, Removed** or **Cancelled** By selecting **all** it is possible to search for allegements of any instruction status. By selecting **New** it is possible to search exclusively for newly created allegements. By selecting **Removed** it is possible to search exclusively for allegements for which a counter instruction has already been created. By selecting **Cancelled** it is possible to search exclusively for allegements to instructions which have been cancelled.	Selection	-

7.1.7.3 Settlement Parties (Screen Section, Search Allegements)

Field	Content (by system)	Entry (by user)	Input Assist.	Length
Receiving Depository BIC	-	BIC of the depository of the receiving party in the allegement(s) to be found	-	BIC11
Receiving Party BIC	-	BIC of the receiving party in the allegement(s) to be found	-	BIC11
Delivering Depository BIC	-	BIC of the depository of the delivering party in the allegement(s) to be found	-	BIC11
Delivering Party BIC	-	BIC of the delivering party in the allegement(s) to be found	-	BIC11

8. Holdings

Via the menu item *Holdings* you can access the following functionalities:

— Securities Positions
— Securities Posting Items
— Cash Preview
— Statement of Holdings

8.1 Securities Positions

Securities positions may be displayed either by ISIN or by securities account.

How to Open the Securities Positions Screen

Step by Step

1 In the menu bar, select *Holdings* > *Securities Positions*.
The **Securities Positions** screen appears.

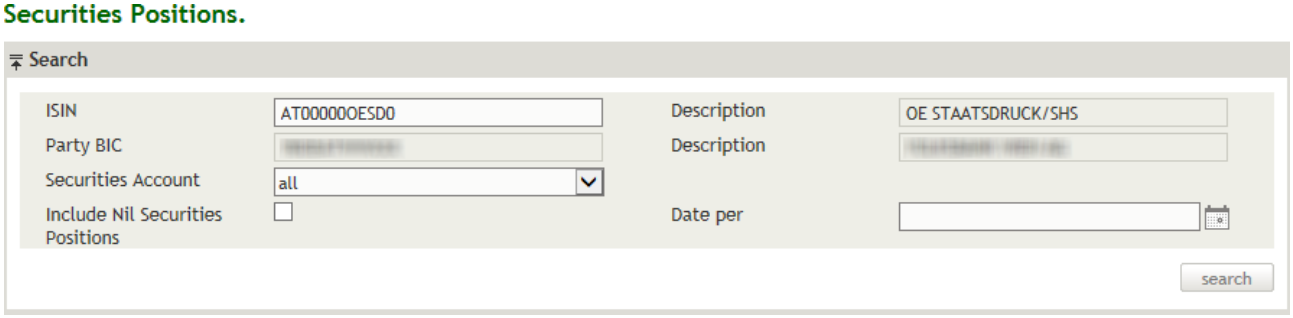


Figure 87: Securities Positions (example: search by ISIN)

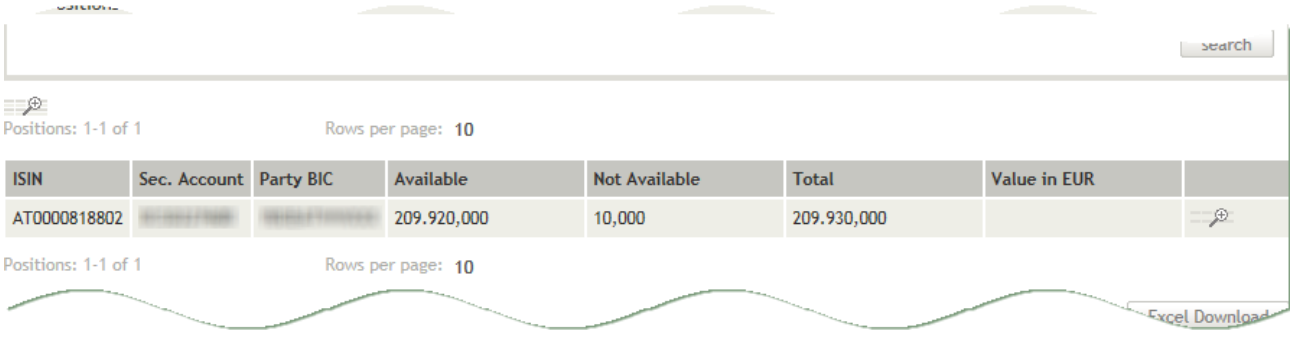


Figure 88: Securities Positions - search result list

TIP	The links in the columns **Available** and **Not Available** allow you to display the associated subbalances of the position.
TIP	The extended list view (see extended search results) shows the allocated restriction references (see Create Intra-Position Movement by ISIN.

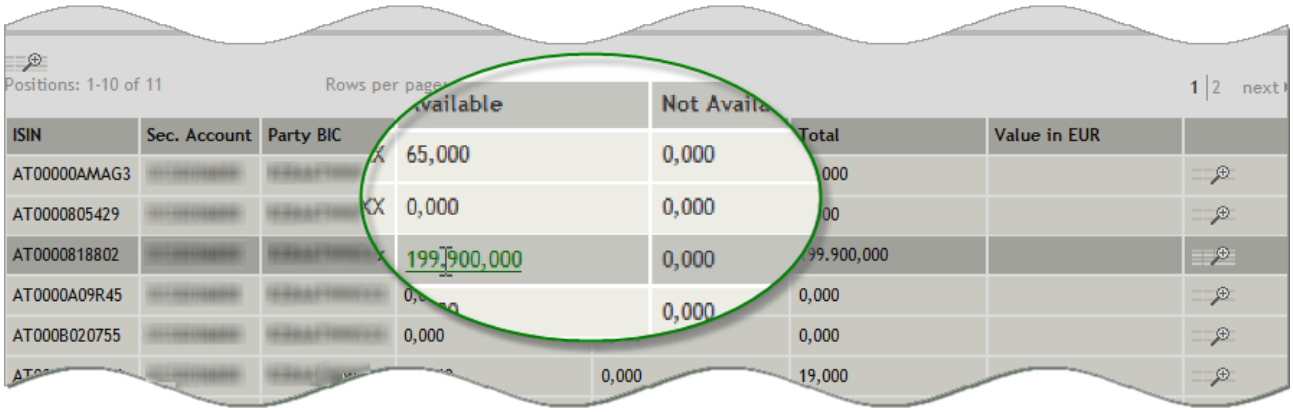


Figure 89: Securities Positions - links to subbalances

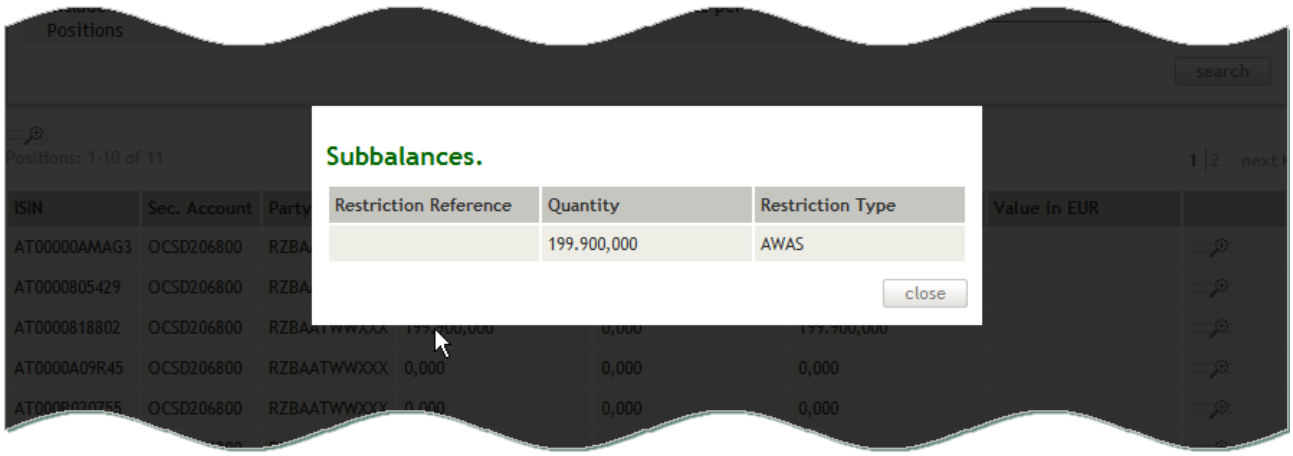


Figure 90: Securities Positions - subbalances (pop-up-dialog)

8.1.1 Displaying Securities Positions by Financial Instrument (ISIN)

With the securities position enquiry by ISIN you can enter an ISIN to find out which securities accounts hold positions of this financial instrument, where OeKB CSD is holding the securities for you and whether these positions are available, earmarked, blocked or reserved.

How to Display the Securities Positions of a Financial Instrument by Entering its ISIN

Step by Step

1 In the menu bar, select *Holdings* > *Securities Positions*.
The **Securities Positions** screen appears.
The system automatically inserts the appropriate predefined values into the fields:

— Party BIC (= enquiring party) incl. Description

— Securities Account (= all)

2 In the field **ISIN**, enter the desired financial instrument.
In the field **Description**, the system automatically completes the details stored for the selected financial instrument.

TIP	There is an auto-complete function available in the **ISIN** field: You need only enter the country code; the system will then suggest a list of available ISIN.

3 Click on the **search** button.
The search result list containing all positions matching your search criteria appears.

4 You have the following options:

a1 In the row of the record you want to enquire, click on the amount displayed in the columns **Available** or **Not Available** to follow the integrated link to the subbalances.
The pop-up dialog **Subbalances** appears.

a2 Click on the button **close** to return to the **Securities Positions** screen.

b In the row of a record you want to enquire, click on the icon to see the individual posting items of the securities position.
The **Securities Posting Items** screen appears.
The fields are filled with all the data of the previously selected securities position and the search result list displays the corresponding posting items.

c Click on the **Excel download** button to save the data in a Microsoft Excel file.

8.1.2 Displaying Securities Positions by Securities Account

With the securities position enquiry by securities account you can enter a securities account to find out which securities positions are held on this securities account, where OeKB CSD is holding the securities for you and whether these positions are available, earmarked, blocked or reserved.

How to Display the Securities Positions of a Financial Instrument on a Securities Account

Step by Step

1 In the menu bar, select *Holdings > Securities Positions*.
The **Securities Positions** screen appears.
The system automatically inserts the appropriate predefined values into the fields:

— Party BIC (= enquiring party) incl. Description

— Securities Account (= all)

2 In the field **Securities Account**, select the securities account from the securities accounts available for the enquiring party.

3 Click on the **search** button.
The search result list containing all positions matching your search criteria appears.

4 You have the following options:

a1 In the row of the record you want to enquire, click on the amount displayed in the columns **Available** or **Not Available** to follow the integrated link to the subbalances.
The pop-up dialog **Subbalances** appears.

a2 Click on the button **close** to return to the **Securities Positions** screen.

b In the row of a record you want to enquire, click on the icon to see the individual posting items of the securities position.
The **Securities Posting Items** screen appears.
The fields are filled with all the data of the previously selected securities position and the search result list displays the corresponding posting items.

c Click on the **Excel download** button to save the data in a Microsoft Excel file.

8.1.3 Field Descriptions (Securities Positions)

Field	Content (by system)	Entry (by user)	Input Assist.	Length
ISIN	**Auto-Complete**: After input of the country code the system suggests a list of ISIN.	Country code, then selection from the suggested list	Selection list after input of country code	12 alphanum.
[ISIN] Description	The designation of the financial instrument	-	-	-
Party BIC	BIC of the enquiring party	-	-	-
[Party BIC] Description	The designation of the securities account holder	-	-	-

Field	Content (by system)	Entry (by user)	Input Assist.	Length
Securities Account	all The system searches for securities positions with any securities account of the inputting party or of the securities account holder.	Selection from the securities accounts available for the securities account holder	Selection	35 max alphanum.
Include Nil Securities Positions	Empty check box	Activating the check box includes securities positions which hold no current positions, but held positions some time in the past, in the search result list	-	-
Date per	-	Reference date used to display securities positions INFO This field shows the positions by the end of day of the previous day, plus positions of the current day	Calendar icon	DD-MM-YYYY

8.2 Securities Posting Items

It is possible to display the bookings of a securities transaction.

TIP Accessing the booked securities posting items is also possible from the search result list of the securities positions enquiry using the button.

How to Open the Securities Posting Items Screen

Step by Step

1 In the menu bar, select *Holdings* > *Securities Posting Items*.
The **Securities Posting Items** screen appears.

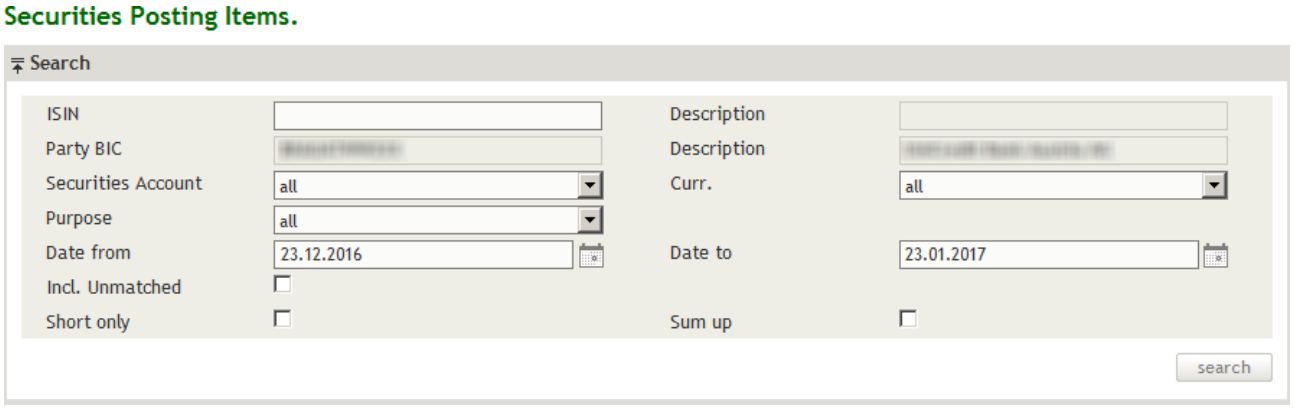


Figure 91: Securities Posting Items

Figure 92: Securities Posting Items - search result list

8.2.1 Displaying Securities Posting Items

With the securities posting items enquiry you can determine when the bookings of a securities transaction were effected on which securities accounts. You may use the ISIN to search for specific financial instruments or enter a securities account number to display the posting items for a securities account.

How to Enquire for Securities Posting Items

Step by Step

1 In the menu bar, select *Holdings > Securities Posting Items*.
The **Securities Posting Items** screen appears.
The system automatically inserts the appropriate predefined values into the fields:

- Party BIC (= enquiring party) incl. Description
- Securities Account (= all)
- Currency (= all)
- Purpose (= all)
- Date from (= date one month before the current date)
- Date to (= current date)

2 Enter the desired search criteria in the available fields or limit the selections in the fields completed by the system.

3 Click on the **search** button.
The search result list containing all bookings matching your search criteria appears.

8.2.2 Colour Codes of the Search Result List

Colour Code	Explanation
Black font	Settled securities posting item
Red font	Not yet settled securities posting item
Grey background	Securities posting item with expected coverage
Yellow background	Securities posting item with expected insufficient coverage

8.2.3 Field Descriptions (Securities Posting Items)

Field	Content (by system)	Entry (by user)	Input Assist.	Length
ISIN	**Auto-Complete**: After input of the country code the system suggests a list of ISIN.	Country code, then selection from the suggested list	Selection list after input of country code	12 alphanum.
[ISIN] Description	The designation of the financial instrument	-	-	-
Party BIC	BIC of the enquiring party	-	-	-

Field	Content (by system)	Entry (by user)	Input Assist.	Length
[Party BIC] Description	The designation of the securities account holder	-	-	-
Securities Account	all The system searches for securities posting items on all securities accounts of the securities account holder	Selection from the securities accounts available for the securities account holder	Selection	35 max alphanum.
Currency	all The system searches for securities bookings with any currency	Selection from **CHF**, **EUR**, **GBP**, **USD**	Selection	-
Purpose	all The system searches for securities bookings with any purpose.	Selection from **Settlement**, **Physical**, **Clearing** or **Corporate Action** By selecting **Settlement** it is possible e.g. to search exclusively for cash movements associated with settlement transactions. By selecting **Physical** it is possible e.g. to search exclusively for cash movements associated with physical transactions. By selecting **Clearing** it is possible e.g. to search exclusively for cash movements associated with clearing transactions. By selecting **Corporate Action** it is possible e.g. to search exclusively for cash movements associated with corporate actions.	Selection	-

Field	Content (by system)	Entry (by user)	Input Assist.	Length
Date from - to	**Date from**: one month before the current date **Date to**: The current date	Date range within which the settlement date of the securities posting item to be found shall lie If you leave one of the fields empty, the system will search starting from or ending with the date that has been entered. If you are searching for a specific day, enter the same date into both fields. INFO If the date range lies in the future, the date considered is the intended settlement date; if the date range lies in the past, it is the effective settlement date.	Calendar icon	DD-MM-YYYY
Incl. Unmatched	Empty check box	Activating the check box includes unmatched securities posting items in the search result list. TIP Activating this check box may be helpful if the end date of the search date range lies in the future.	-	-
Short only	Empty check box	Activating the check box limits the posting items displayed in the search result list to bookings with insufficient coverage. TIP Activating this check box may be helpful if the end date of the search date range lies in the future.	-	-
Sum up	Empty check box	Activating the check box shows the summed-up amounts per day in the search result list.	-	-

8.3 Search Cash Preview

The cash preview shows the cash movements related to securities settlement instructions over a period of time.

How to Open the Search Cash Preview Screen

Step by Step

1 In the menu bar, select *Holdings* > *Cash Preview*.
The **Search Cash Preview** screen appears.

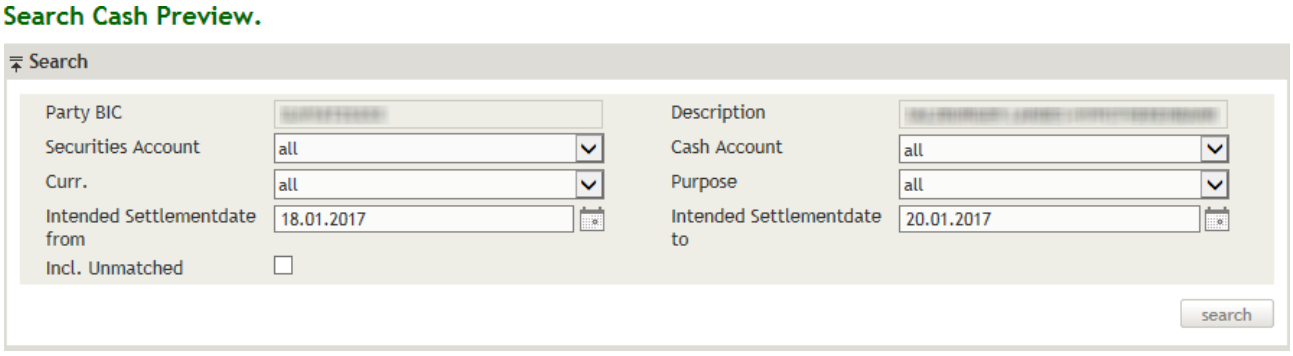


Figure 93: Search Cash Preview

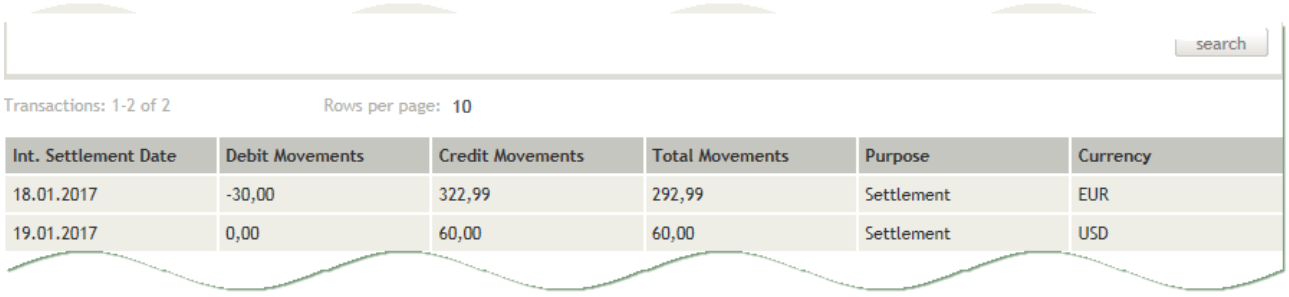


Figure 94: Search Cash Preview - search result list

8.3.1 Displaying the Cash Balance

With the cash preview you can determine the cash balance on a securities account for a specified (future) period of time.

Step by Step

1 In the menu bar, select *Holdings > Cash Preview.*
The **Search Cash Preview** screen appears.
The system automatically inserts the appropriate predefined values into the fields:

- Party BIC (= inputting party) incl. Description
- Securities Account (= all)
- Cash Account (= all)
- Currency (= all)
- Purpose (= all)
- Intended Settlement Date from (= date one month before the current date)
- Intended Settlement Date to (= date one month after the current date)

2 Enter the desired search criteria in the available fields or limit the selections in the fields completed by the system.

3 Click on the **search** button.
The search result list containing all cash movements matching your search criteria appears.

8.3.2 Field Descriptions (Search Cash Preview)

Field	Content (by system)	Entry (by user)	Input Assist.	Length
Party BIC	BIC of the enquiring party	-	-	-
[Party BIC] Description	The designation of the securities account holder	-	-	-
Securities Account	all The system displays the cash balance of all securities accounts of the securities account holder	Selection from the securities accounts available for the securities account holder	Selection	-

Field	Content (by system)	Entry (by user)	Input Assist.	Length
Cash Account	all The system displays the cash balance of all cash accounts for the selected securities account of the securities account holder	Selection from the cash accounts available for the selected securities account INFO The selection in this field becomes available after a securities account has been selected in the **Securities Account** field.	Selection	-
Currency	all The system displays the cash balance for all currencies	Selection from **CHF**, **EUR**, **GBP**, **USD**	Selection	-
Purpose	all The system searches for cash movements with any purpose.	Selection from **Settlement**, **Physical**, **Clearing** or **Corporate Action** By selecting **Settlement** it is possible e.g. to search exclusively for cash movements associated with settlement transactions. By selecting **Physical** it is possible e.g. to search exclusively for cash movements associated with physical transactions. By selecting **Clearing** it is possible e.g. to search exclusively for cash movements associated with clearing transactions. By selecting **Corporate Action** it is possible e.g. to search exclusively for cash movements associated with corporate actions.	Selection	-
Intended Settlement Date from - to	**Date from**: one month before the current date **Date to**: one month after the current date	Date range within which the intended settlement date of the instructions for the cash preview of the selected securities account shall lie. If you leave one of the fields empty, the system will search starting from or ending with the date that has been entered. If you are searching for a specific day, enter the same date into both fields.	Calendar icon	DD-MM-YYYY

Field	Content (by system)	Entry (by user)	Input Assist.	Length
Incl. Unmatched	Empty check box	Activating the check box includes unmatched securities posting items in the search result list. **TIP** Activating this check box may be helpful if the end date of the search date range lies in the future.	-	-

8.4 Statement of Holdings

Here you can download the statement of holdings in PDF format.

How to Open the Statement of Holdings Screen

Step by Step

1 In the menu bar, select *Holdings* > *Statement of Holdings*.
The screen **Statement of Holdings** appears.

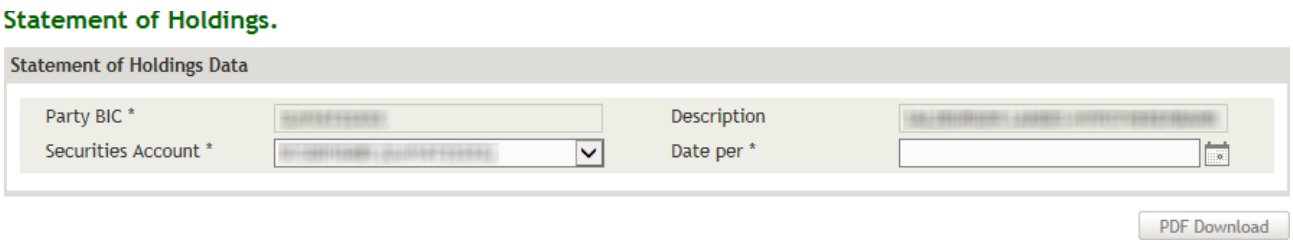


Figure 95: Statement of Holdings

8.4.1 Downloading the Statement of Holdings

To download the statement of holdings first select the securities account and the reference date.

Step by Step

1 In the menu bar, select *Holdings* > *Statement of Holdings*.
The screen **Statement of Holdings** appears.
The system automatically inserts the appropriate predefined values into the fields:

— Party BIC (= inputting party) incl. Description

2 In the field **Securities Account**, select the securities account from the securities accounts available for the enquiring party.

3 In the field **Date per** enter the reference date for the statement of holdings.

INFO	If the selected date is not a T2S Opening Day as listed in the General Terms and Conditions of the OeKB CSD GmbH the statement of holdings will be issued for the last settlement date before the selected date.

4 Click on the **PDF download** button.

5 In the system screen, choose whether to open the PDF file or save it to your computer.

8.4.2 Field Descriptions (Statement of Holdings)

Field	Content (by system)	Entry (by user)	Input Assist.	Length
Party BIC	BIC of the enquiring party	-	-	-
[Party BIC] Description	The designation of the securities account holder	-	-	-
Securities Account **Mandatory field**	Input request 'please select ...'	Selection from the securities accounts available for the securities account holder	Selection	-
Date per **Mandatory field**	-	Reference date for which to generate the statement of holdings INFO: If the selected date is not a T2S Opening Day as listed in the General Terms and Conditions of the OeKB CSD GmbH the statement of holdings will be issued for the last settlement date before the selected date.	Calendar icon	DD-MM-YYYY

9. Billing

Via the menu item *Billing* you can access copies of all invoices issued by the OeKB CSD GmbH to the holder of a securities account. The invoice copies include detailed information on the fees charged. They are available for download as PDF-format files.

In particular, the detailed list of securities account fees shows the total amount of fees across all securities account of the securities account holder. Additional detail views show the total amount of fees for the individual securities accounts and include a breakdown based on the individual positions in a safekeeping account and on the end-of-day positions by business day during the selected invoice period.

9.1 Structure of Invoice Data on the Settlement Client

The menu items *Billing* > *Customer Invoices* are the initial steps to access invoice data on the Settlement Client. Subsequent tiers provice access to the following information details about the invoice:

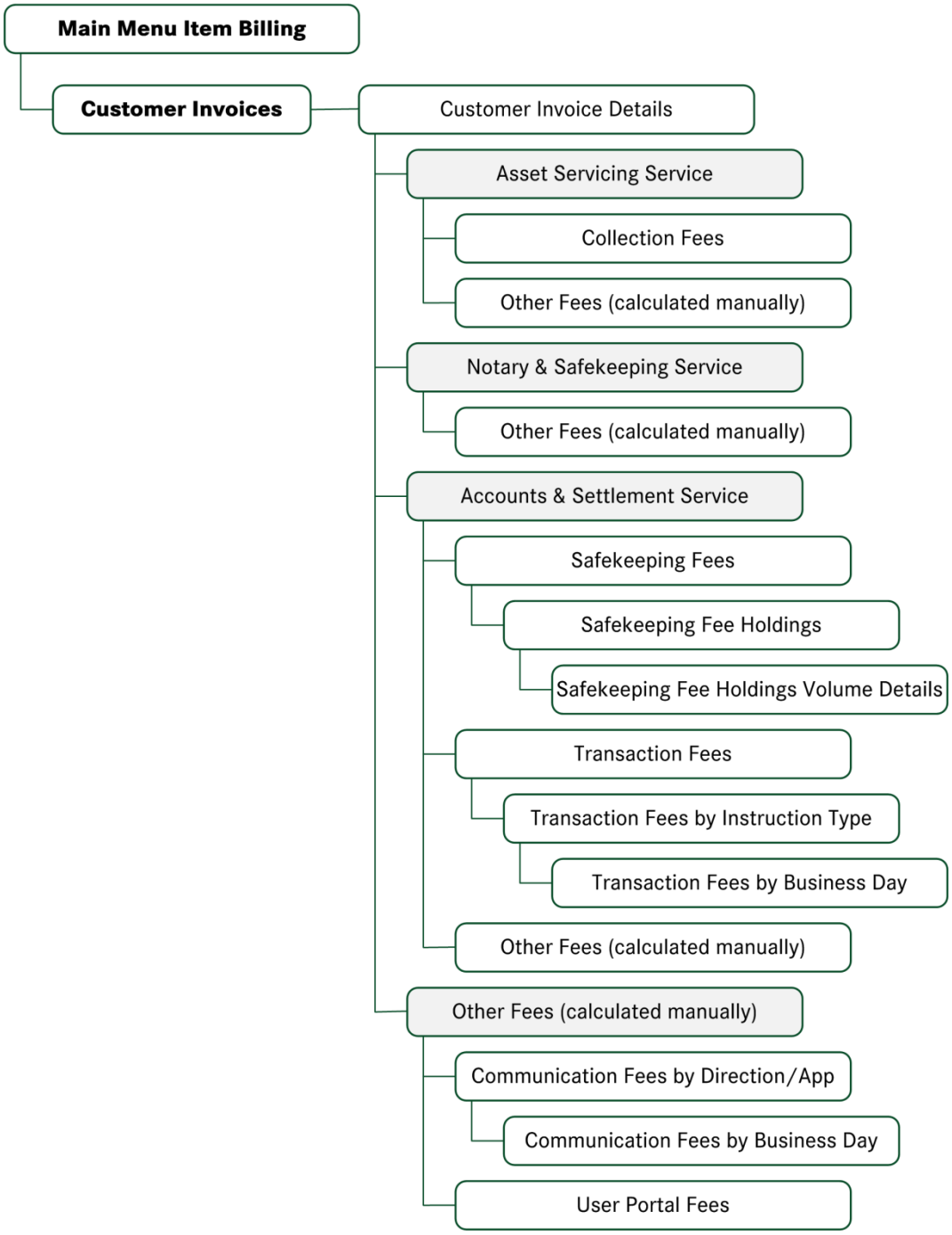


Figure 96: Structure of Invoice Data on the Settlement Client

9.2 Customer Invoices

How to Open the Customer Invoices Screen

Step by Step

1 In the menu bar, select *Billing* > *Customer Invoices*.
The screen **Customer Invoices** appears.

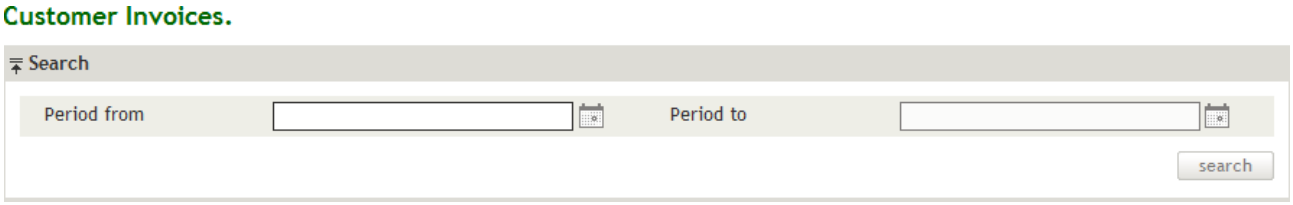


Figure 97: Customer Invoices

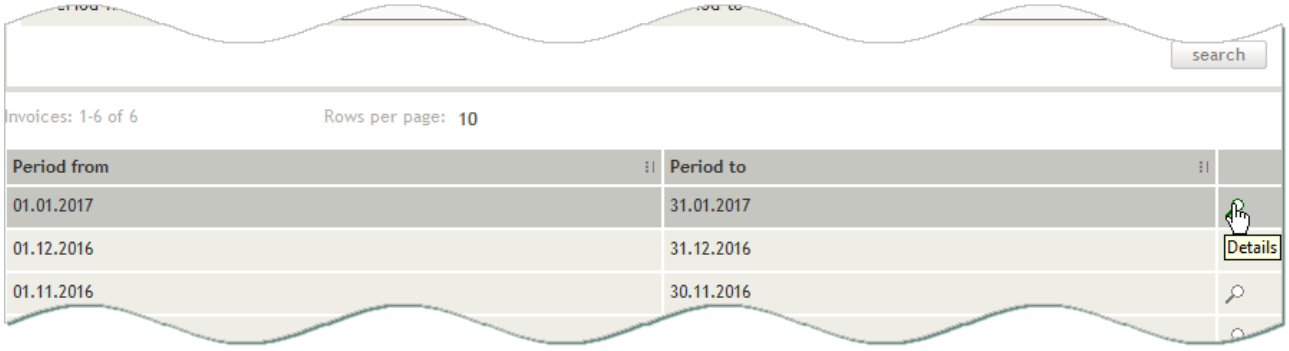


Figure 98: Customer Invoices - search result list

9.2.1 Viewing Invoices

How to Display Copies of the Invoices Issued by the OeKB CSD to the Customer

Step by Step

1 In the menu bar, select *Billing* > *Customer Invoices*.
The screen **Customer Invoices** appears.

2 Enter the desired period in the available fields.

3 Click on the **search** button.
The search result list containing all invoice periods matching your search criteria appears.

4 Click on the icon to open the invoice period detail view and have all the invoices issued during that period shown..

NOTE **The copies of invoices with an invoice period partly outside the period entered will not be shown.**

9.2.1.1 Field Descriptions (Customer Invoices)

Field	Content (by system)	Entry (by user)	Input Assist.	Length
Period from - to	-	Date range of the invoice period If you leave one of the fields empty, the system will search starting from or ending with the date that has been entered. NOTE The copies of invoices with an invoice period partly outside the period entered will not be shown.	Calendar icon	DD-MM-YYYY

9.2.2 Invoice Detail View (Customer Invoice Details)

How to Display the Detail View of an Invoice

Step by Step

1 In the menu bar, select *Billing* > *Customer Invoices*.
The screen **Customer Invoices** appears.

2 Enter the desired period in the available fields.

3 Click on the **search** button.
The search result list containing all invoice periods matching your search criteria appears.

4 In the row of the period for which you want to have the invoices shown, click on the **Details** icon to open the detail view.
The detail view **Customer Invoice Details** appears.

5 You have the following options:

a Click on the icon to open the fees lists (mask sections) and have all the invoices issued during that period shown..

NOTE Depending on the service for which the invoice was issued the mask sections **Safekeeping Fees**, **Transaction Fees**, **Collection Fees**, **Communication Fees**, **User Portal Fees** or **Other Fees** appear.

b Click on the icon to download the invoice copy in PDF format.

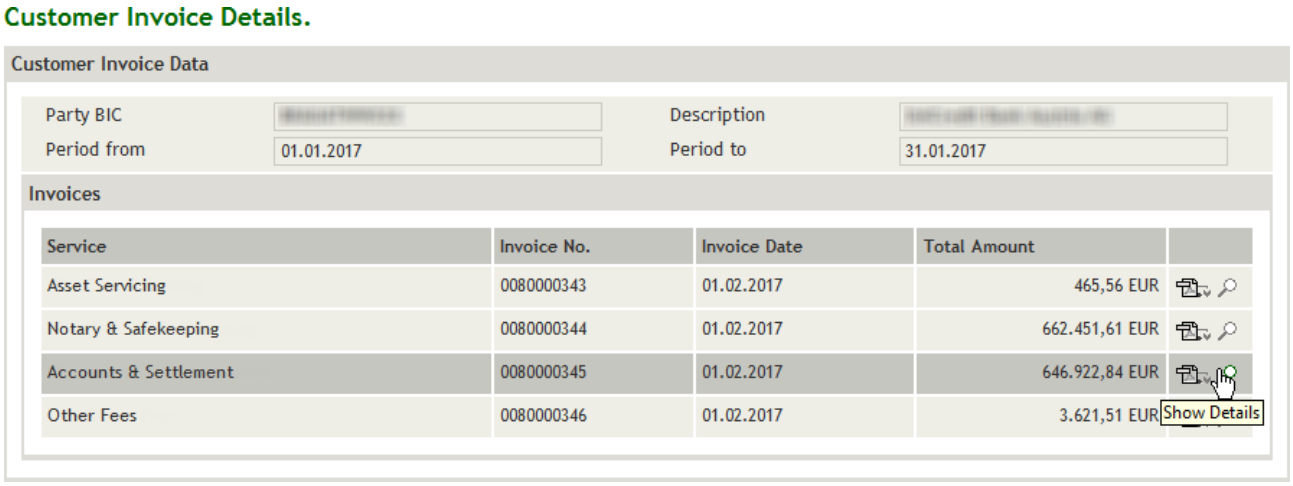


Figure 99: Invoice detail view (Customer Invoice Details)

9.2.2.1 Field Descriptions (Customer Invoice Details)

NOTE The fields in the invoice detail view are display fields. Modifying the field entries is not possible.

Field	Description
Customer Invoice Data	
Party BIC	BIC of the securities account holder to whom the invoice was issued.
[Party BIC] Description	The designation of the securities account holder to whom the invoice was issued.
Period from - to	Invoice period

9.2.2.2 Fees Lists (Mask Sections)

The fees details are accessible from the Customer Invoice Details screen. Depending on the service, for which the invoice was issued, the following fees lists (mask sections) are available.

- Asset Servicing Service
  - Collection Fees
  - Other Fees
- Notary & Safekeeping Service
  - Other Fees
- Accounts & Settlement Service
  - Safekeeping Fees
  - Transaction Fees
  - Other Fees
- Other Fees
  - Communication Fees
  - User Portal Fees

TIP The fees lists of the safekeeping, transaction, communication and collection fees are available for **download in Excel format.**

How to Display the Fees Lists

Step by Step

1 In the Customer Invoice Details screen (fig. **Fehler! Verweisquelle konnte nicht gefunden werden.**), in the row of the invoice for which you want to have the fees lists shown, click on the **Details** icon.
The corresponding mask section(s) appear(s).

2 You have the following options:

a In the mask section of the fees list (fig. **Fehler! Verweisquelle konnte nicht gefunden werden.**) for which you want to have the details shown, click on the **Details** icon to open the detail view.

b Click on the **Excel download** button to save the fees list in Excel format.

NOTE This function is only available for safekeeping, transaction, communication and collection fees.

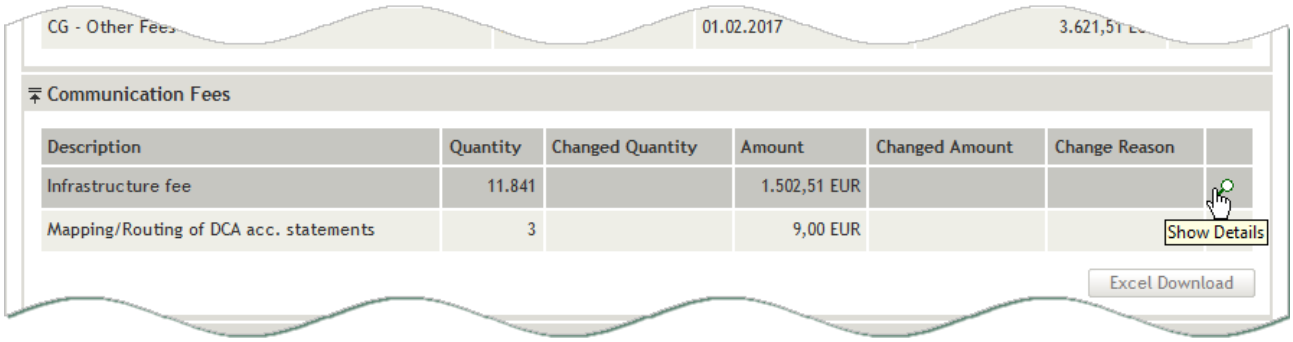


Figure 100: Invoice detail view with fees list (example: Communication Fees)

9.2.3 Safekeeping Fees

The following detail fees lists are available for the safekeeping fees by securities account:

— Safekeeping Fee Holdings, see below
  – Safekeeping Fee Holdings Volume Details (by ISIN by business day)

INFO Please refer to the invoice for Accounts & Settlement Services to view the safekeeping fees.

How to Display the List of Safekeeping Fees from the Invoice Detail View

Step by Step

1 In the Customer Invoice Details screen, in the **Safekeeping Fees** mask section, click on the **Details** icon to open the detail view.
The safekeeping account list **Safekeeping Fees** appears.

TIP Go to the invoice detail view to download the safekeeping fees in Excel format.

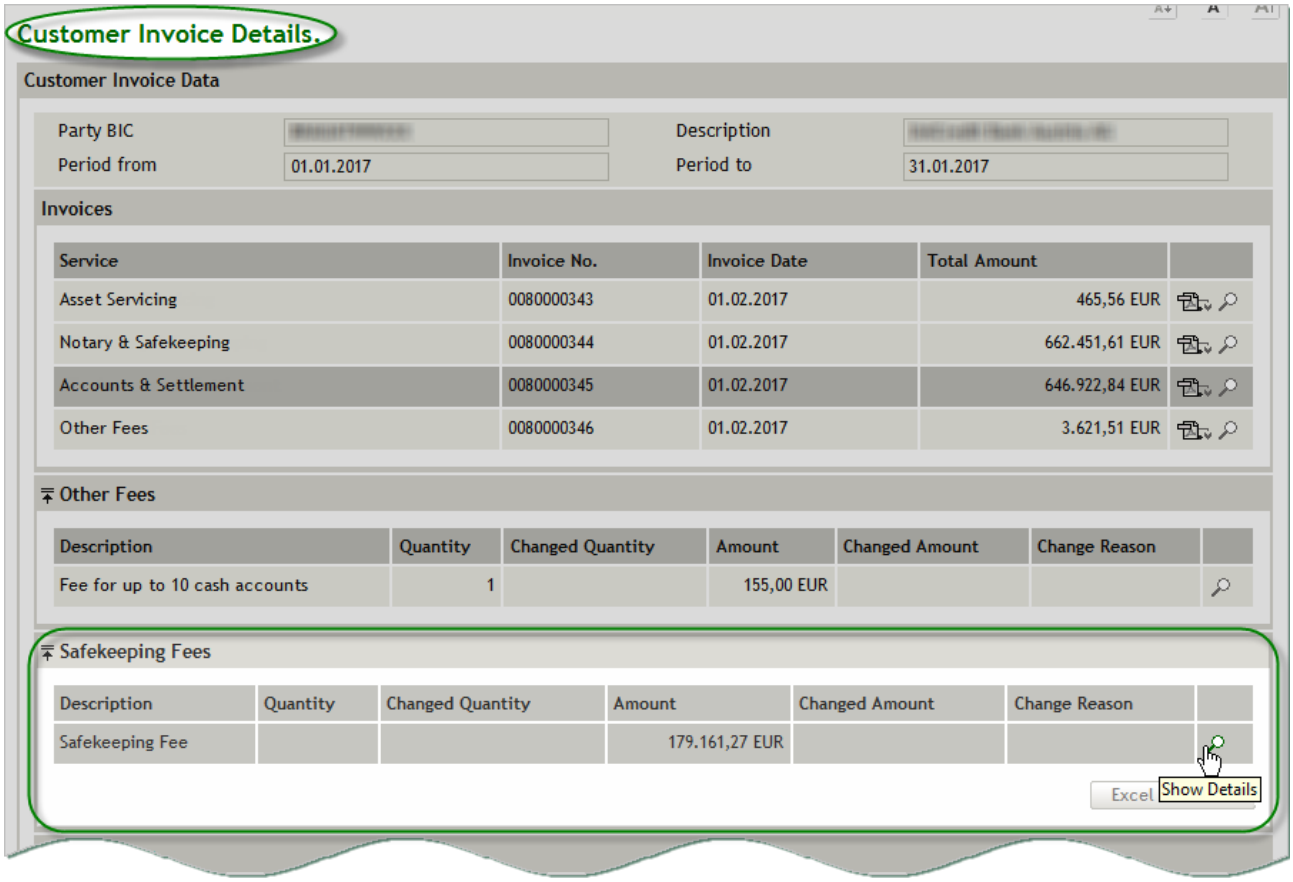


Figure 101: Invoice detail view - mask section Safekeeping Fees

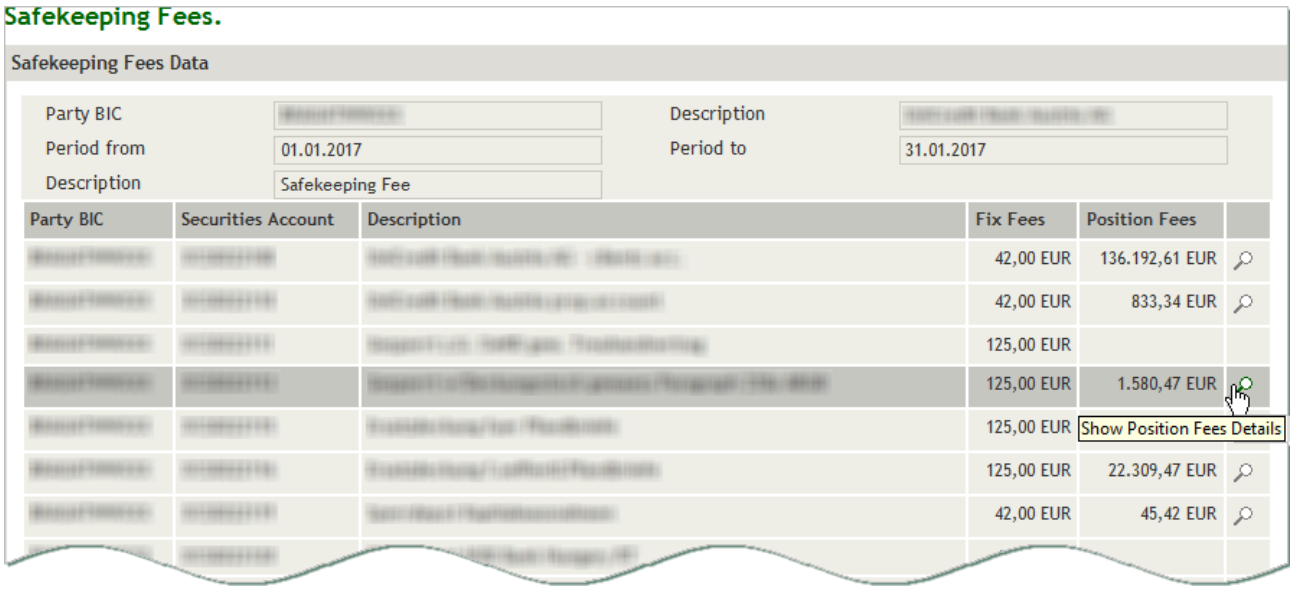


Figure 102: Safekeeping fees list (total fees by securities account)

9.2.3.1 Safekeeping Fee Holdings

The detailed list of safekeeping fees by holdings is accessible from the safekeeping account list Safekeeping Fees.

How to Display the Safekeeping Fees by Holdings

Step by Step

1. In the safekeeping account list Safekeeping Fees (fig. **Fehler! Verweisquelle konnte nicht gefunden werden.**), in the row of the safekeeping account for which you want to have the safekeeping fees shown by holdings, click on the **Details** icon 🔎 to open the detail view.
   The detail view **Safekeeping Fee Holdings** appears.
2. You have the following options:
   a. Use the 🔎 icon to access the monthly positions for all holdings.
   b. Filter the search results to limit the number of results in the search result list.

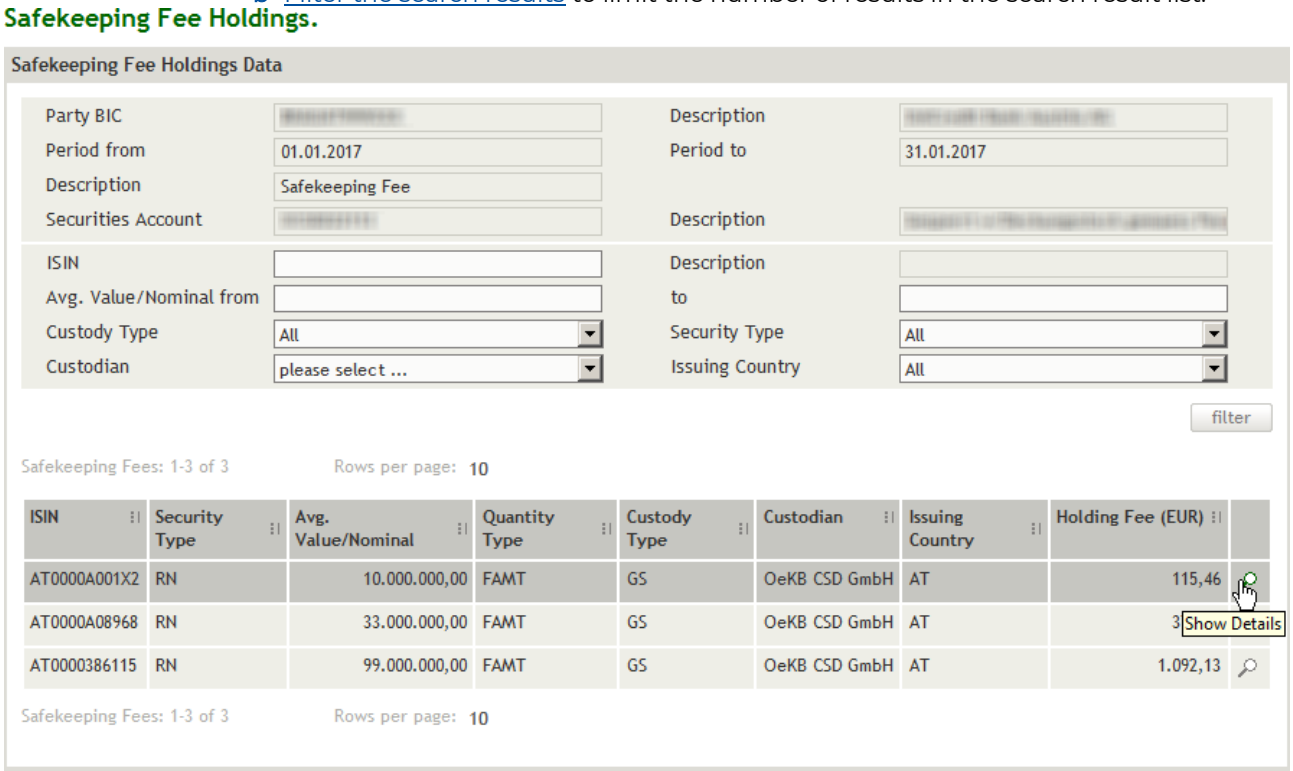


Figure 103: Safekeeping Fee Holdings detail view

9.2.3.2 Field Descriptions (Safekeeping Fee Holdings)

Field	Description
Safekeeping Fee Holdings Data	
Party BIC	see field descriptions for the Customer Invoice Details
[Party BIC] Description	
Period from - to	
Description	Designation of the fee type
Securities Account	Number of the securities account in which the securities are deposited
[Securities Account] Description	Designation of the securities account
Filter fields	see field descriptions (search filter for the Safekeeping Fee Holdings search result list)

9.2.3.3 Filtering Safekeeping Fees by Holdings

In the **Safekeeping Fee Holdings** screen you can limit the number of results displayed in the search result list.. To do so, use the input and dropdown fields of the filter at the lower end of the screen.

How to Limit the Number of Results Displayed in the Safekeeping Fee Holdings Search Result List

Step by Step

1. In the Safekeeping Fees screen (list of safekeeping fees), in the row of the safekeeping account for which you want to have the safekeeping fees shown by holdings, click on the **Details** icon to open the **Safekeeping Fee Holdings** detail view.
2. Enter the desired filter criteria in the available fields or limit the selections in the fields completed by the system.
3. Click **filter**.
   The search result list of safekeeping fees containing all holdings matching your restricted search criteria appears.

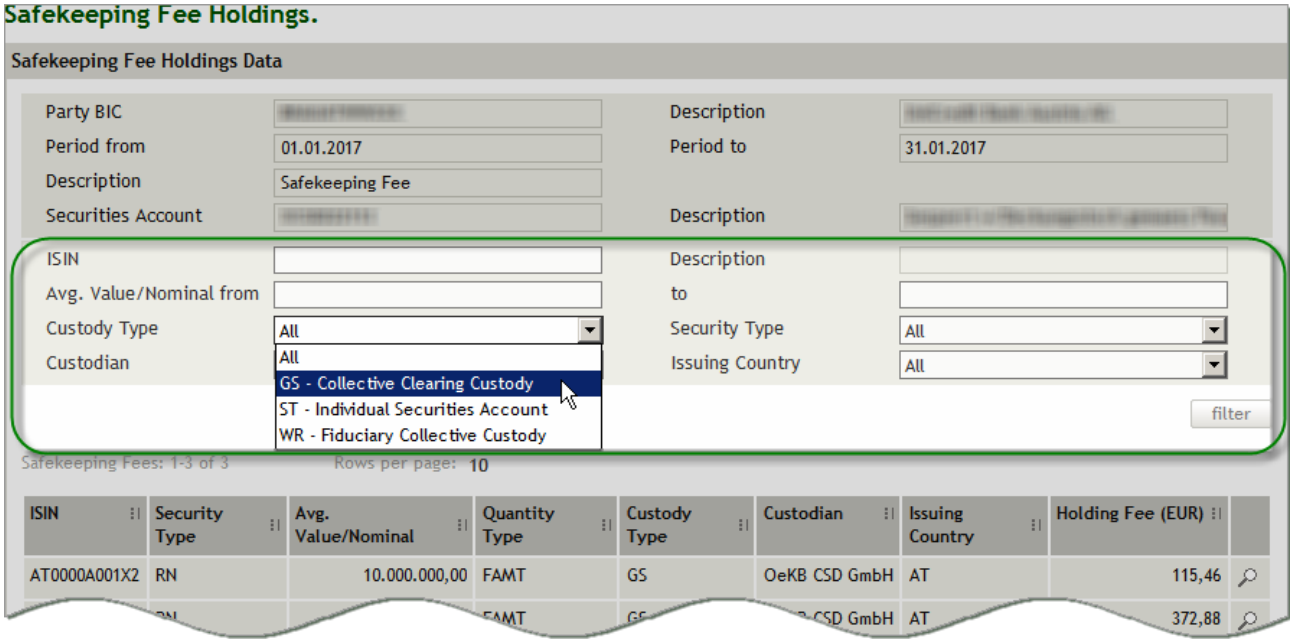


Figure 104: Safekeeping Fee Holdings detail view - search filter (filter example: custody type)

9.2.3.4 Field Descriptions (Search Filter for the Safekeeping Fee Holdings Search Result List)

Field	Content (by system)	Entry (by user)	Input Assist.	Length
ISIN	**Auto-Complete**: After input of the country code the system suggests a list of ISIN.	ISIN of the desired positions Country code, then selection from the suggested list	Selection list after input of country code	12 alphanum.
[ISIN] Description	The designation of the financial instrument	-	-	-
Avg. Value/ Nominal from - to	-	Value range within which the average value or the nominal value of the securities shall lie If you leave one of the fields empty, the system will search starting from or ending with the value that has been entered. If you are searching for a specific quantity, enter the same value into both fields. NOTE The Avg. Value/Nominal (EUR) is the basis for calculating the monthly safekeeping fee.. It is calculated from the average daily positions	-	positive decimal number

Field	Content (by system)	Entry (by user)	Input Assist.	Length
		and also includes non-business days. For the latter, the positions by end-of-day of the previous last business day is used.		
Custody Type	all	Selection from **GS - Collective Clearing Custody**, **ST - Individual Securities Account** or **WR - Fiduciary Collective Custody** By selecting **GS - Collective Clearing Custody** it is possible e.g. to search exclusively for positions with custody type collective clearing custody. By selecting **ST - Individual Securities Account** it is possible e.g. to search exclusively for positions with custody type individual securities account. By selecting **WR - Fiduciary Collective Custody** it is possible e.g. to search exclusively for positions with custody type fiduciary collective custody.	Selection	-

Field	Content (by system)	Entry (by user)	Input Assist.	Length
Security Type	all	Selection from the list: — **AK - Aktien, Stücknotiert**, to search exclusively for positions in shares with a price per unit — **AK_6000 - Aktien, Stücknotiert**, to search exclusively for positions in ancillary rights associated with shares with a price per unit — **AN - Aktien, Nominalnotiert**, to search exclusively for positions in shares with a price as percentage of par — **AK_6000 - Aktien, Nominalnotiert**, to search exclusively for positions in ancillary rights associated with shares with a price as percentage of par — **FK - Fonds, Stücknotiert**, to search exclusively for positions in funds with a price per unit — **FN - Fonds, Nominalnotiert**, to search exclusively for positions in funds with a price as percentage of par — **KG - Keine Depotgebühr**, to search exclusively for positions for which no safekeeping fee is due — **RK - Anleihen, Stücknotiert**, to search exclusively for positions in bonds with a price per unit — **RN - Anleihen, Nominalnotiert**, to search exclusively for positions in bonds with a price as percentage of par	Selection	-
Custodian	Input request 'please select ...'	Selection from all central securities depositories available in the list	Selection	-
Issuing Country	all	Selection from all countries available in the list	Selection	-

9.2.3.5 Safekeeping Fee Holdings Volume Details

The monthly holdings volume by ISIN by day is accessible from the fees list Safekeeping Fee Holdings.

How to Display the Monthly Holdings Volume by ISIN by Day

Step by Step

1 In the fees list Safekeeping Fee Holdings, in the row of the ISIN for which you want to have the monthly holding volume shown by day, click on the **Details** icon to open the detail view.
The detail view **Safekeeping Fee Holdings Volume Details** appears.

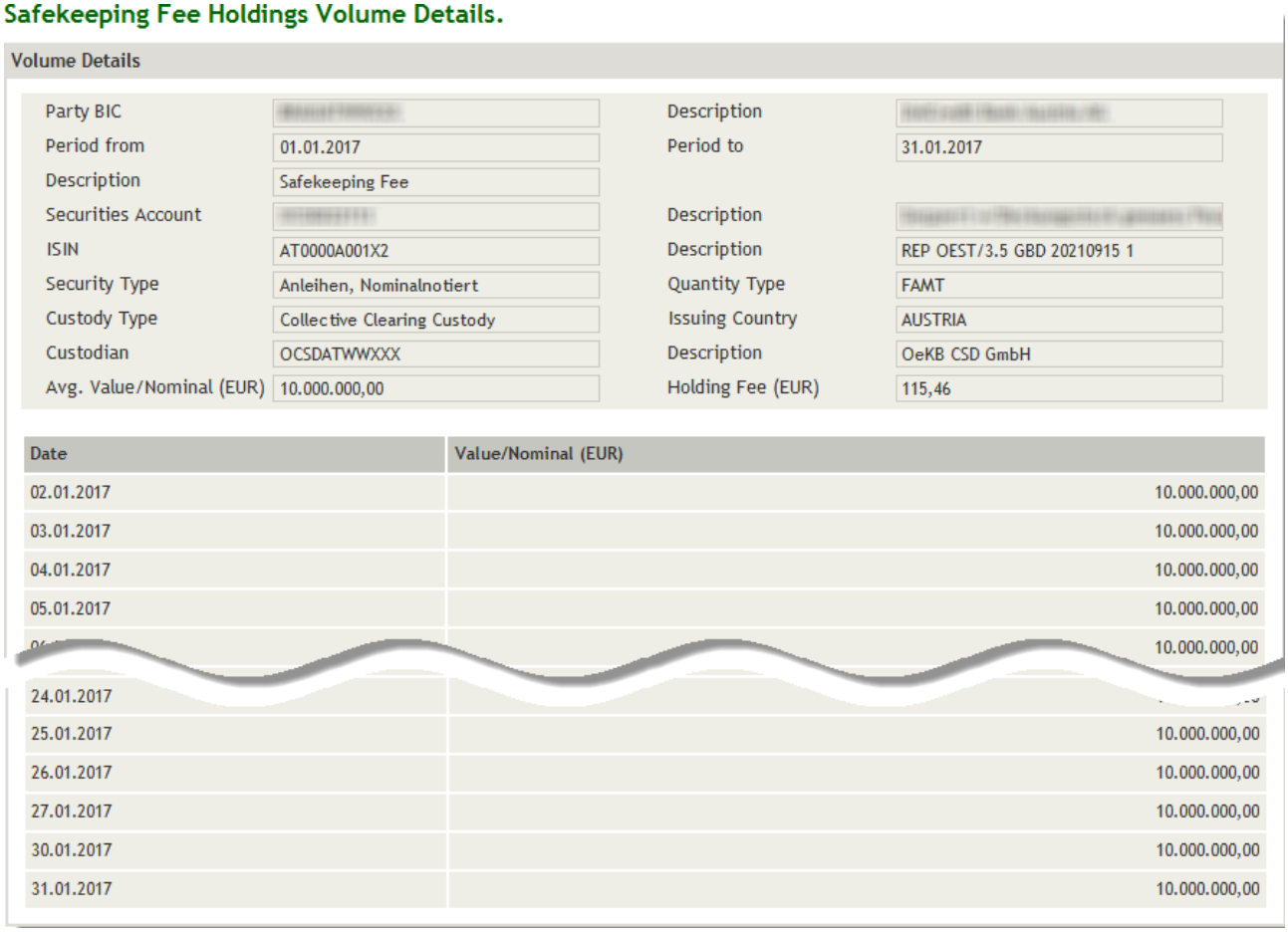


Figure 105: Safekeeping Fee Holdings Volume Details

9.2.3.6 Field Descriptions (Safekeeping Fee Holdings Volume Details)

Field	Description
Volume Details	
Party BIC	see field descriptions for the Customer Invoice Details
[Party BIC] Description	
Period from - to	

Field	Description
Description	Designation of the fee type
Securities Account	see field descriptions for the Safekeeping Fee Holdings screen
[Securities Account] Description	
ISIN	ISIN of the enquired position
[ISIN] Description	The designation of the financial instrument
Security Type	Type of the financial instrument Possible entries: — Aktien, Stücknotiert (shares with a price per unit) — Aktien, Nebenrechte, Stücknotiert (ancillary rights associated with shares with a price per unit) — Aktien, Nominalnotiert (shares with a price as percentage of par) — Aktien, Nebenrechte, Nominalnotiert (ancillary rights associated with shares with a price as percentage of par) — Fonds, Stücknotiert (funds with a price per unit) — Keine Depotgebühr (no safekeeping fees) — Anleihen, Stücknotiert (bonds with a price per unit) — Anleihen, Nominalnotiert (bonds with a price as percentage of par)
Quantity Type	Type of listing of the financial instruments Possible entries: — **FAMT** - for financial instruments with a price as percentage of par (face amount) — **UNIT** - for financial instruments with a price per unit
Custody Type	Custody type of the financial instruments Possible entries: — **Collective Clearing Custody** — **Individual Securities Account** — **Fiduciary Collective Custody**
Issuing Country	The issuing country
Custodian	Central securities depository that holds the financial instruments
[Custodian] Description	The designation of the central securities depository

Field	Description
Avg. Value/ Nominal (EUR)	Average value or nominal value of the financial instruments in EUR NOTE The Avg. Value/Nominal (EUR) is the basis for calculating the monthly safekeeping fee. It is calculated from the average daily positions and also includes non-business days. For the latter, the positions by end-of-day of the previous last business day is used.
Holding Fee	Amount of monthly fees in EUR

9.2.4 Transaction Fees

The following detail fees lists are available for the safekeeping fees by booking category:

— Transaction fees for the selected booking category by instruction type (see below)

– Transaction fees for the selected instruction type by business day

INFO Please refer to the invoice for Accounts & Settlement Services to view the transaction fees.

How to Display the List of Transaction Fees from the Invoice Detail View

Step by Step

1 In the Customer Invoice Details screen, in the **Transaction Fees** mask section, in the row of the desired booking category, click on the **Details** icon to open the fees list by instruction type.
The fees list **Transaction Fees** appears.

TIP Go to the invoice detail view to download the transaction fees in Excel format.

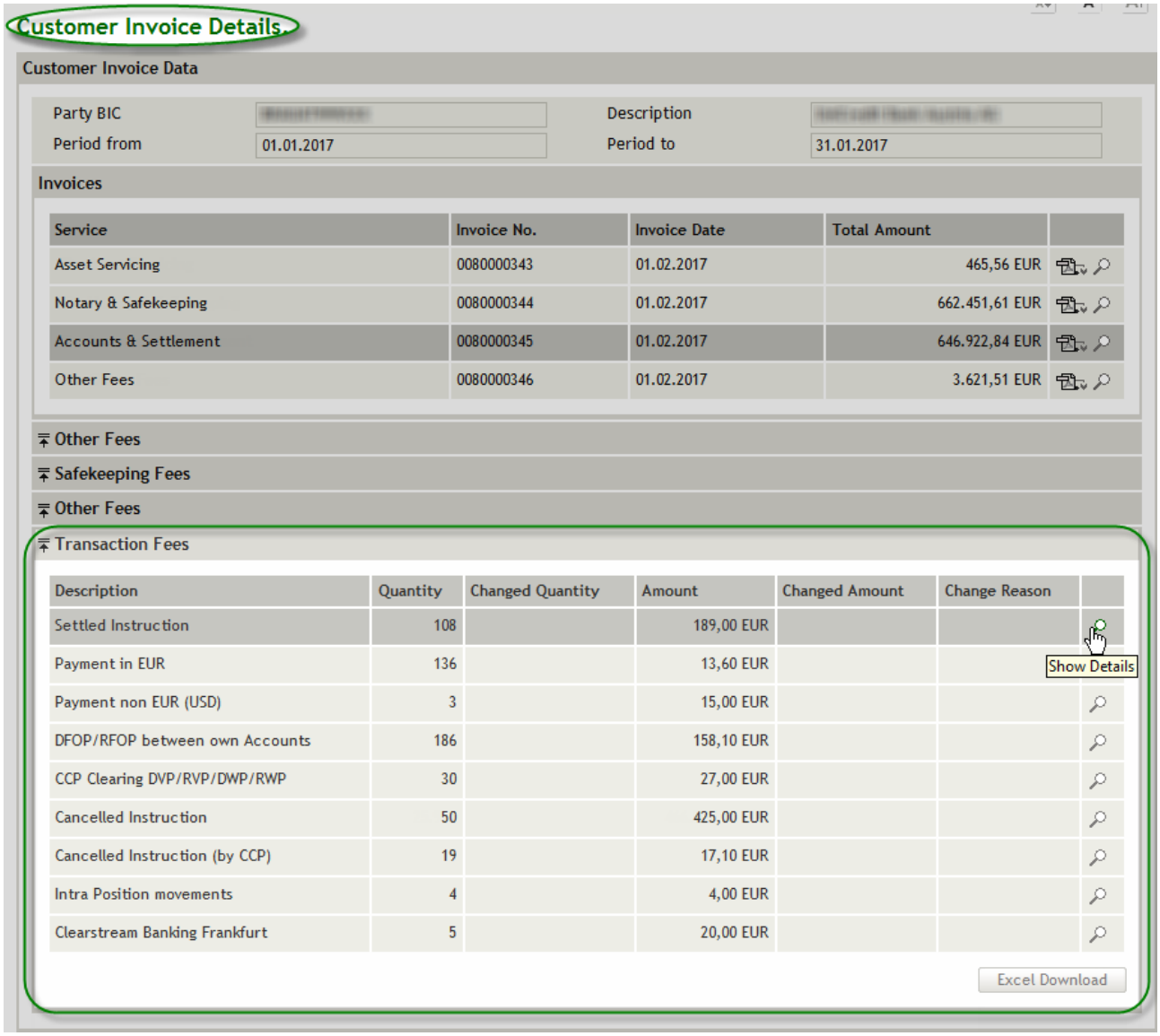


Figure 106: Invoice detail view - mask section Transaction Fees

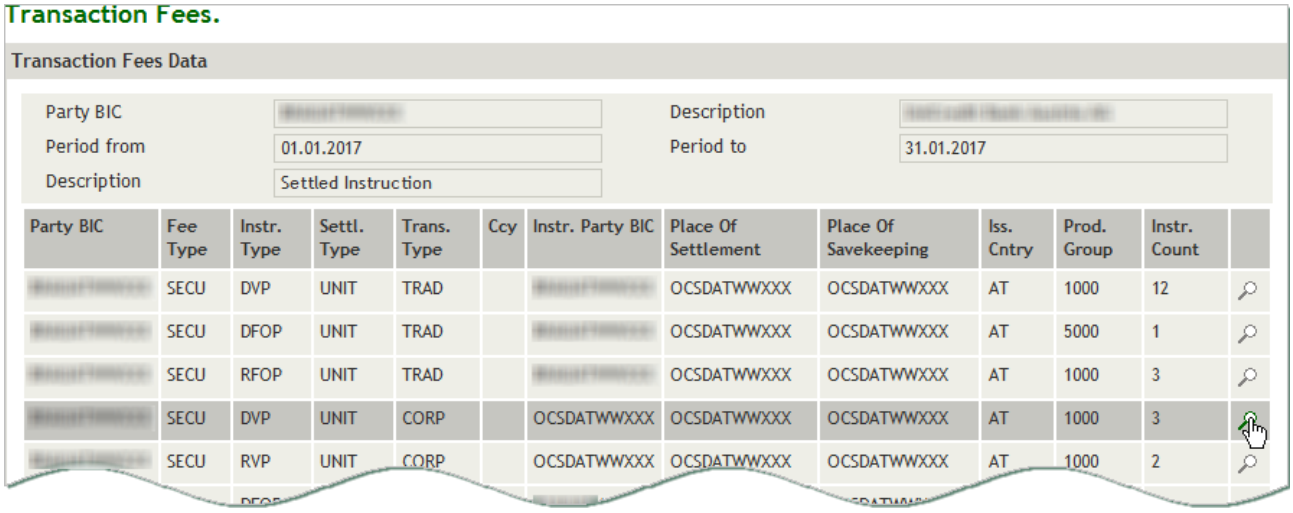


Figure 107: List of transaction fees by instruction type

9.2.4.1 Field Descriptions (Transaction Fees)

NOTE The fields in the detail view are display fields. Modifying the field entries is not possible.

Field	Description
Transaction Fees Data	
Party BIC	see field descriptions for the Customer Invoice Details
[Party BIC] Description	
Period from - to	
Description	Designation of the fee type

9.2.4.2 Transaction Fees by Business Day

How to Display the Transaction Fees by Business Day

Step by Step

1 In the fees list Transaction Fees, in the row of the instruction type for which you want to have the fees details shown by day, click on the **Details** icon to open the detail view.
The detail view **Transaction Fees** appears.

Transaction Fees.

Transaction Fees Data

Party BIC	[redacted]	Description	[redacted]
Period from	01.01.2017	Period to	31.01.2017
Description	Settled Instruction		

Business Day	Party BIC	Fee Type	Instr. Type	Settl. Type	Trans. Type	Ccy	Instr. Party BIC	Place Of Settlement	Place Of Savekeeping	Iss. Cntry	Prod. Group	Instr. Count
02.01.1498	[redacted]	SECU	DVP	UNIT	CORP		OCSDATWWXXX	OCSDATWWXXX	OCSDATWWXXX	AT	1000	1
27.01.1498	[redacted]	SECU	DVP	UNIT	CORP		OCSDATWWXXX	OCSDATWWXXX	OCSDATWWXXX	AT	1000	1
31.01.1498	[redacted]	SECU	DVP	UNIT	CORP		OCSDATWWXXX	OCSDATWWXXX	OCSDATWWXXX	AT	1000	1

Figure 108: List of transaction fees by day

9.2.5 Collection Fees

The collection fees are available by collection letter.

INFO Please refer to the invoice for Asset Servicing Services to view the collection fees.

How to Display the List of Collection Fees from the Invoice Detail View

Step by Step

1 In the Customer Invoice Details screen, in the **Collection Fees** mask section, click on the **Details** icon to open the detail view.
The fees list **Collection Fees** appears.

TIP Go to the invoice detail view to download the collection fees in Excel format.

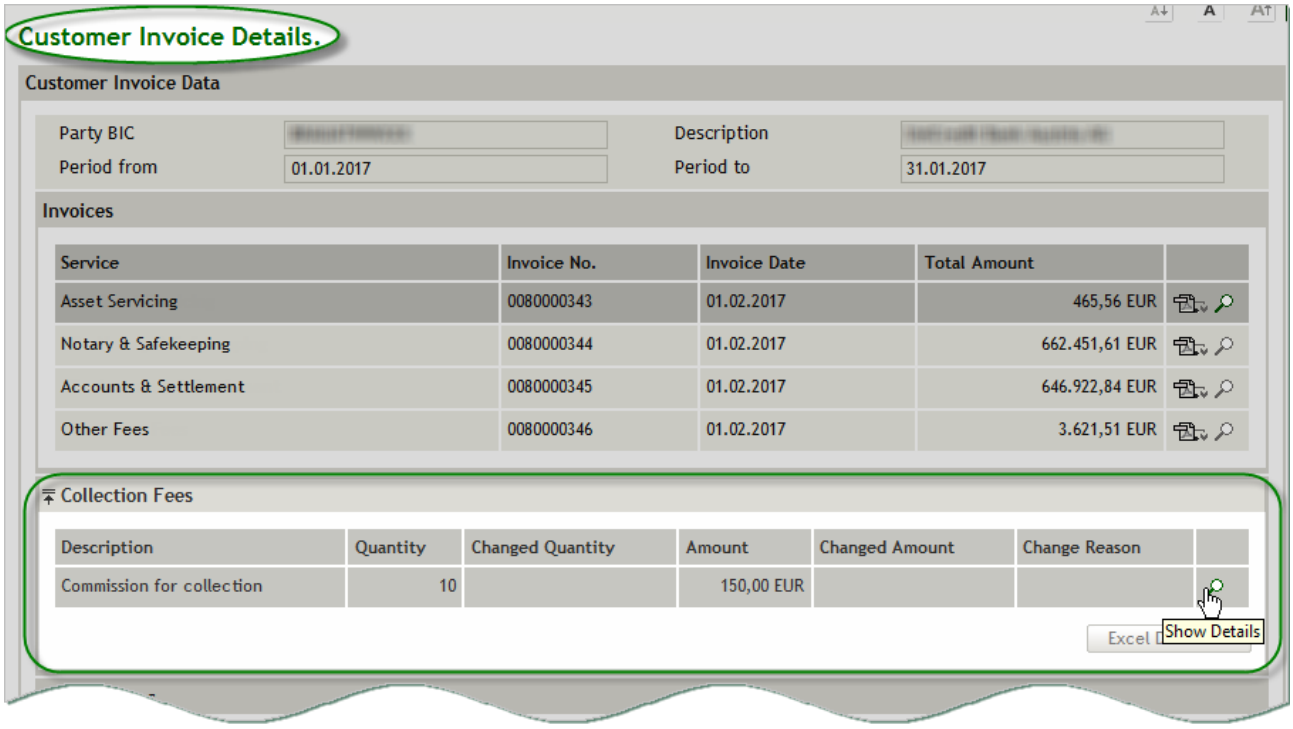


Figure 109: Invoice detail view - mask section Collection Fees

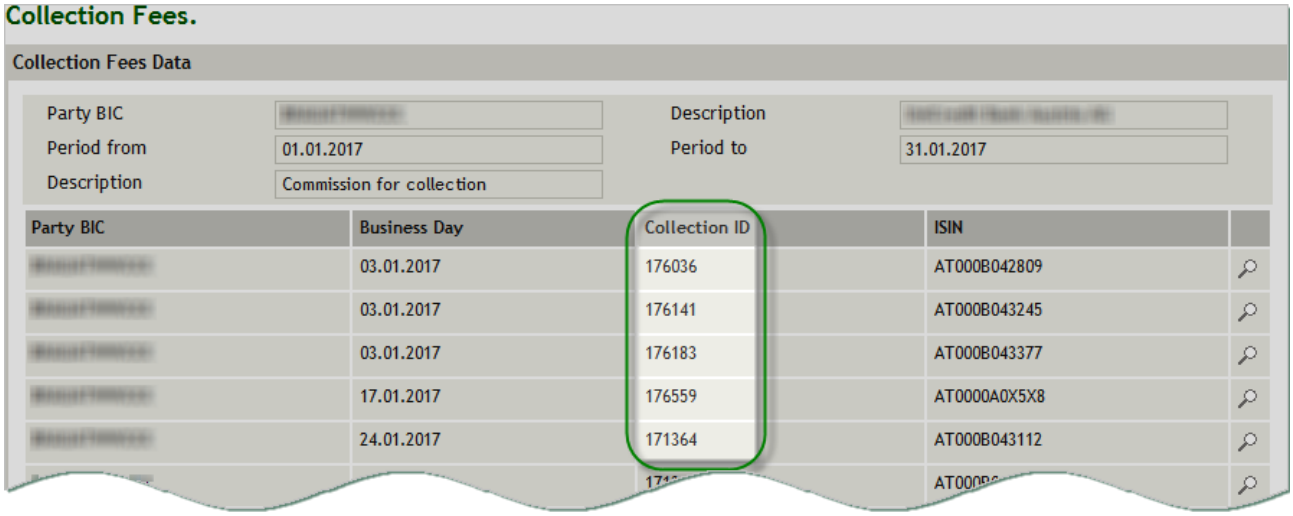


Figure 110: Collection fees by collection letter

9.2.5.1 Field Descriptions (Collection Fees)

NOTE The fields in the detail view are display fields. Modifying the field entries is not possible.

Field	Description
Collection Fees Data	
Party BIC	see field descriptions for the Customer Invoice Details
[Party BIC] Description	
Period from - to	
Description	Designation of the fee type

9.2.6 Communication Fees

The following detail fees lists are available for the collection fees by booking category:

— Communication fees for the selected booking category by message direction and application

  – Communication fees for the selected message direction/application by business day

INFO Please refer to the invoice for Other Fees to view the communication fees.

How to Display the List of Communication Fees from the Invoice Detail View

Step by Step

1 In the Customer Invoice Details screen, in the **Communication Fees** mask section, in the row of the desired booking category, click on the **Details** icon to open the fees list by message direction/application.
The fees list **Communication Fees** appears.

TIP Go to the invoice detail view to download the communication fees in Excel format.

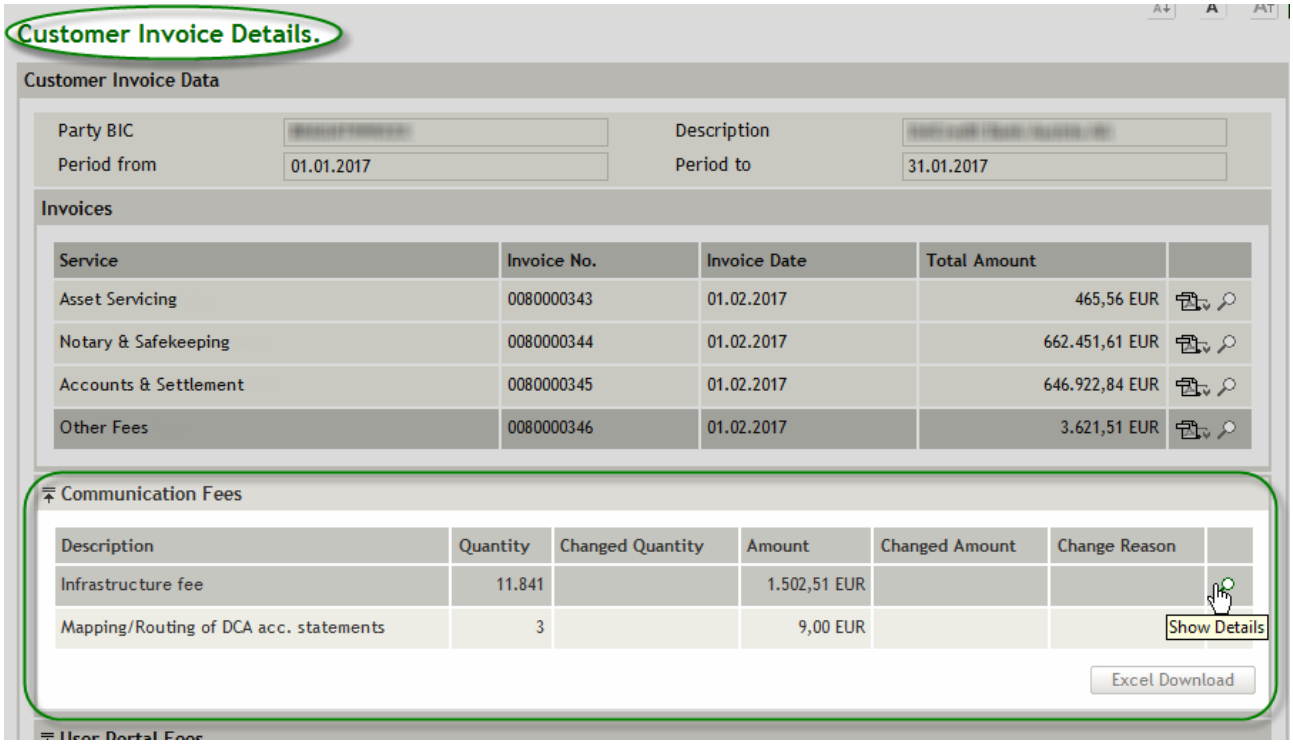


Figure 111: Invoice detail view - mask section Communication Fees

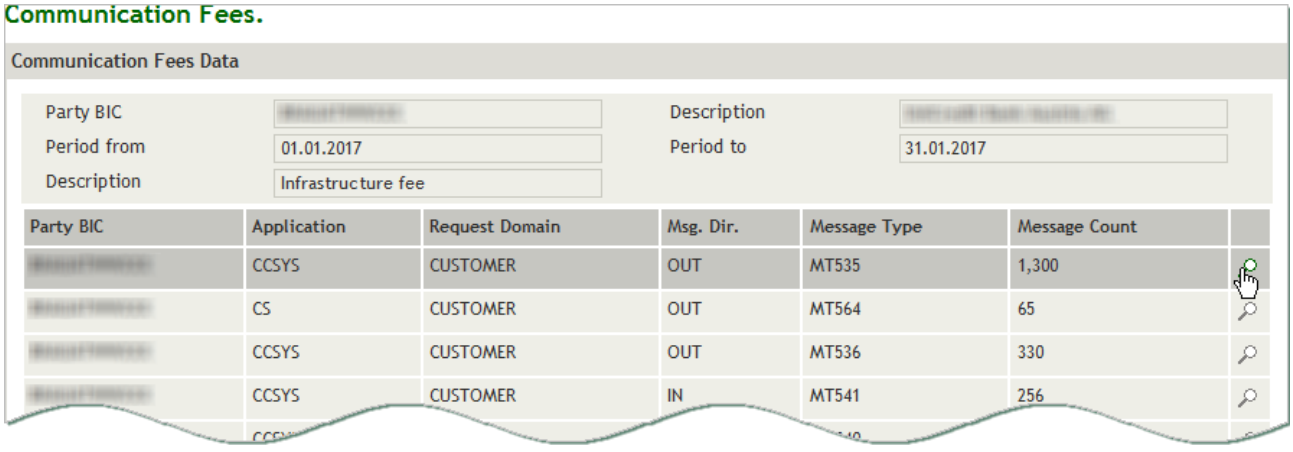


Figure 112: Communication fees by message direction and application

9.2.6.1 Field Descriptions (Communication Fees)

NOTE The fields in the detail view are display fields. Modifying the field entries is not possible.

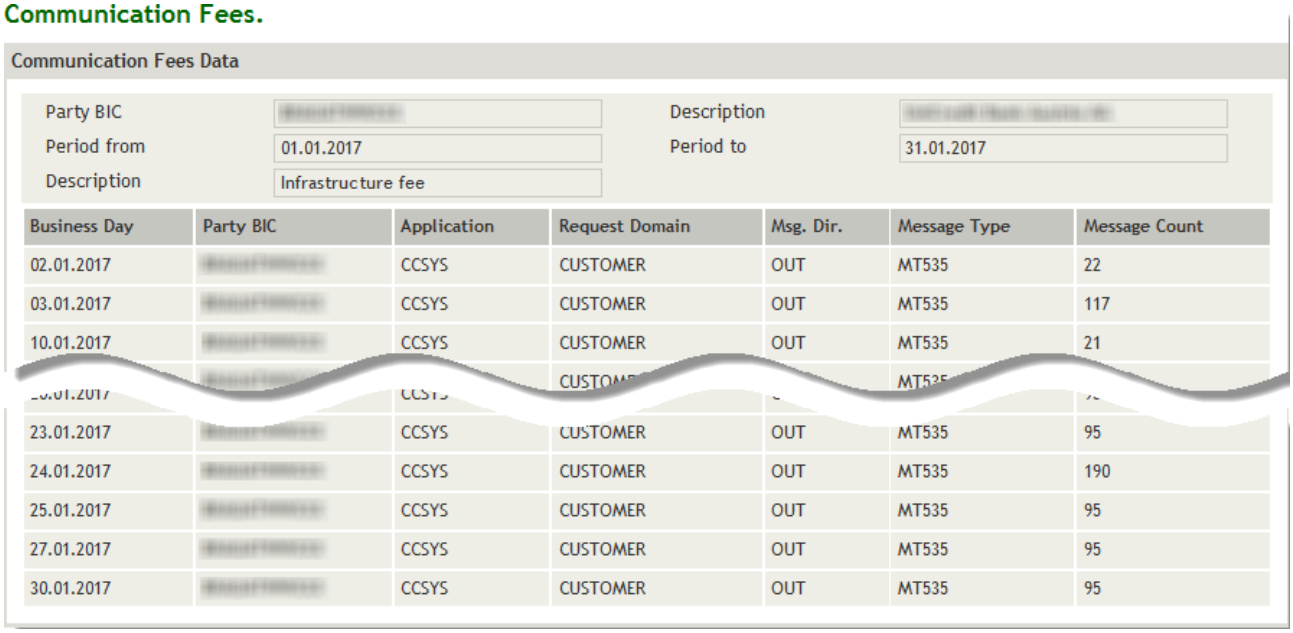
Field	Description
Communication Fees Data	
Party BIC	see field descriptions for the Customer Invoice Details
[Party BIC] Description	
Period from - to	
Description	Designation of the fee type

9.2.6.2 Communication Fees by Business Day

How to Display the Communication Fees by Business Day

Step by Step

1 In the fees list Communication Fees, in the row of the message type for which you want to have the fees details shown by day, click on the **Details** icon to open the detail view.
The detail view **Communication Fees** appears.



Communication Fees.

Communication Fees Data

Party BIC	[illegible]	Description	[illegible]
Period from	01.01.2017	Period to	31.01.2017
Description	Infrastructure fee		

Business Day	Party BIC	Application	Request Domain	Msg. Dir.	Message Type	Message Count
02.01.2017	[illegible]	CCSYS	CUSTOMER	OUT	MT535	22
03.01.2017	[illegible]	CCSYS	CUSTOMER	OUT	MT535	117
10.01.2017	[illegible]	CCSYS	CUSTOMER	OUT	MT535	21
[illegible]	[illegible]	[illegible]	[illegible]	[illegible]	[illegible]	[illegible]
23.01.2017	[illegible]	CCSYS	CUSTOMER	OUT	MT535	95
24.01.2017	[illegible]	CCSYS	CUSTOMER	OUT	MT535	190
25.01.2017	[illegible]	CCSYS	CUSTOMER	OUT	MT535	95
27.01.2017	[illegible]	CCSYS	CUSTOMER	OUT	MT535	95
30.01.2017	[illegible]	CCSYS	CUSTOMER	OUT	MT535	95

Figure 113: List of communication fees by day

9.2.7 User Portal Fees

The user portal fees are available by type of authentication.

INFO	Please refer to the invoice for Other Fees to view the user portal fees.

How to Display the List of User Portal Fees from the Invoice Detail View

Step by Step

1. In the Customer Invoice Details screen, in the **User Portal Fees** mask section, in the row of the desired booking category, click on the **Details** icon to open the fees list by instruction type.
   The fees list **User Portal Fees** appears.

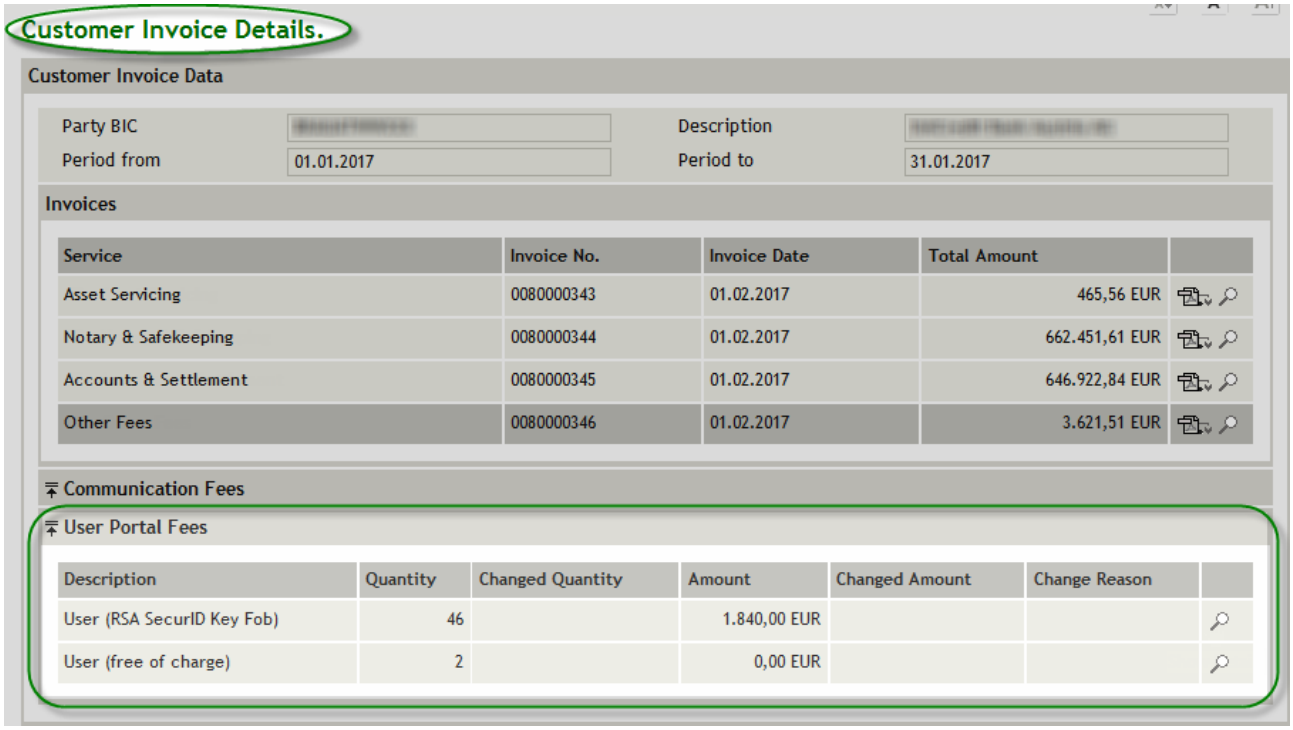


Figure 114: Invoice detail view - mask section User Portal Fees

9.2.7.1 Field Descriptions (User Portal Fees)

NOTE The fields in the detail view are display fields. Modifying the field entries is not possible.

Field	Description
User Portal Fees Data	
Party BIC	see field descriptions for the Customer Invoice Details
[Party BIC] Description	
Period from - to	

9.2.8 Other Fees

How to Display the List of Other Fees from the Invoice Detail View

Step by Step

1 In the Customer Invoice Details screen, in the **Other Fees** mask section, in the row of the desired booking category, click on the **Details** icon to open the detail view.
The fees list **Other Fees** appears.

9.2.8.1 Field Descriptions (Other Fees)

NOTE The fields in the detail view are display fields. Modifying the field entries is not possible.

Field	Description
Other Fees Data	
Party BIC	see field descriptions for the Customer Invoice Details
[Party BIC] Description	
Period from - to	

10. Message Subscription

The message subscription (Administration menu) controls the receipt of SWIFT messages. There can be several message subscription rules defined for each securities account. A message is sent if at least one subscription rule so requires. For details please refer to *Annex 8 Guideline Settlement and Securities Account Administration*.

NOTE	The functions in the *Administration* menu are only available to users with administrator user permissions.

INFO	Message subscriptions are automatically assigned in the securities account master data when the account is created. The default setting automatically activates the receipt of all messages.

You can use the message subscription to restrict the message types which will be received.

10.1 Search Message Subscription

You can search for message subscriptions in order to modify them.

How to Open the Search Message Subscription Screen

Step by Step

1 In the menu bar, select *Administration* > *Message Subscriptions*.
The **Search Message Subscription** screen appears.

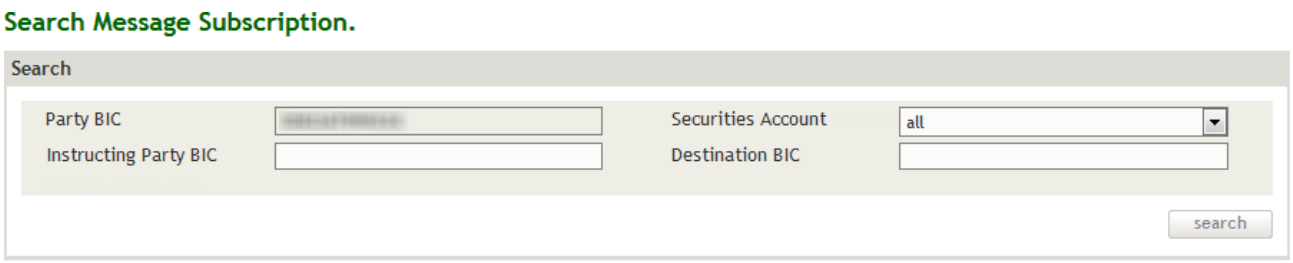


Figure 115: Searching Message Subscription

10.1.1 Modifying a Message Subscription

To modify a message subscription for a specific securities account, you need to search for the message subscription you are looking for. Then you can use the **Edit** screen to make the desired changes.

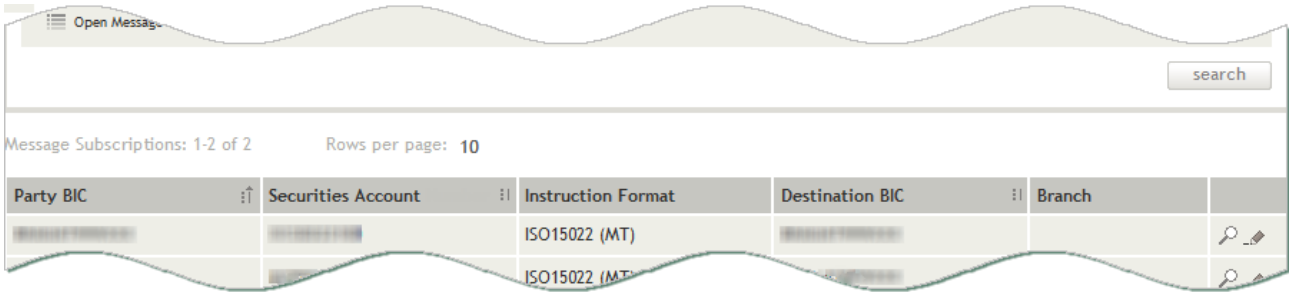


Figure 116: Search Message Subscription - search result list

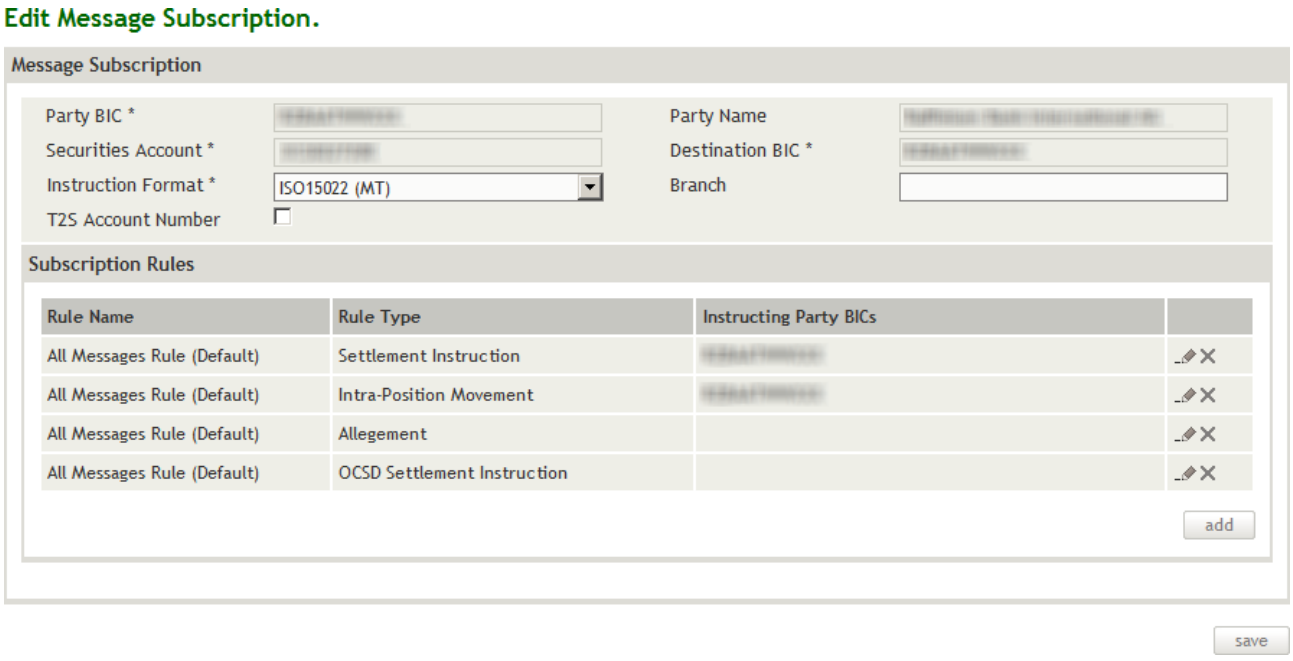


Figure 117: Edit Message Subscription

How to Modify a Message Subscription

Step by Step

1. In the menu bar, select *Administration* > *Message Subscriptions*.
   The **Search Message Subscription** screen appears.
   The system automatically inserts the appropriate predefined values into the fields:
   - Party BIC (= inputting party)
   - Securities Account (= all)
2. Enter the desired search criteria in the available fields or limit the selections in the fields completed by the system.
3. Click on the **search** button.
   The search result list containing all message subscriptions matching your search criteria appears.

4 In the row of the record you want to modify, click on the **Edit** icon to open the **Edit** screen.

INFO	The system only displays the **Edit** icon if your user permissions allow you to modify data.

5 Modify the record as required.

6 Modify the existing message subscription rules as required or add new rules.

7 Click **save** to save your changes.

10.1.2 Field Descriptions (Search Message Subscription)

Field	Content (by system)	Entry (by user)	Input Assist.	Length
Party BIC	BIC of the securities account holder **Auto-Complete**: After input of the first or two consecutive characters of the BIC the system suggests a list of BICs. The complete list of all parties available in the system is displayed after putting the cursor into the field and hitting the arrow down key on the keyboard.	-	Selection list after input of the first or of two consecutive character(s)	BIC11
Securities Account	all The system searches for message subscriptions of all securities accounts of the securities account holder.	Selection from the securities accounts available for the securities account holder	Selection	-
Instructing Party BIC	**Auto-Complete**: After input of the first or two consecutive characters of the BIC the system suggests a list of BICs. The complete list of all parties available in the system is displayed after putting the cursor into the field and hitting the arrow down key on the keyboard.	BIC of the party specified as the instructing party in the message subscription(s) to be found. Input of the first or two consecutive characters of the BIC, then selection from the suggested list	List of available parties	BIC11

Field	Content (by system)	Entry (by user)	Input Assist.	Length
Destination BIC	**Auto-Complete**: After input of the first or two consecutive characters of the BIC the system suggests a list of BICs. The complete list of all parties available in the system is displayed after putting the cursor into the field and hitting the arrow down key on the keyboard.	BIC of the party specified as the receiver of messages in the message subscription(s) to be found. Input of the first or two consecutive characters of the BIC, then selection from the suggested list	List of available parties	BIC11
Open Message Types	All check boxes ticked	Activation of the check boxes of all message types which you want the system to look for, so you can modify them.	-	-

10.1.3 Field Descriptions (Edit Message Subscription)

Field	Content (by system)	Entry (by user)	Input Assist.	Length
Party BIC	BIC of the holder of the securities account defined in the selected message subscription.	-	-	BIC11
[Party BIC] Description	The designation of the securities account holder	-	-	-
Securities Account	Securities account defined in the selected message subscription.	-	-	-
Destination BIC	BIC of the party specified as message receiver in the selected message subscription	-	-	BIC11
Instruction Format **Mandatory Field (automatically completed by the system)**	The instruction format selected in the securities account master data	Selection from **ISO15022 (MT)** or **ISO20022 (MX)**	Selection	-
Branch	-	Branch code for which the defined subscription rules shall apply	-	BIC11

Field	Content (by system)	Entry (by user)	Input Assist.	Length
T2S Account Number	Check box active The messages contain the securities account number in the new format, starting with "OCSD".	If you deactivate (empty) the check box, the securities account number in the messages will be displayed in the old format.	-	-
Subscription Rules	List of the rules defined for the selected message subscription	see Message Subscription Rules	-	-

10.2 Message Subscription Rules

Use the Edit Message Subscription screen to modify, delete or add message subscription rules.

10.2.1 Modifying a Message Subscription Rule

If you want to modify a message subscription rule, you need to start in the Edit Message Subscription screen.

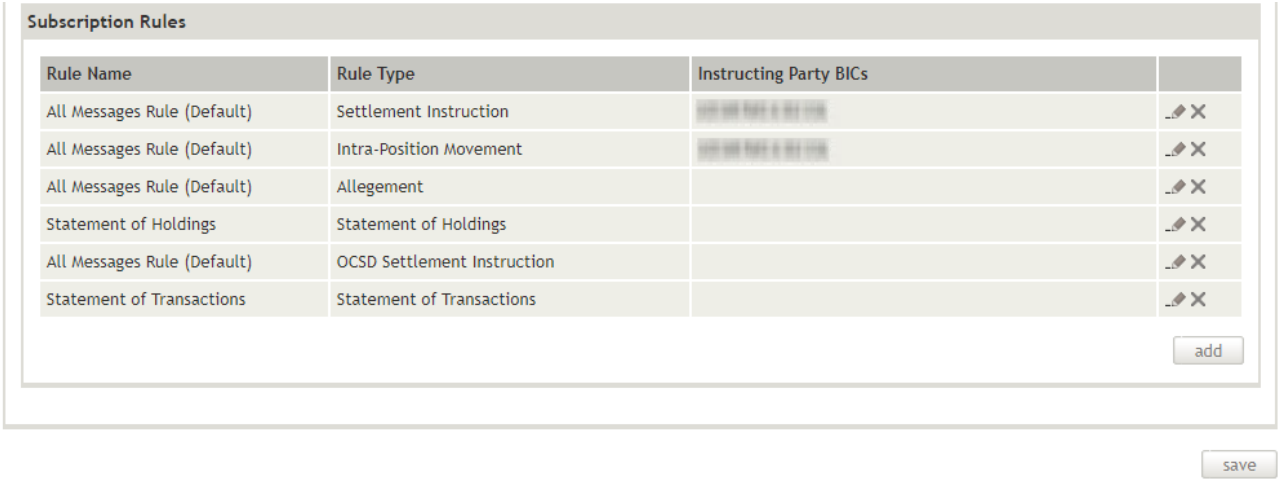


Figure 118: Subscription Rules - List (example: edit)

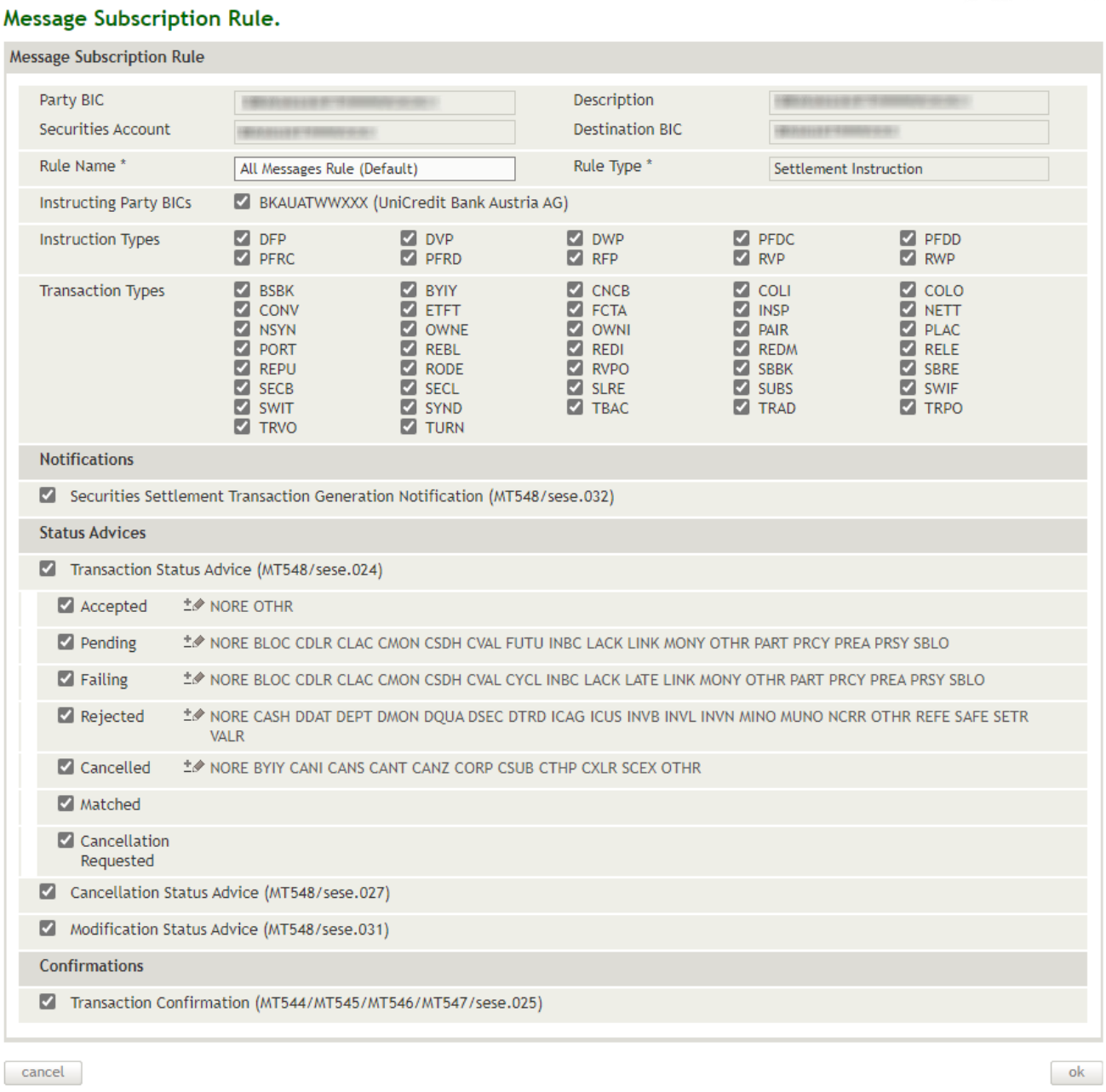


Figure 119: Message Subscription Rule (example: edit Settlement Instruction Rule)

How to Modify a Message Subscription Rule

Step by Step

1 In the menu bar, select *Administration* > *Message Subscriptions*.
The **Search Message Subscription** screen appears.
The system automatically inserts the appropriate predefined values into the fields:

— Party BIC (= inputting party)

— Securities Account (= all)

2 Enter the desired search criteria in the available fields or limit the selections in the fields completed by the system.

3 Click on the **search** button.
The search result list containing all message subscriptions matching your search criteria appears.

4 In the row of the record you want to modify, click on the **Edit** icon to open the **Edit** screen.

INFO	The system only displays the **Edit** icon if your user permissions allow you to modify data.

The **Edit Message Subscription** screen appears.

5 In the row of the record you want to change in the **Subscription Rules** list, click on the **Edit** icon to open the **Message Subscription Rule** screen.

6 Activate or deactivate the check boxes to modify the settings as required (for details on the parameters, please see the Field Descriptions).

TIP	For the transaction status advices **Accepted**, **Pending**, **Failing**, **Rejected** and **Cancelled** in subscription rules of the type **Settlement Instruction** you may specify on a reason code level whether to receive or not to receive message.

7 Click **ok** to confirm your changes.
The **Edit Message Subscription** screen appears again.

8 Click **save** to save your changes.
At the top of the screen the system displays a confirmation as soon as your modifications have been saved.

10.2.2 Deleting a Message Subscription Rule

If you want to delete a message subscription rule, you need to start in the **Edit Message Subscription** screen.

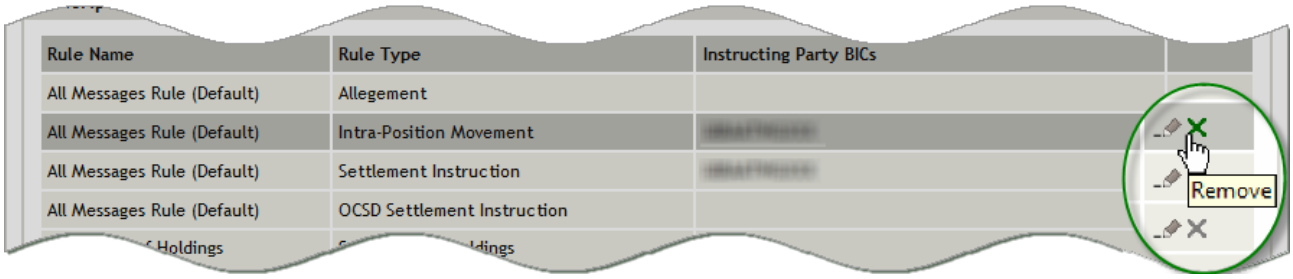


Figure 120: Subscription Rules - List (example: delete)

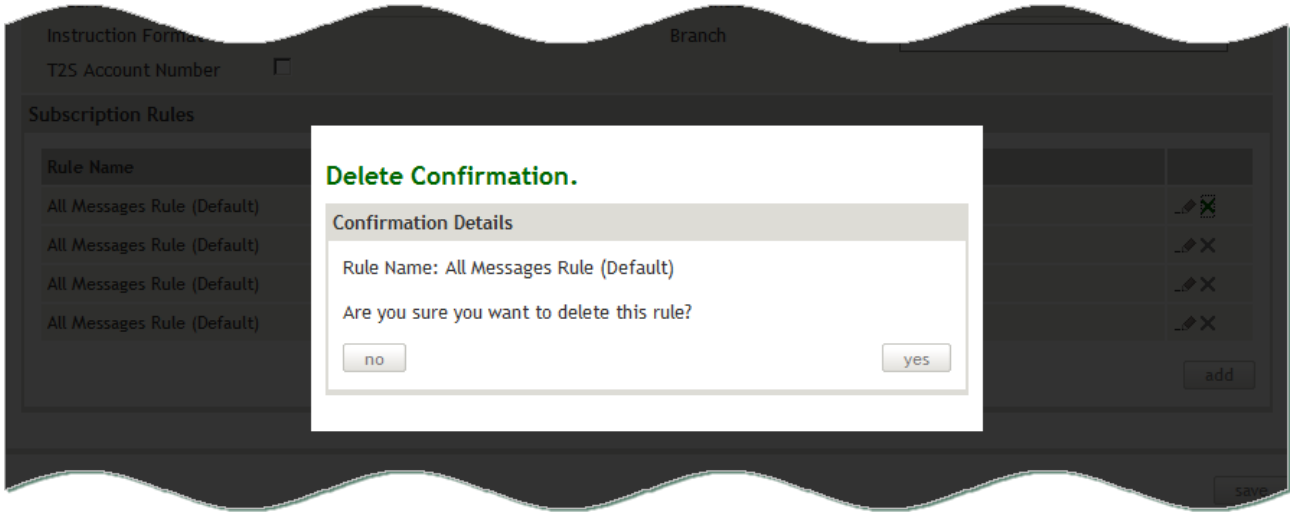


Figure 121: Confirm deletion (Message Subscription Rule)

How to Delete a Message Subscription Rule

Step by Step

1 In the menu bar, select *Administration* > *Message Subscriptions*.
The **Search Message Subscription** screen appears.
The system automatically inserts the appropriate predefined values into the fields:

— Party BIC (= inputting party)

— Securities Account (= all)

2 Enter the desired search criteria in the available fields or limit the selections in the fields completed by the system.

3 Click on the **search** button.
The search result list containing all message subscriptions matching your search criteria appears.

4 In the row of the record you want to modify, click on the **Edit** icon to open the **Edit** screen.

INFO	The system only displays the **Edit** icon if your user permissions allow you to modify data.

The **Edit Message Subscription** screen appears.

5 In the row of the record you want to delete in the **Subscription Rules** list, click on the **X** icon.

6 Click **yes** in the pop-up dialog.
The message subscription rule is deleted.
The **Edit Message Subscription** screen appears again.

7 Click **save** to save your changes.
At the top of the screen the system displays a confirmation as soon as your modifications have been saved.

10.2.3 Adding a New Message Subscription Rule

You can create six types of message subscription rules (rule type):

- Settlement Instruction (fig. 130)
- Intra-Position Management (fig.132)
- Allegement (fig. 133)
- OCSD Settlement Instruction (fig. 134)
- Statement of Holdings (fig. 135)
- Statement of Transactions (fig. 136)

Message Subscription Rule.

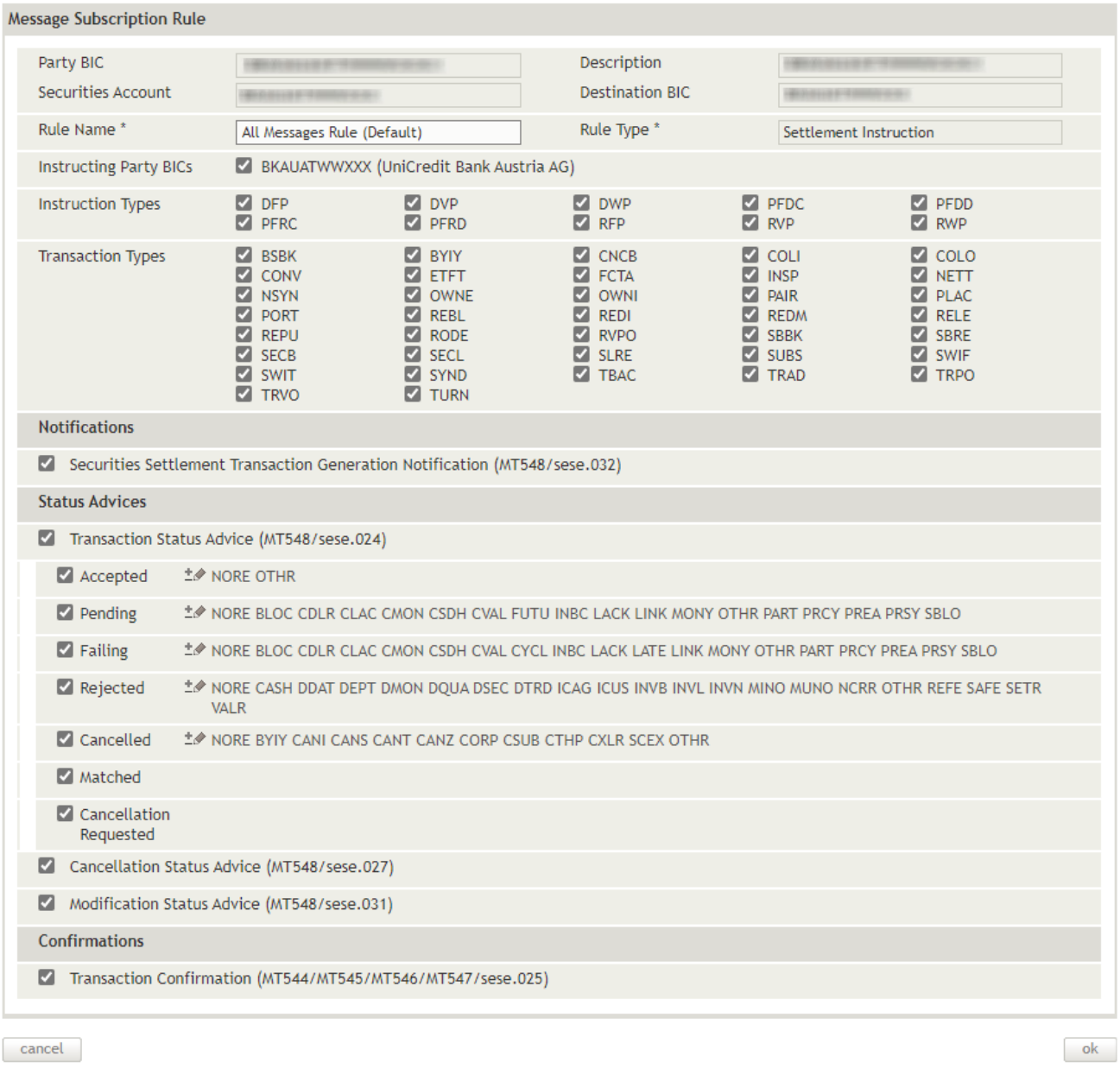


Figure 122: Message Subscription Rule - Settlement Instruction

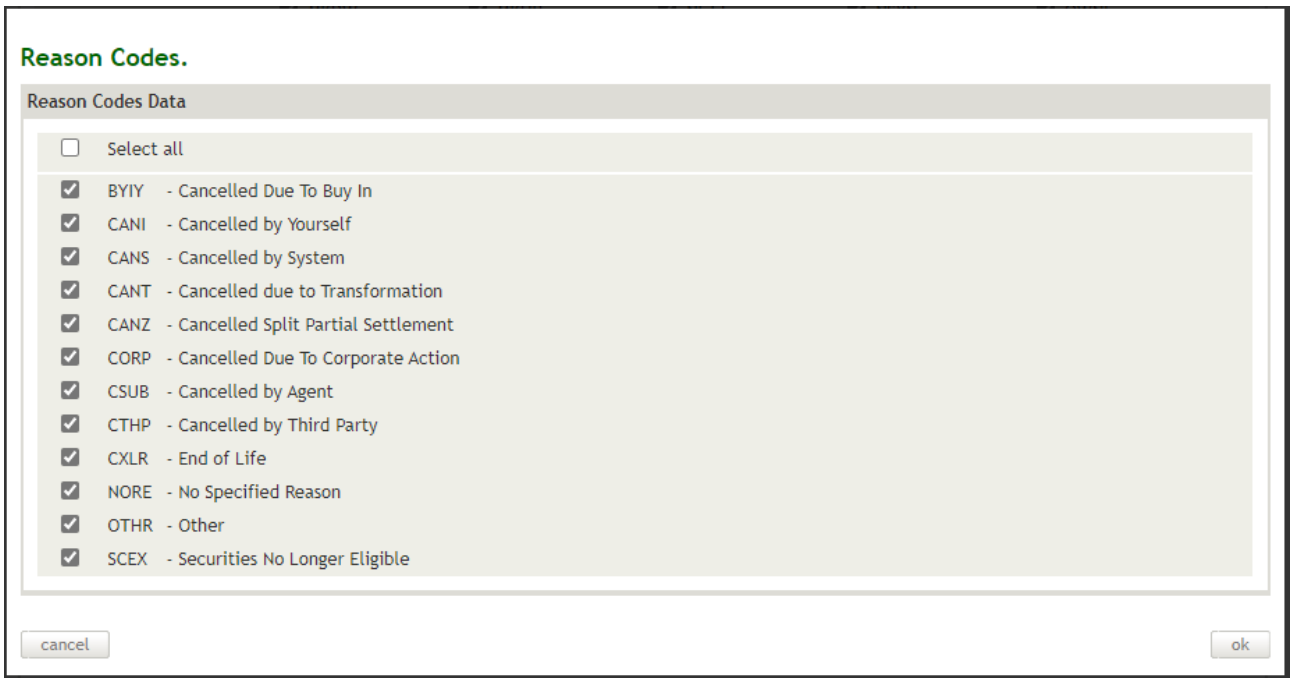


Figure 123: Transaction Status Advices - Reason Codes (example: cancelled)

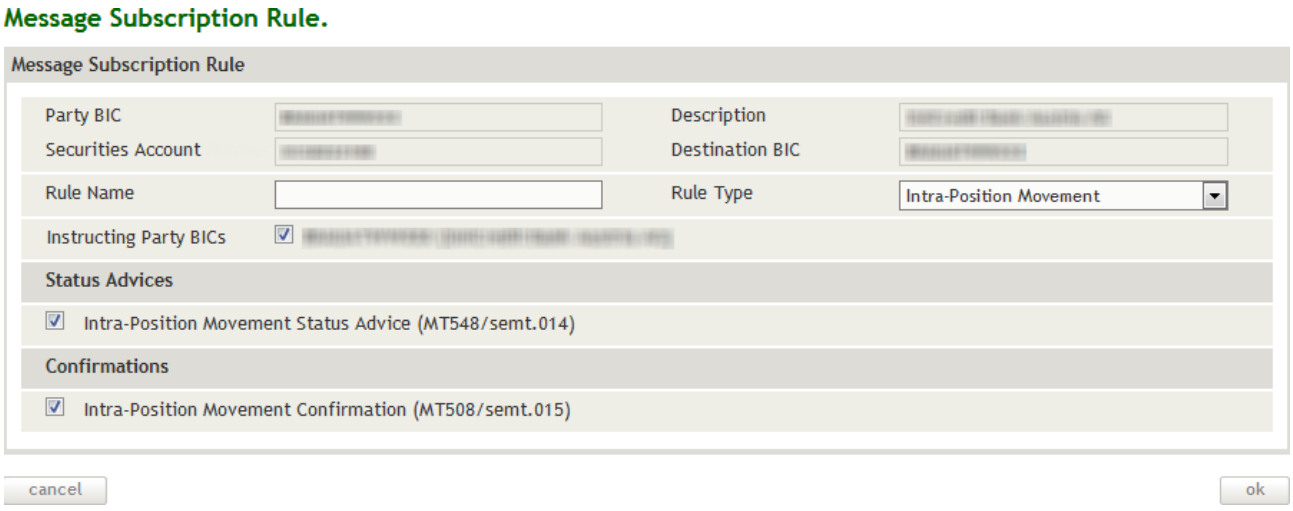


Figure 124: Message Subscription Rule - Intra Position Management

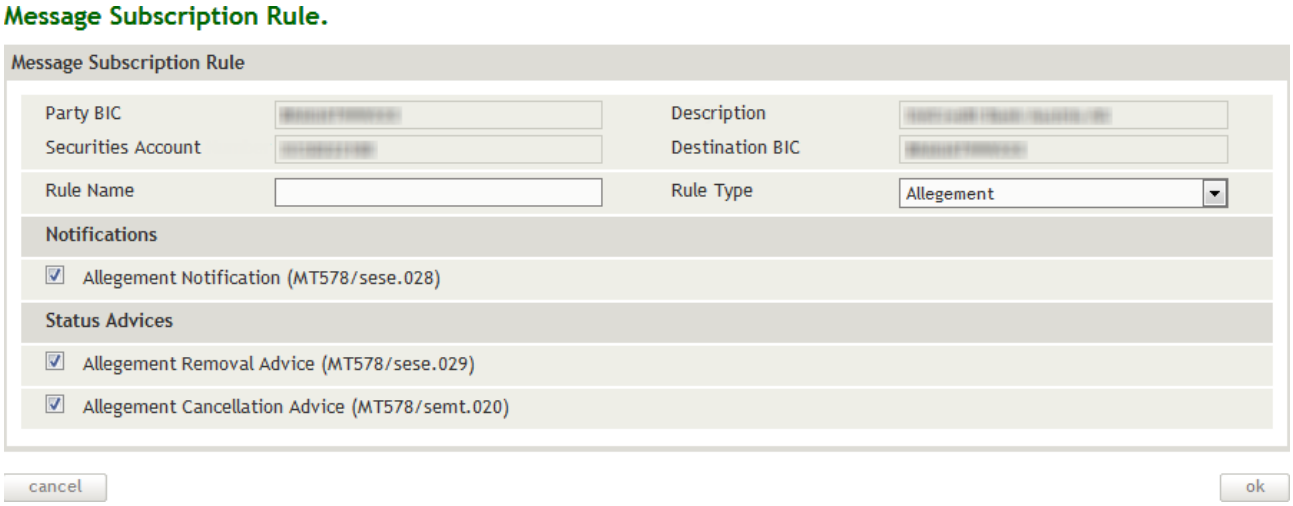


Figure 125: Message Subscription Rule - Allegement

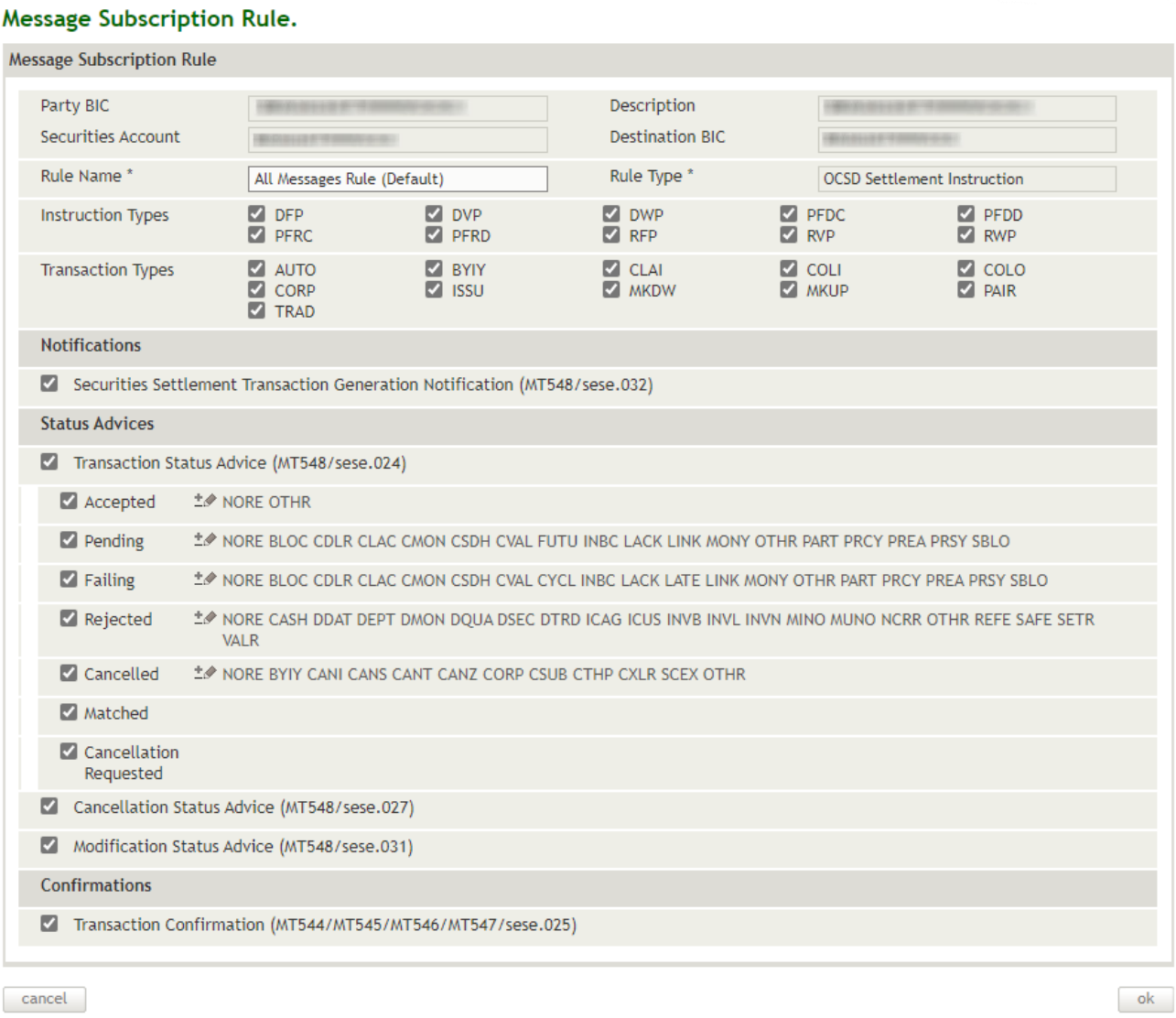


Figure 126: Message Subscription Rule - OCSD Settlement Instruction

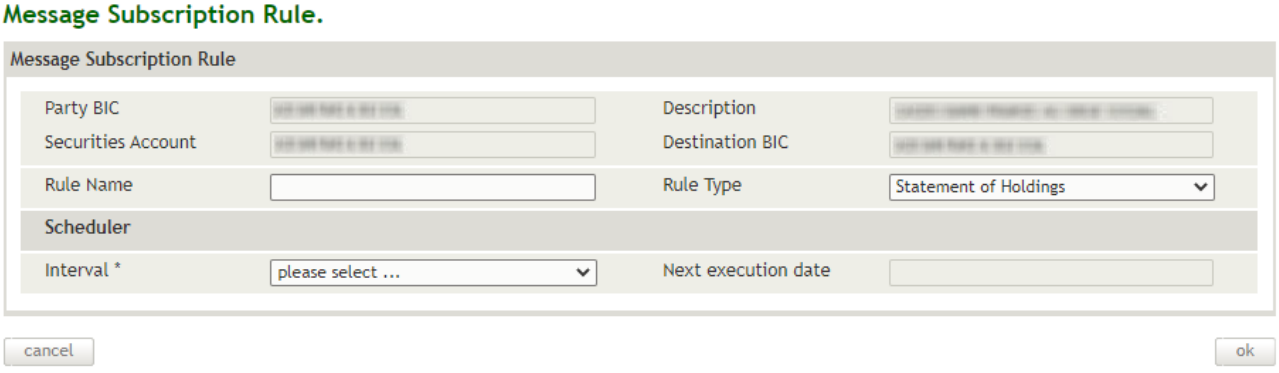


Figure 127: Message Subscription Rule - Statement of Holdings

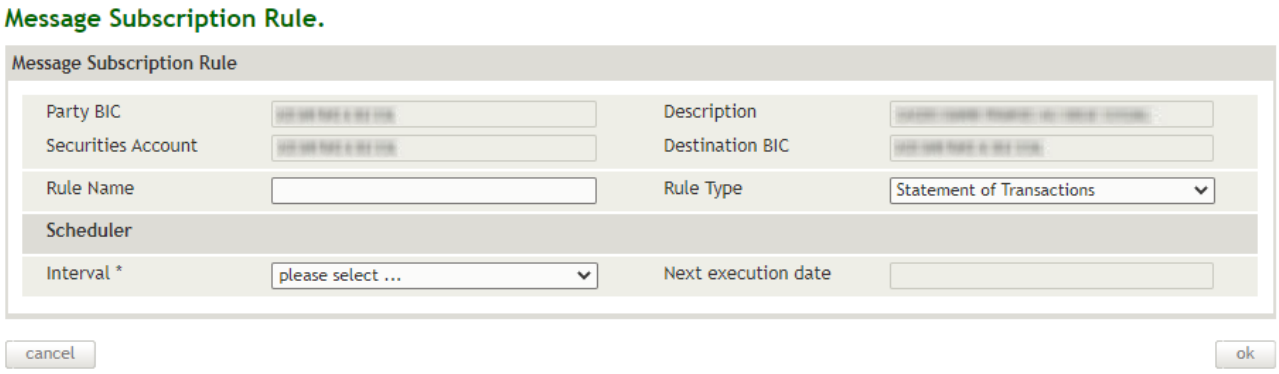


Figure 128: Message Subscription Rule - Statement of Transactions

How to Add a New Message Subscription Rule

Step by Step

1 In the menu bar, select *Administration* > *Message Subscriptions*.
The **Search Message Subscription** screen appears.
The system automatically inserts the appropriate predefined values into the fields:

— Party BIC (= inputting party)

— Securities Account (= all)

2 Enter the desired search criteria in the available fields or limit the selections in the fields completed by the system.

3 Click on the **search** button.
The search result list containing all message subscriptions matching your search criteria appears.

4 In the row of the record you want to modify, click on the **Edit** icon to open the **Edit** screen.

INFO	The system only displays the **Edit** icon if your user permissions allow you to modify data.

5 Click on the **add** button at the bottom of the **Subscription Rules** list.
The **Message Subscription Rule** screen appears.

6 In the field **Rule Name**, enter the designation of the new subscription rule.

7 In the field **Rule Type**, select the type of subscription rule you want to add.
The system displays the additional parameters available for the selected type of subscription rule.

8 Activate or deactivate the check boxes of the parameters as they shall apply to the new subscription rule (for details on the parameters, please see the Field Descriptions).

TIP	For the transaction status advices **Accepted**, **Pending**, **Failing, Rejected** and **Cancelled** in subscription rules of the type **Settlement Instruction** you may specify on a reason code level whether to receive or not to receive message. Activate or deactivate the check boxes of the parameters as they shall apply to the new subscription rule.

9 Click **ok** to confirm your changes.
The **Edit Message Subscription** screen appears again.

10 Click **save** to save your changes.
At the top of the screen the system displays a confirmation as soon as your modifications have been saved.

10.2.4 Field Descriptions (Message Subscription Rule)

The description of the fields in the **Message Subscription Rule** screen is sectioned in four parts, i.e. for the four different types (Rule Type) of subscription rules:

— Settlement Instruction (Rule Type) - fig. 130
— Intra-Position Movement (Rule Type) - fig. 132
— Allegement (Rule Type) - fig. 133
— OCSD Settlement Instruction (Rule Type) - fig. 134
— Statement of Holdings - fig. 135

10.2.4.1 Statement of Transactions

Field	Content (by system)	Entry (by user)	Input Assist.	Length
Interval	Input request 'please select ...'	Selection from Ad hoc or Daily	Selection	-
Next execution date	Date of next execution	-	-	-

NOTE	The following six rule types (Daily Penalty Report, Modified Penalty Report and Monthly Penalty Report) relate to the party not the Securites Account.

10.2.4.2 Daily Penalty Report (Intra/Cross)

Field	Content (by system)	Entry (by user)	Input Assist.	Length
Interval	Input request 'please select ...'	Selection from Daily or 'please select'	Selection	-

Field	Content (by system)	Entry (by user)	Input Assist.	Length
Next execution date	Date of next execution	-	-	-

10.2.4.3 Modified Penalty Report (Intra/Cross)

Field	Content (by system)	Entry (by user)	Input Assist.	Length
Interval	Input request 'please select ...'	Selection from Daily or 'please select'	Selection	-
Next execution date	Date of next execution	-	-	-

10.2.4.4 Monthly Penalty Report (Intra/Cross)

Field	Content (by system)	Entry (by user)	Input Assist.	Length
Interval	Input request 'please select ...'	Selection from Monthly or 'please select'	Selection	-
Next execution date	Date of next execution	-	-	-

10.2.4.5 Daily Penalty Report (External)

Field	Content (by system)	Entry (by user)	Input Assist.	Length
Interval	Input request 'please select ...'	Selection from Daily or 'please select'	Selection	-
Next execution date	Date of next execution	-	-	-

10.2.4.6 Modified Penalty Report (External)

Field	Content (by system)	Entry (by user)	Input Assist.	Length
Interval	Input request 'please select ...'	Selection from Daily or 'please select'	Selection	-
Next execution date	Date of next execution	-	-	-

— Fehler! Verweisquelle konnte nicht gefunden werden. - fig. 135

The following table describes the two uppermost fields of the screen, which are identical to handle for all types (rule type) of subscription rules:

Field	Content (by system)	Entry (by user)	Input Assist.	Length
Party BIC	BIC of the securities account holder	-	-	-

Field	Content (by system)	Entry (by user)	Input Assist.	Length
[Party BIC] **Description**	The designation of the securities account holder	-	-	-
Securities Account	Securities account defined in the selected message subscription.	-	-	-
Destination BIC	BIC of the party specified as message receiver in the selected message subscription	-	-	-
Rule Name	-	Unique designation of the subscription rule	-	30 alphanum.
Rule Type	Input request 'please select ...'	Selection from Settlement Instruction, Intra-Position Movement, Allegement, OCSD Settlement Instruction, Statement of Holdings or Statement of Transaction	Selection	-

10.2.4.7 Settlement Instruction (Rule Type)

Field		An Active (Ticked) Check Box Means ☑
Instructing Party BICs		The subscription rule will apply to the selected BIC(s) of the authorised parties of the holder of the securities account
Instruction Types	**DFP**	Messages from **DFP** settlement instructions will be received.
	DVP	Messages from **DVP** settlement instructions will be received.
	DWP	Messages from **DWP** settlement instructions will be are received.
	PFDC	Messages from **PFD Credit** settlement instructions will be received.
	PFDD	Messages from **PFD Credit** settlement instructions will be received.
	PFRC	Messages from **PFR Credit** settlement instructions will be received.
	PFRD	Messages from **PFR Debit** settlement instructions will be received.
	RFP	Messages from **RFP** settlement instructions will be received.
	RVP	Messages from **RVP** settlement instructions will be received.
	RWP	Messages from **RWP** settlement instructions will be received.
Transaction Types	**BSBK**	Settlement messages from buy sell back transactions will be received.

Field		An Active (Ticked) Check Box Means ☑
	BYIY	Settlement messages from buy in transactions will be received.
	CNCB	Settlement messages from central bank collateral operations will be received.
	COLI	Settlement messages from collateral transactions, from the point of view of the collateral taker or its agent will be received.
	COLO	Settlement messages from collateral transaction, from the point of view of the collateral giver or its agent will be received.
	CONV	Settlement messages from conversions will be received.
	ETFT	Settlement messages from exchange trade funds will be received.
	FCTA	Settlement messages from factor updates will be received.
	INSP	Settlement messages from movements of shares into or out of a pooled account will be received.
	NETT	Settlement messages from netted transactions will be received.
	NSYN	Settlement messages from securities issues of medium and short-term papers with programme without syndication arrangement will be received.
	OWNE	Settlement messages from external own account transfers with multiple instructing parties will be received.
	OWNI	Settlement messages from internal own account transfers will be received.
	PAIR	Settlement messages from paired transactions will be received.
	PLAC	Settlement messages from placements of securities will be received.
	PORT	Settlement messages from portfolio moves and transfers will be received.
	REBL	Settlement messages from rebalancing of securities positions will be received.

Field		An Active (Ticked) Check Box Means ☑
	REDI	Settlement messages from withdrawals of specified amounts will be received.
	REDM	Settlement messages from redemptions will be received.
	RELE	Settlement messages from releases of a depositary receipt will be received.
	REPU	Settlement messages from repurchase agreement transactions will be received.
	RODE	Settlement messages from returns of deliveries without matching will be received.
	RVPO	Settlement messages from reverse repurchase agreement transactions will be received.
	SBBK	Settlement messages from sell buy back transactions will be received.
	SBRE	Settlement messages from borrowing reallocations will be received.
	SECB	Settlement messages from securities borrowing operations will be received.
	SECL	Settlement messages from securities lending operations will be received.
	SLRE	Settlement messages from lending reallocations will be received.
	SUBS	Settlement messages from subscriptions to funds will be received.
	SWIF	Settlement messages where the investment changes from one sub-fund to another sub-fund (redemption-leg) will be received.
	SWIT	Settlement messages where the investment changes from one sub-fund to another sub-fund (subscription-leg) will be received.
	SYND	Settlement messages from syndicates of underwriters will be received.
	TBAC	Settlement messages from TBA closing trades will be received.
	TRAD	Settlement messages from standard settlement instructions will be received.
	TRPO	Settlement messages from triparty repurchase agreements will be received.
	TRVO	Settlement messages from triparty reverse repurchase agreements will be received.
	TURN	Settlement messages from turnarounds will be received.

Notifications	
Securities Settlement Transaction Generation Notification (MT548/sese.032)	Status messages for automatically generated auto-collateralisation settlement instructions will be received.

Field	An Active (Ticked) Check Box Means ☑
Status Advices	
Transaction Status Advice (MT548/ sese.024)	TIP If you wish, you can reduce the reasons codes for which you want to receive messages, see Reason Codes.
Accepted	Messages for instructions with status **Accepted** will be received.
Pending	Messages for instructions with status **Pending** will be received.
Failing	Messages for instructions with status **Failing** will be received.
Rejected	Messages for instructions with status **Rejected** are received.
Cancelled	Messages for instructions with status **Cancelled** are received.
Matched	Messages for instructions with status **Matched** are received.
Cancellation Requested	Messages for instructions with status **Cancellation Requested** are received.
Reason Codes	
BLOC	If the reason code in an instruction is **Account Blocked**, the message will be received.
BYIY	If the reason code in an instruction is **Cancelled Due To Buy** In, the message will be received.
CANI	If the reason code in an instruction is **Cancelled By Yourself**, the message will be received.
CANS	If the reason code in an instruction is **Cancelled By System**, the message will be received.
CANT	If the reason code in an instruction is **Cancelled due to Transformation**, the message will be received.
CANZ	If the reason code in an instruction is **Cancelled Split Partial Settlement**, the message will be received.
CASH	If the reason code in an instruction is **Cash Account Rejection**, the message will be received.
CDLR	If the reason code in an instruction is **Conditional Delivery Awaiting Release**, the message will be received.
CLAC	If the reason code in an instruction is **Insufficient Securities in Counterparty Account**, the message will be received.
CMON	If the reason code in an instruction is **Insufficient Money in Counterparty Account**, the message will be received.
CORP	If the reason code in an instruction is **Cancelled Due To Corporate Action**, the message will be received.

Field	An Active (Ticked) Check Box Means ☑
CSDH	If the reason code in an instruction is **CSD Hold**, the message will be received.
CSUB	If the reason code in an instruction is **Cancelled by Agent**, the message will be received.
CTHP	If the reason code in an instruction is **Cancelled By Third Party**, the message will be received.
CVAL	If the reason code in an instruction is **CSD Validation**, the message will be received.
CXLR	If the reason code in an instruction is **End of Life**, the message will be received.
CYCL	If the reason code in an instruction is **Awaiting next Settlement Cycle**, the message will be received.
DDAT	If the reason code in an instruction is **Disagreement Settlement Date**, the message will be received.
DEPT	If the reason code in an instruction is **Disagreement Place of Settlement**, the message will be received.
DMON	If the reason code in an instruction is **Disagreement Settlement Amount**, the message will be received.
DQVA	If the reason code in an instruction is **Disagreement Quantity**, the message will be received.
DSEC	If the reason code in an instruction is **Unrecognised or Invalid Financial Instrument Identification**, the message will be received.
DTRD	If the reason code in an instruction is **Disagreement Trade Date**, the message will be received.
FUTU	If the reason code in an instruction is **Awaiting Settlement Date**, the message will be received.
ICAG	If the reason code in an instruction is **Disagreement Delivering/Receiving Agent,** the message will be received.
ICUS	If the reason code in an instruction is **Receiving or Delivering Custodian Rejection**, the message will be received.
INBC	If the reason code in an instruction is **Incomplete Number Count**, the message will be received.
INVB	If the reason code in an instruction is **Invalid Balance**, the message will be received.
INVL	If the reason code in an instruction is **Invalid Link**, the message will be received.
INVN	If the reason code in an instruction is **Invalid Lot Number**, the message will be received.
LACK	If the reason code in an instruction is **Lack of Securities in Account**, the message will be received.
LATE	If the reason code in an instruction is **Market Deadline Missed**, the message will be received.

Field	An Active (Ticked) Check Box Means ☑
LINK	If the reason code in an instruction is **Pending Linked Instruction**, the message will be received.
MINO	If the reason code in an instruction is **Quantity Instructed is Lower than the Eligible Amount**, the message will be received.
MONY	If the reason code in an instruction is **Insufficient Money in Account**, the message will be received.
MUNO	If the reason code in an instruction is **Quantity Instructed is not an Eligible Multiple**, the message will be received.
NCRR	If the reason code in an instruction is **Disagreement Settlement Amount Currency**, the message will be received.
NORE	If the reason code in an instruction is **No Specified Reason**, the message will be received.
OTHR	If the reason code in an instruction is **Other**, the message will be received.
PART	If the reason code in an instruction is **Trade Settles in Partials**, the message will be received.
PRCY	If the reason code in an instruction is **Counterparty Instruction On Hold**, the message will be received.
PREA	If the reason code in an instruction is **Your Instruction is On Hold**, the message will be received.
PRSY	If the reason code in an instruction is **On Hold By System**, the message will be received.
REFE	If the reason code in an instruction is **Duplicate Instruction**, the message will be received.
SAFE	If the reason code in an instruction is **Disagreement Buyer/Seller Account**, the message will be received.
SBLO	If the reason code in an instruction is **Securities Blocked**, the message will be received.
SCEX	If the reason code in an instruction is **Securities No Longer Eligible**, the message will be received.
SETR	If the reason code in an instruction is **Unrecognised or Invalid Settlement Transaction Type**, the message will be received.
VALR	If the reason code in an instruction is **Validation Rule Rejection**, the message will be received.
Cancellation Status Advice (MT548/sese.027)	Status messages from cancellation instructions will be received.
Modification Status Advice (MT548/sese.031)	Status messages from modification instructions will be received.

Confirmations

Transaction Confirmation (MT544/MT545/MT546/ MT547/sese.025)	Messages from settlement confirmations will be received.

10.2.4.8 Intra-Position Movement (Rule Type)

Field	An Active (Ticked) Check Box Means ☑
Instructing Party BICs	The subscription rule will apply to the selected BIC(s) of the authorised parties of the holder of the securities account
Status Advices	
Intra-Position Movement Status Advice (MT548/ semt.014)	Status messages from intra-position movements are received.
Confirmations	
Intra-Position Movement Confirmation (MT508/ semt.015)	Confirmations from intra-position movements are received.

10.2.4.9 Allegement (Rule Type)

Field	An Active (Ticked) Check Box Means ☑
Notifications	
Allegement Notification (MT578/sese.028)	Settlement messages from allegement notifications will be received.
Status Advices	
Allegement Removal Advice (MT578/sese.029)	The settlement messages sent to remove allegements after the processing of counter instructions to these allegements has been completed will be received.
Allegement Cancellation Advice (MT578/semt-020)	Cancellations of allegement messages automatically generated by the system after cancellation of the associated settlement message will be received.

10.2.4.10 OCSD Settlement Instruction (Rule Type)

Field		An Active (Ticked) Check Box Means ☑
Instruction Types	**DFP**	Messages from **DFP** settlement instructions will be received.
	DVP	Messages from **DVP** settlement instructions will be received.
	DWP	Messages from **DWP** settlement instructions will be are received.
	PFDC	Messages from **PFD Credit** settlement instructions will be received.

Field		An Active (Ticked) Check Box Means ☑
	PFDD	Messages from **PFD Credit** settlement instructions will be received.
	PFRC	Messages from **PFR Credit** settlement instructions will be received.
	PFRD	Messages from **PFR Debit** settlement instructions will be received.
	RFP	Messages from **RFP** settlement instructions will be received.
	RVP	Messages from **RVP** settlement instructions will be received.
	RWP	Messages from **RWP** settlement instructions will be received.
Transaction Types	AUTO	Reimbursement settlement messages for securities already used as collateral, for which there was an intra-day restriction (= block) during that day, will be received.
	BYIY	Settlement messages from buy ins will be received.
	CLAI	Settlement messages from market claims will be received.
	COLI	Settlement messages from collateral instructions (credit provider) will be received.
	COLO	Settlement messages from collateral instructions (credit provider) will be received.
	CORP	Settlement messages from corporate actions will be received.
	ISSU	Settlement messages from securities issuances will be received.
	MKDW	Settlement messages from decreases of global certificates will be received.
	MKUP	Settlement messages from increases of global certificates will be received.
	PAIR	Settlement messages from paired transactions will be received.
	TRAD	Settlement messages from standard settlement instructions will be received.

Notifications

Securities Settlement Transaction Generation Notification (MT548/sese.032)	Settlement messages from securities settlement transaction generation notifications will be received.

Field	An Active (Ticked) Check Box Means ☑

Status Advices

Transaction Status Advice (MT548/ sese.024)	TIP	If you wish, you can reduce the reasons codes for which you want to receive messages, see Reason Codes (rule type Settlement Instruction).
	Accepted	Messages for instructions with status **Accepted** will be received.
	Pending	Messages for instructions with status **Pending** will be received.
	Failing	Messages for instructions with status **Failing** will be received.
	Rejected	Messages for instructions with status **Rejected** are received.
	Cancelled	Messages for instructions with status **Cancelled** are received.
	Matched	Messages for instructions with status **Matched** are received.
	Cancellation Requested	Messages for instructions with status **Cancellation Requested** are received.
Cancellation Status Advice (MT548/sese.027)		Status messages from cancellation instructions will be received.
Modification Status Advice (MT548/sese.031)		Status messages from modification instructions will be received.

Confirmations

Transaction Confirmation (MT544/MT545/MT546/ MT547/sese.025)	Messages from settlement confirmations will be received.

10.2.4.11 Statement of Holdings

Field	Content (by system)	Entry (by user)	Input Assist.	Length
Interval	Input request 'please select ...'	Selection from Daily, Weekly or Monthly	Selection	-
Next execution date	Date of next execution	-	-	-

10.2.4.12 Statement of Transactions

Field	Content (by system)	Entry (by user)	Input Assist.	Length
Interval	Input request 'please select ...'	Selection from Ad hoc or Daily	Selection	-
Next execution date	Date of next execution	-	-	-

NOTE The following six rule types (Daily Penalty Report, Modified Penalty Report and Monthly Penalty Report) relate to the party not the Securites Account.

10.2.4.13 Daily Penalty Report (Intra/Cross)

Field	Content (by system)	Entry (by user)	Input Assist.	Length
Interval	Input request 'please select ...'	Selection from Daily or 'please select'	Selection	-
Next execution date	Date of next execution	-	-	-

10.2.4.14 Modified Penalty Report (Intra/Cross)

Field	Content (by system)	Entry (by user)	Input Assist.	Length
Interval	Input request 'please select ...'	Selection from Daily or 'please select'	Selection	-
Next execution date	Date of next execution	-	-	-

10.2.4.15 Monthly Penalty Report (Intra/Cross)

Field	Content (by system)	Entry (by user)	Input Assist.	Length
Interval	Input request 'please select ...'	Selection from Monthly or 'please select'	Selection	-
Next execution date	Date of next execution	-	-	-

10.2.4.16 Daily Penalty Report (External)

Field	Content (by system)	Entry (by user)	Input Assist.	Length
Interval	Input request 'please select ...'	Selection from Daily or 'please select'	Selection	-

Field	Content (by system)	Entry (by user)	Input Assist.	Length
Next execution date	Date of next execution	-	-	-

10.2.4.17 Modified Penalty Report (External)

Field	Content (by system)	Entry (by user)	Input Assist.	Length
Interval	Input request 'please select ...'	Selection from Daily or ‘please select’	Selection	-
Next execution date	Date of next execution	-	-	-

10.2.4.18 Monthly Penalty Report (External)

Field	Content (by system)	Entry (by user)	Input Assist.	Length
Interval	Input request 'please select ...'	Selection from Monthly or ‘please select’	Selection	-
Next execution date	Date of next execution	-	-	-

11. Four Eyes Principle (Authorisation by Another User)

The Four Eyes Principle settings (Administration menu) for dual control authorisation by another user are defined for the securities accounts created for a party.

How to Open the Four Eyes Principle Screen

Step by Step

1 In the menu bar, select *Administration* > *Four Eyes Principle*.
The **Four Eyes Principle** screen appears.

Four Eyes Principle.

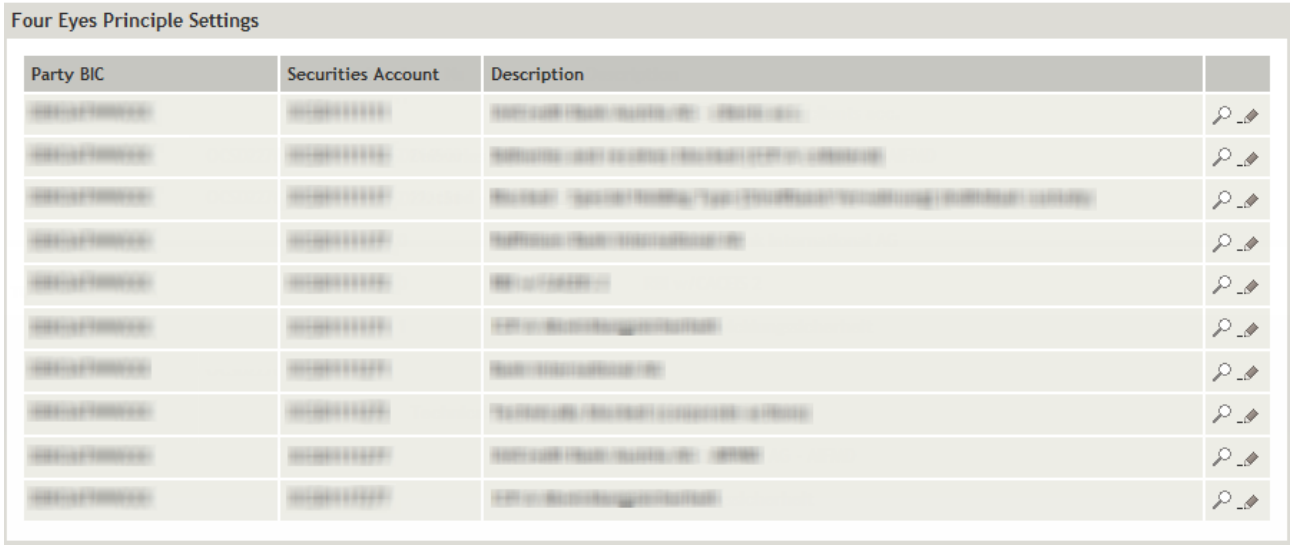


Figure 129: Four Eyes Principle

INFO A list entry is added automatically for each securities account created for a party.

11.1 Edit Four Eyes Principle

For each securities account you can specify the following settings for the authorisation according to the 4-eyes principle:

— Intra-Position Movement

— All instruction types individually (DVP, RVP, DFP, RFP, DWP, RWP, PFDD, PFDC, PFRD PFRC)

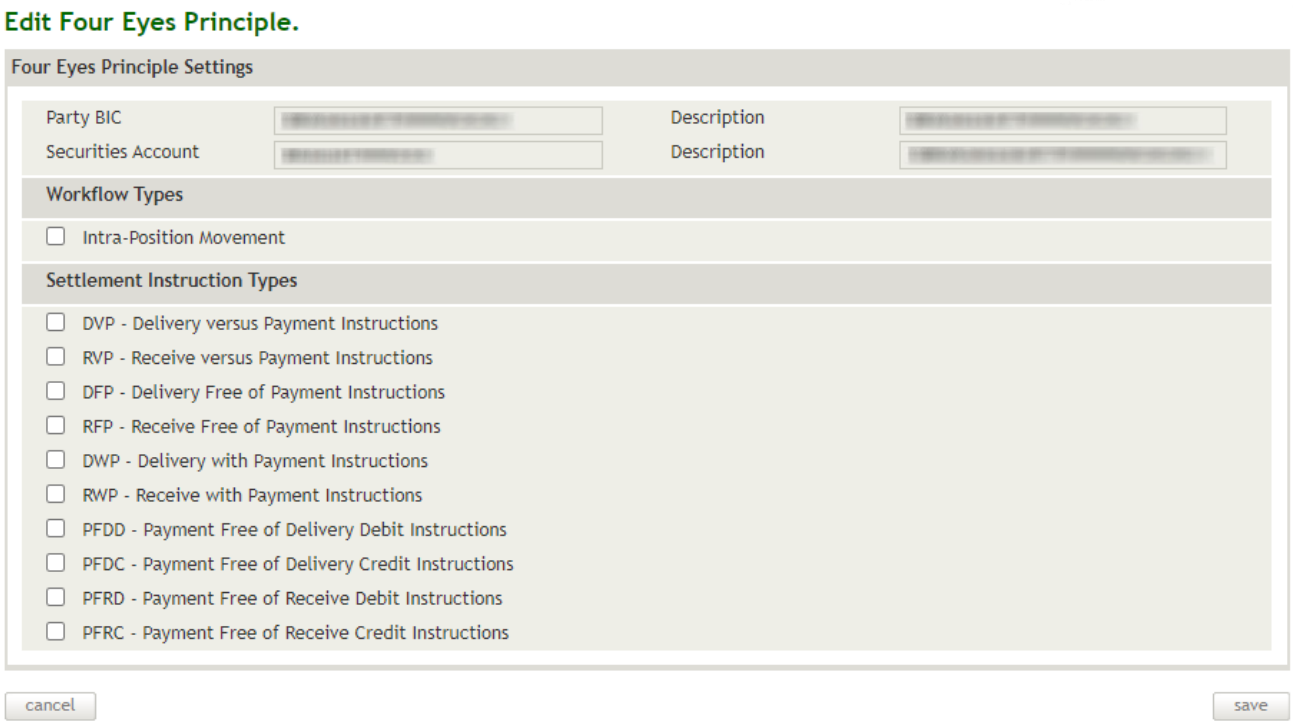


Figure 130: Edit four eyes principle

11.1.1 Specifying Four Eyes Principle Settings

The Four Eyes Principle settings help you to specify the types of records which need to be approved by a second person before they are submitted to the system for processing.

How to Specify the Settings for Authorisation According to the 4-Eyes Principle

Step by Step

1 In the menu bar, select *Administration* > *Four Eyes Principle*.
The **Four Eyes Principle** screen appears.

2 In the row of the record you want to modify, click on the **Edit** icon to open the **Edit** screen.

> INFO The system only displays the **Edit** icon if your user permissions allow you to modify data.

3 Activate the check boxes of all the types of settlement instructions which have to be released by a second person before they are submitted to the system.

4 Click **save** to save the settings for authorisation according to the 4-eyes principle for the securities account.

11.1.2 Field Descriptions (Edit Four Eyes Principle)

Field	Description
Securities Account	The complete securities account number, starting with OCSD
[Securities Account] Description	Designation of the securities account

Field	An Active (Ticked) Check Box Means ☑
Intra-Position Movement	Newly created, modified or cancelled intra position movements will be displayed in the **Tasks waiting for approval** section of the task box until they are approved by a second person.
DVP - Delivery versus Payment Instructions	Newly created, modified or cancelled instructions of the type **DVP** will be displayed in the **Tasks waiting for approval** section of the task box until they are approved by a second person.
RVP - Receive versus Payment Instructions	Newly created, modified or cancelled instructions of the type **RVP** will be displayed in the **Tasks waiting for approval** section of the task box until they are approved by a second person.
DFP - Delivery Free of Payment Instructions	Newly created, modified or cancelled instructions of the type **DFP** will be displayed in the **Tasks waiting for approval** section of the task box until they are approved by a second person.
RFP - Receive Free of Payment Instructions	Newly created, modified or cancelled instructions of the type **RFP** will be displayed in the **Tasks waiting for approval** section of the task box until they are approved by a second person.
DWP - Delivery with Payment Instructions	Newly created, modified or cancelled instructions of the type **DWP** will be displayed in the **Tasks waiting for approval** section of the task box until they are approved by a second person.
RWP - Receive With Payment Instructions	Newly created, modified or cancelled instructions of the type **RWP** will be displayed in the **Tasks waiting for approval** section of the task box until they are approved by a second person.

Field	An Active (Ticked) Check Box Means ☑
PFDD - Payment Free of Delivery Debit Instructions	Newly created, modified or cancelled instructions of the type **PFD Debit** will be displayed in the **Tasks waiting for approval** section of the task box until they are approved by a second person.
PFDC - Payment Free of Delivery Credit Instructions	Newly created, modified or cancelled instructions of the type **PFD Credit** will be displayed in the **Tasks waiting for approval** section of the task box until they are approved by a second person.
PFRD - Payment Free of Receive Debit Instructions	Newly created, modified or cancelled instructions of the type **PFR Debit** will be displayed in the **Tasks waiting for approval** section of the task box until they are approved by a second person.
PFRC - Payment Free of Receive Credit Instructions	Newly created, modified or cancelled instructions of the type **PFR Credit** will be displayed in the **Tasks waiting for approval** section of the task box until they are approved by a second person.

12. Penalty Report

The Penalty Report is an overview of all penalties which meet the defined search criteria. The customer will see penalties for his own securities accounts and securities accounts for which he is authorised.

How to Open the Penalty Report Screen

Step by Step

1 In the menu bar, select *Reporting* > Penalty Report.
The **Penalty Report** screen appears.

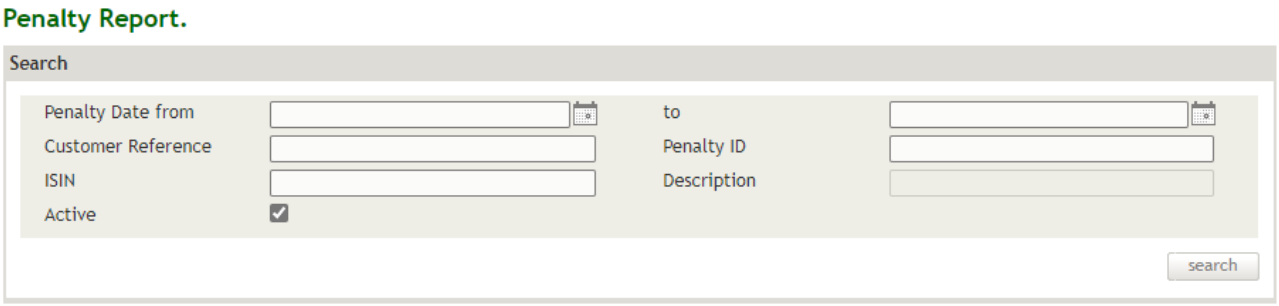
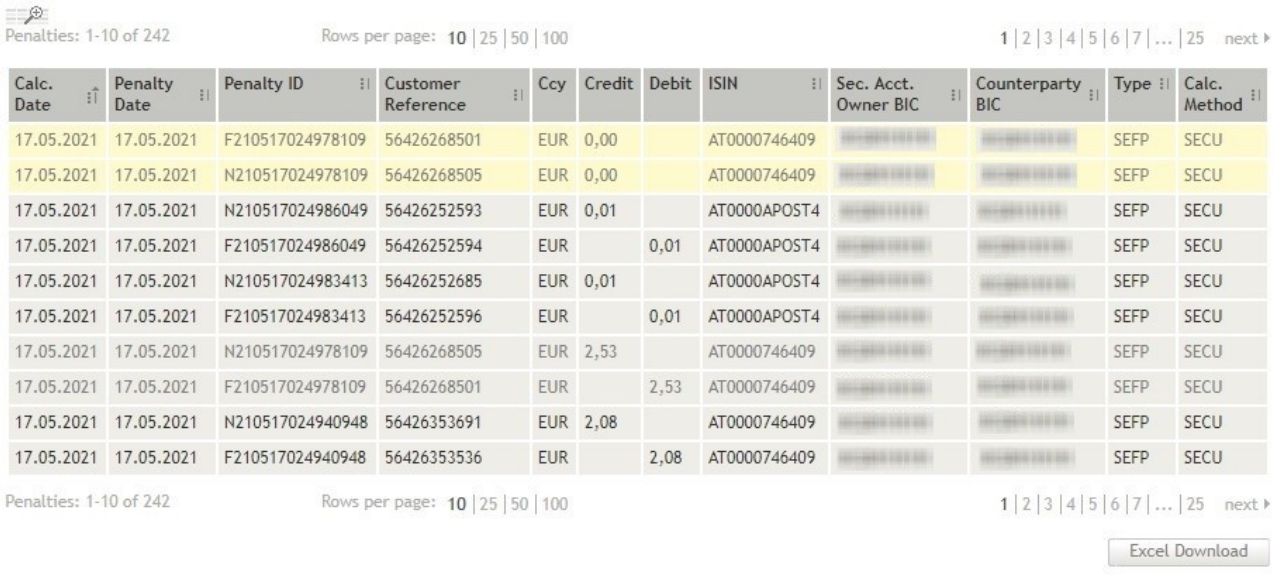


Figure 131: Search Penalty Report

NOTE Modified penalties are displayed in yellow, deactivated penalties in gray



Calc. Date	Penalty Date	Penalty ID	Customer Reference	Ccy	Credit	Debit	ISIN	Sec. Acct. Owner BIC	Counterparty BIC	Type	Calc. Method
17.05.2021	17.05.2021	F210517024978109	56426268501	EUR	0,00		AT0000746409			SEFP	SECU
17.05.2021	17.05.2021	N210517024978109	56426268505	EUR	0,00		AT0000746409			SEFP	SECU
17.05.2021	17.05.2021	N210517024986049	56426252593	EUR	0,01		AT0000APOST4			SEFP	SECU
17.05.2021	17.05.2021	F210517024986049	56426252594	EUR		0,01	AT0000APOST4			SEFP	SECU
17.05.2021	17.05.2021	N210517024983413	56426252685	EUR	0,01		AT0000APOST4			SEFP	SECU
17.05.2021	17.05.2021	F210517024983413	56426252596	EUR		0,01	AT0000APOST4			SEFP	SECU
17.05.2021	17.05.2021	N210517024978109	56426268505	EUR	2,53		AT0000746409			SEFP	SECU
17.05.2021	17.05.2021	F210517024978109	56426268501	EUR		2,53	AT0000746409			SEFP	SECU
17.05.2021	17.05.2021	N210517024940948	56426353691	EUR	2,08		AT0000746409			SEFP	SECU
17.05.2021	17.05.2021	F210517024940948	56426353536	EUR		2,08	AT0000746409			SEFP	SECU

13. Efficiency Rate Reports

There are two different types

— Monthly Volume Efficiency Rate Report and

— Monthly Value Efficiency Rate Report

It is an overview of the efficiency rate based on the volume and value of settlement instructions. The customer will see his efficiency rate for his own securities accounts and securities accounts for which he is authorised.

How to Open the Efficiency Rate Reports Screen

Step by Step

1 In the menu bar, select *Reporting* > Efficiency Rate Reports.
The **Monthly Volume Efficiency Rate Report** and **Monthly Value Efficiency Rate Report** search screen appears.

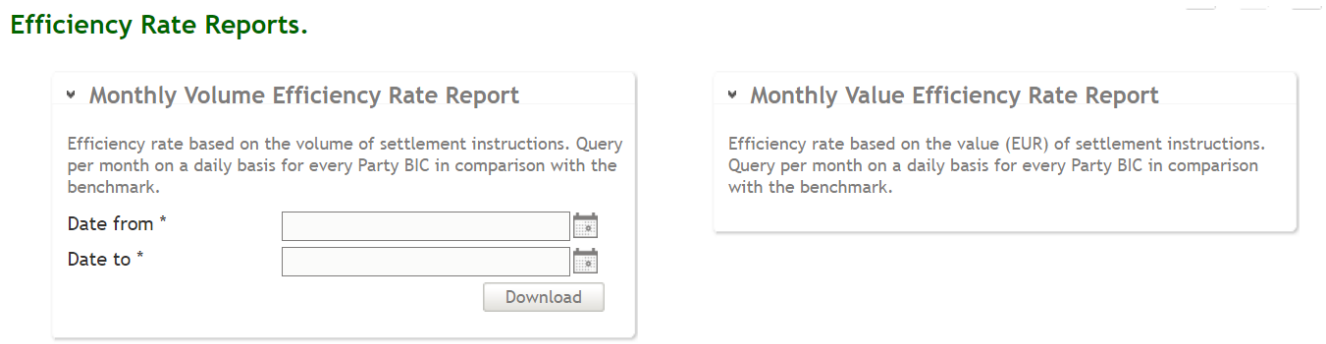


Figure 132: Search Penalty Report

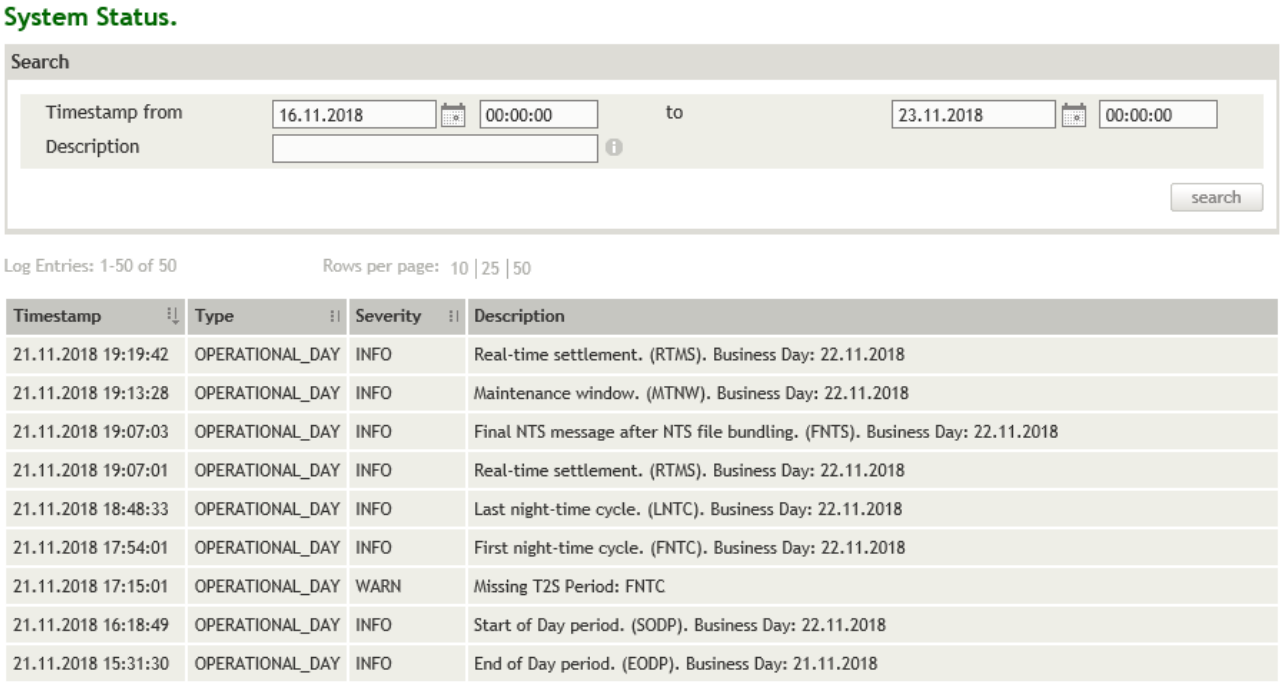
14. System Status

The System Status screen gives an overview about the T2S-phases, which are provided with a timestamp.

How to Open the System Status Screen

Step by Step

1 In the menu bar, select *Monitoring* > System Status.
The **System Status** screen appears.



Timestamp	Type	Severity	Description
21.11.2018 19:19:42	OPERATIONAL_DAY	INFO	Real-time settlement. (RTMS). Business Day: 22.11.2018
21.11.2018 19:13:28	OPERATIONAL_DAY	INFO	Maintenance window. (MTNW). Business Day: 22.11.2018
21.11.2018 19:07:03	OPERATIONAL_DAY	INFO	Final NTS message after NTS file bundling. (FNTS). Business Day: 22.11.2018
21.11.2018 19:07:01	OPERATIONAL_DAY	INFO	Real-time settlement. (RTMS). Business Day: 22.11.2018
21.11.2018 18:48:33	OPERATIONAL_DAY	INFO	Last night-time cycle. (LNTC). Business Day: 22.11.2018
21.11.2018 17:54:01	OPERATIONAL_DAY	INFO	First night-time cycle. (FNTC). Business Day: 22.11.2018
21.11.2018 17:15:01	OPERATIONAL_DAY	WARN	Missing T2S Period: FNTC
21.11.2018 16:18:49	OPERATIONAL_DAY	INFO	Start of Day period. (SODP). Business Day: 22.11.2018
21.11.2018 15:31:30	OPERATIONAL_DAY	INFO	End of Day period. (EODP). Business Day: 21.11.2018

15. User Roles and User Permissions

The following user roles with the associated user authorisations provide access to menu items and functionalities of the Settlement Client:

- Settlement Client FOP User
- Settlement Client FOP Releaser
- Settlement Client VP User
- Settlement Client VP Releaser
- Settlement Client Physical User
- Settlement Client Read only
- Settlement Client Administrator
- Settlement Client Billing

NOTE User permissions and user roles are assigned by each customer's system administrator outside of the Settlement Client.

15.1 Settlement Client FOP User

Main Menu / Home Screen	Menu Item	Permissions
Home Screen	Securities Accounts Overview	— Link to Create Settlement Instruction — Link to Search Settlement Instruction — Link to Create Intra-Position Movement — Link to Search Intra-Position Movement — Link to Search Allegement — Link to Search Physical Instructions — Link to Display Securities Positions — Link to Display Securities Posting Items — Link to Display Securities Account Details
	ISIN Search	Search for ISIN
	task box	— Tasks waiting for approval — Tasks waiting to process — instruction alerts
Settlement	Create Settlement Instruction	Create free of payment instructions — Receive Free of Payment (RFP) — Delivery Free of Payment (DFP)

Main Menu / Home Screen	Menu Item	Permissions
	Create Intra-Position Movement	Create settlement restrictions
	Search Settlement Instructions	Search free of payment instructions and instructions versus payment — Receive Free of Payment (RFP) — Delivery Free of Payment (DFP) — Receive versus Payment (RVP) — Delivery versus Payment (DVP) — Receive with Payment (RWP) — Delivery with Payment (DWP) — Payment Free of Receive Debit (PFRD) — Payment Free of Delivery Debit (PFDD) — Payment Free of Receive Credit (PFRC) — Payment Free of Delivery Credit (PFDC) Modify and cancel free of payment instructions — Receive Free of Payment (RFP) — Delivery Free of Payment (DFP)
	Search Intra-Position Movements	Search, modify and cancel settlement restrictions
	Search Physical Instructions	Search instructions for the physical withdrawal and deposit of securities
	Search Allegements	Search free of payment allegements and allegements versus payment and create free of payment counter instructions — Receive Free of Payment (RFP) — Delivery Free of Payment (DFP)
Holdings	Securities Positions	Search and view securities positions
	Securities Posting Items	Search and view securities bookings
	Statement of Holdings	Search and view securities positions
Administration	Message Subscription	Search and view message subscription settings
	four eyes principle	Search and view the settings for authorisation according to the four-eyes principle

15.2 Settlement Client FOP Releaser

NOTE The role **Settlement Client FOP Releaser** can be assigned as an add-on role to a regular user role to allow the user the additional permissions to authorise instructions according to the four-eyes principle.

Main Menu / Home Screen	Menu Item	Permissions
Home Screen	task box	Tasks waiting for approval
Settlement	Search Settlement Instructions	Approve or reject free of payment instructions — Receive Free of Payment (RFP) — Delivery Free of Payment (DFP)
	Search Intra-Position Movements	Approve or reject settlement restrictions

15.3 Settlement Client VP User

Main Menu / Home Screen	Menu Item	Permissions
Home Screen	Securities Accounts Overview	— Link to Create Settlement Instruction — Link to Search Settlement Instruction — Link to Create Intra-Position Movement — Link to Search Intra-Position Movement — Link to Search Allegement — Link to Search Physical Instructions — Link to Display Securities Positions — Link to Display Securities Posting Items — Link to Display Securities Account Details
	ISIN Search	Search for ISIN
	task box	— Tasks waiting for approval — Tasks waiting to process — instruction alerts

Main Menu / Home Screen	Menu Item	Permissions
Settlement	Create Settlement Instruction	Create instructions versus payment — Receive versus Payment (RVP) — Delivery versus Payment (DVP) — Receive with Payment (RWP) — Delivery with Payment (DWP) — Payment Free of Receive Debit (PFRD) — Payment Free of Receive Credit (PFRC) — Payment Free of Delivery Debit (PFDD) — Payment Free of Delivery Credit (PFDC) — Physical
	Create Intra-Position Movement	Create settlement restrictions
	Search Settlement Instructions	Search free of payment instructions and instructions versus payment — Receive Free of Payment (RFP) — Delivery Free of Payment (DFP) — Receive versus Payment (RVP) — Delivery versus Payment (DVP) — Receive with Payment (RWP) — Delivery with Payment (DWP) — Payment Free of Receive Debit (PFRD) — Payment Free of Delivery Debit (PFDD) — Payment Free of Receive Credit (PFRC) — Payment Free of Delivery Credit (PFDC) Modify and cancel instructions versus payment — Receive versus Payment (RVP) — Delivery versus Payment (DVP) — Receive with Payment (RWP) — Delivery with Payment (DWP) — Payment Free of Receive Debit (PFRD) — Payment Free of Delivery Debit (PFDD) — Payment Free of Receive Credit (PFRC) — Payment Free of Delivery Credit (PFDC)
	Search Intra-Position Movements	Search, modify and cancel settlement restrictions
	Search Physical Instructions	Create instructions for the physical withdrawal and deposit of securities

Main Menu / Home Screen	Menu Item	Permissions
	Search Allegements	Search free of payment allegements and allegements versus payment and create payment counter instructions versus payment — Receive versus Payment (RVP) — Delivery versus Payment (DVP) — Receive with Payment (RWP) — Delivery with Payment (DWP) — Payment Free of Receive Debit (PFRD) — Payment Free of Delivery Debit (PFDD) — Payment Free of Receive Credit (PFRC) — Payment Free of Delivery Credit (PFDC)
Holdings	Securities Positions	Search and view securities positions
	Securities Posting Items	Search and view securities bookings
	Cash Preview	Search and view cash movements
	Statement of Holdings	Search and view securities positions
Administration	Message Subscription	Search and view message subscription settings
	four eyes principle	Search and view the settings for authorisation according to the four-eyes principle

15.4 Settlement Client VP Releaser

NOTE The role **Settlement Client VP Releaser** can be assigned as an add-on role to a regular user role to allow the user the additional permissions to authorise instructions according to the four-eyes principle.

Main Menu / Home Screen	Menu Item	Permissions
Home Screen	task box	Tasks waiting for approval

Main Menu / Home Screen	Menu Item	Permissions
Settlement	Search Settlement Instructions	Approve or reject instructions versus payment — Receive versus Payment (RVP) — Delivery versus Payment (DVP) — Receive with Payment (RWP) — Delivery with Payment (DWP) — Payment Free of Receive Debit (PFRD) — Payment Free of Delivery Debit (PFDD) — Payment Free of Receive Credit (PFRC) — Payment Free of Delivery Credit (PFDC)
	Search Intra-Position Movements	Approve or reject settlement restrictions

15.5 Settlement Client Physical User

Main Menu / Home Screen	Menu Item	Permissions
Home Screen	Securities Accounts Overview	— Link to Search Physical — Link to Display Securities Positions — Link to Display Securities Posting Items
	ISIN Search	Search for ISIN
	task box	— Tasks waiting for approval — Tasks waiting to process — instruction alerts
Settlement	Search Physical Instructions	Search for the physical instructions
Holdings	Securities Positions	Search and view securities positions
	Securities Posting Items	Search and view securities bookings
	Statement of Holdings	Search and view securities positions
Administration	Message Subscription	Search and view message subscription settings
	four eyes principle	Search and view the settings for authorisation according to the four-eyes principle

15.6 Settlement Client Read only

Main Menu / Home Screen	Menu Item	Permissions
Home Screen	Securities Accounts Overview	— Link to Search Settlement Instruction — Link to Search Intra-Position Movement — Link to Search Allegements — Link to Search Physical Instructions — Link to Display Securities Positions — Link to Display Securities Posting Items — Link to Display Securities Account Details
	ISIN Search	Search for ISIN
	task box	— Tasks waiting for approval — Tasks waiting to process — instruction alerts
Settlement	Search Settlement Instructions	Search free of payment instructions and instructions versus payment — Receive Free of Payment (RFP) — Delivery Free of Payment (DFP) — Receive versus Payment (RVP) — Delivery versus Payment (DVP) — Receive with Payment (RWP) — Delivery with Payment (DWP) — Payment Free of Receive Debit (PFRD) — Payment Free of Delivery Debit (PFDD) — Payment Free of Receive Credit (PFRC) — Payment Free of Delivery Credit (PFDC)
	Search Intra-Position Movements	Search settlement restrictions
	Search Physical Instructions	Create instructions for the physical withdrawal and deposit of securities
	Search Allegements	Search free of payment allegements and allegements versus payment
Holdings	Securities Positions	Search and view securities positions
	Securities Posting Items	Search and view securities bookings
	Cash Preview	Search and view cash movements
	Statement of Holdings	Search and view securities positions

Main Menu / Home Screen	Menu Item	Permissions
Administration	Message Subscription	Search and view message subscription settings
	four eyes principle	Search and view the settings for authorisation according to the four-eyes principle

15.7 Settlement Client Administrator

Main Menu / Home Screen	Menu Item	Permissions
Home Screen	Securities Accounts Overview	Link to Display Securities Account Details
Administration	Message Subscription	Searching, viewing and editing message subscription settings
	four eyes principle	Searching, viewing and editing the settings for authorisation according to the four-eyes principle

15.8 Settlement Client Billing

Main Menu / Home Screen	Menu Item	Permissions
Billing	Billing	Customer Invoices

16. Glossary

List of Terms	Explanation
4-eyes principle	See Four Eyes Principle
Allegement	Received message about an instruction of a counterparty for which an own instruction must be created.
Button	Rectangular field in the screens of the Settlement client in the form of a push-button. Clicking on this field with the left mouse button triggers a certain program function.
Cash account	Account for the transfer or receipt of payments.
Detail view	Screen in the Settlement Client where data are displayed, but which does not allow these data to be modified by users.
Edit screen	Screen in the Settlement Client where users may edit and modify data. Whether a specific user may modify a specific record depends on the user's permissions and the processing status of the record.
Entry page	See Home screen
Field	Unit of the Settlement Client user interface which allows the entry or display of a specific information detail of a record. Different types of fields in the Settlement Client support the entry of different types of information, such as textual information, numbers and amounts, date entries, etc.
Four eyes principle	Two-level verification method for entering, modifying and deleting instructions and other records where the instructions entered in the Settlement Client must be approved by a person other than the one who has originally entered the data. Only after approval by the second user the information will be released for further processing.
Function link	Link in screens and detail views which triggers a specific action, similar to buttons, but in the form of a hyperlink.
History	See Instruction History or Status History
Home screen	Entry page (Home) of the Settlement Client; menu item **Home**.
Icon	Graphical display element without text of the Settlement Client user interface, which functions as a link that triggers a certain action.

List of Terms	Explanation
Input Assist.	The Settlement Client supports the input of data in frequently used fields. After the entry of one or several characters it displays a selection list of choices containing the characters entered. User need only choose the required entry from the list of choices, which completes the entry in the respective field.
Input screen	See Screen.
Instruction History	History of instructions, intra-position movements and allegements which chronologically lists all actions carried out for the respective record. The Instruction History is displayed as the tab before the last of settlement and physical instructions, intra-position movements and allegements in the summary screen and in the detail view.
Instruction type	Category of instructions of the same type, e.g. DVP - Deliver Versus Payment or RFP - Receive Free of Payment.
Intra-Position Movement	Instruction to flag securities positions for a specific purpose, e.g. as collateral.
Linkage	Relation between two or more instructions or intra-position movements determining their processing sequence, defining instructions or intra-position movements that have to be processed simultaneously (pool) or informing of specific details.
List	Unit of the Settlement Client user interface which displays data in the form of a table. For example, lists are filled with the appropriate data after a search was performed. The lists display data in a predefined layout.
Login	Registration of a user at a software application. For this purpose user data are entered, which identify the user within the system. A successful login is the prerequisite for working with the Settlement Client. Users log on in the Login Portal for IT Services of OeKB and OeKB CSD GmbH.
Logout	Exiting of a user from a software application. Users log out from the Settlement Client by closing the browser window. This ends the current user session with the system. A new login is possible in the Login Portal for IT Services of OeKB and OeKB CSD GmbH.
Menu	The main menu of the Settlement Client contains all available program functions in the form of menu items grouped in a clear hierarchical structure.
Physical instruction	Order for carrying out a deposit or withdrawal of physical securities at the OeKB CSD Vault. Also used for instructing increases or decreases of global certificates.
Record	A data set which together represents a certain information unit. An information unit may be e.g. a settlement or physical instruction, an intra-position movement, a message subscription or any other information unit which may be processed in the Settlement Client.
Save	Confirmation of entered data and submittal of the record to the system for processing.

List of Terms	Explanation
Screen	Unit of the Settlement Client user interface which contains several elements (fields) for entering or displaying details of information.
Search result list	List displayed after a search run was performed. Search result lists contain the results which meet the defined search criteria.
Second person authorisation	See four eyes principle
Services	IT Services of OeKB and services of OeKB CSD GmbH for the safekeeping, management and settlement of securities providing state-of-the-art, user-friendly real-time systems and professional support. The Login Portal of the OeKB CSD Services is where you can log on to the Settlement Client.
Settlement Client	System of the OeKB CSD GmbH for the settlement of securities instructions online.
Settlement instruction	Order for carrying out a securities transaction by one of the involved parties. Usually there is an instruction (own order) and a counterparty instruction (order of the other party involved).
Status History	History of instructions, intra-position movements and allegements which chronologically lists all status changes carried out for the respective record. The Status History is displayed as the last tab of settlement and physical instructions, intra-position movements and allegements in the summary screen and in the detail view.
Step	One of the tabs of the **Create Settlement Instruction** screen containing fields for inputting logically grouped instruction data.
Summary screen	Complete display of a newly created instruction or intra-position movement including the Instruction History and Status History.
Task box	Element on the Home screen listing instructions and intra-position movements waiting for approval and open instructions and intra-position movements, as well as instructions and intra-position movements with status Pending or Failing.
Tooltip	Pop-up text providing helpful information or explaining a certain screen element. A tooltip is displayed when you hover the mouse pointer over e.g. a button or any other screen element for about 2 seconds.
Welcome page	See Home screen

17. Index

*

* symbol 18

<

< remove, button 22

4

4-eyes principle 35, 255

A

A icon 24

abort, button 20

Accepted (field)
  Message Subscription Rule screen (Transaction Status Advice) 249, 254

access rights 259

active field 19

add >, button 20

Add Delivering Party (field)
  Create Settlement Instruction screen
    Delivery Instructions, Payment Credit 77
    Receive Instructions, Payment Debit 84

Add Receiving Party (field)
  Create Settlement Instruction screen
    Delivery Instructions, Payment Credit 83
    Receive Instructions, Payment Debit 78

add, button 20

Additional Details (field)
  Create Physical Instruction screen 169

Additional Information (field)
  Create Settlement Instruction screen
    CSD Hold Status 74
    OeKB CSD Status 76
    Party Hold Status 73
    Reason Code 74

Additional Information (Reason Code) (field)
  Create Intra-Position Movement screen 130
  Create Physical Instruction screen 169
  Create Settlement Instruction screen 74

Additional Information (step)
  Create Settlement Instruction
    field descriptions 84
    step-by-step description 56

Administration, menu item 232, 255

administrator 266

alert reason (task list)
  pending 39

allegement
  generate counter instruction 186
  Instruction History 188
  refresh 189
  search 184
    step-by-step description 186
  Status History 188

Allegement Cancellation Advice (field)
  Message Subscription Rule screen 252

Allegement Notification (field)
  Message Subscription Rule screen 252

Allegement Reference (field)
  Search Allegements screen 190

Allegement Removal Advice (field)
  Message Subscription Rule screen 252

Alleging Party BIC (field)
  Search Allegements screen 192

angle bracket with biro 25

approval 35

approval rejected ... 37

approve, button ... 20

arrow between horizontal lines ... 24

arrow pointing down between horizontal lines ... 24

arrow pointing up with line on top ... 24

arrow with double line on top ... 24

authorisation
4-Eyes Principle ... 255

Auto Receive (field)
Securities Account Details screen ... 32

Auto-Collateralisation (field)
Cash Account pop-up dialog (Securities Account Details) ... 33

Avg. Value/Nominal (EUR) (field)
Safekeeping Fee Holdings Volume Details screen ... 222

Avg. Value/Nominal from (field)
Safekeeping Fee Holdings screen (search filter) ... 218

Avg. Value/Nominal to (field)
Safekeeping Fee Holdings screen (search filter) ... 218

B

back, button ... 20

back, function link
detail view ... 25
Edit screens ... 25
arch result list ... 25

Beneficiary Account (field)
Create Physical Instruction screen ... 166

Beneficiary BIC (field)
Create Physical Instruction screen ... 166

BIC (field)
Create Settlement Instruction screen
Client of the Delivering Party ... 81
Client of the Receiving Party ... 81
Delivering Party ... 80
Depository of the Delivering Party ... 79
Depository of the Receiving Party ... 79
Receiving Party ... 80

billing ... 210

Billing
user role ... 266

Billing, menu item ... 208

biro icon ... 23, 25

BLOC (Reason Code)
Message Subscription Rule screen ... 249

Blocking Date from (field)
Securities Account Details screen ... 32

Blocking Date to (field)
Securities Account Details screen ... 32

Blocking Reason (field)
Securities Account Details screen ... 32

Booking Timestamp (field)
Create Settlement Instruction screen ... 73

box with 2 ticks ... 25

Branch (field)
Edit Message Subscription screen ... 236

bulk physical deposit ... 155

bulk physical deposit advice note ... 159

Bulk Physical Deposit, button ... 20

bullet points icon ... 24, 25, 28

button
< remove ... 22
abort ... 20
add ... 20
add > ... 20
approve ... 20
back ... 20
Bulk Physical Deposit ... 20
cancel ... 21

cancel instruction ... 21
close ... 21
create copy ... 21
delete ... 21
edit ... 21
Excel download ... 21
filter ... 21
hide update ... 21
next ... 21
no ... 21
ok ... 22
PDF download ... 22
refresh ... 22
reject ... 22
remove ... 22
reset ... 22
save ... 22
search ... 22
show update ... 22
templates ... 22
yes ... 22

C

Calendar icon ... 22

cancel
intra-position movement ... 142
physical instruction ... 174
settlement instruction ... 103

cancel instruction, button ... 21

cancel, button ... 21

Cancellation Requested (field)
Create Settlement Instruction screen ... 75
Message Subscription Rule screen (Transaction Status Advice) ... 249, 254

Cancellation Status Advice (field)
Message Subscription Rule screen ... 251, 254

Cancelled (field)
Message Subscription Rule screen (Transaction Status Advice) ... 249, 254

CANI (Reason Code)
Message Subscription Rule screen ... 249

CANS (Reason Code)
Message Subscription Rule screen ... 249

CASH (Reason Code)
Message Subscription Rule screen ... 249

Cash Account (field)
Cash Preview screen ... 204
Create Settlement Instruction screen ... 67

Cash Account Number (field)
Cash Account pop-up dialog (Securities Account Details) ... 33

Cash Account pop-up dialog (fields)
Cash Account Number ... 33
Cash Account Type ... 33
Cash Collection (check box) ... 33
Cash Settlement (check box) ... 33
Currency ... 33
Income Default (check box) ... 33
Valid from ... 33
Valid to ... 33

Cash Account pop-up dialog (Securities Account Details screen) ... 29

Cash Account Type (field)
sh Account pop-up dialog (Securities Account Details) ... 33

cash accounts of a securities account ... 29

Cash Collection (field)
Cash Account pop-up dialog (Securities Account Details) ... 33

cash movements ... 203

cash preview ... 203

Cash Preview ... 203

Cash Preview screen (fields)
Cash Account ... 204
Currency ... 205
Description (Party BIC) ... 204
Incl. Unmatched ... 205
Intended Settlement Date from ... 205
Intended Settlement Date to ... 205
Party BIC ... 204
Purpose ... 205
Securities Account ... 204

Cash Preview, menu item ... 203

Cash Settlement (field)

Cash Account pop-up dialog (Securities Account Details) 33

CCP.A Collateral (field)
Securities Account Details screen 32

CDLR (Reason Code)
Message Subscription Rule screen 249

Certificate Numbers (screen section)
Create Physical Instruction screen 169

chapter overview 13

check box 20

CLAC 35

CLAC (reason code)
pending reason code 35

CLAC (Reason Code)
Message Subscription Rule screen 249

Client of the Delivering Party (screen section)
Create Settlement Instruction, step 2 81
Edit Settlement Instruction, step 2 81

Client of the Receiving Party (screen section)
Create Settlement Instruction, step 2 81
Edit Settlement Instruction, step 2 81

close application 18

close, button 21

Closing Date (field)
Securities Account Details screen 31

CMON 35

CMON (reason code)
pending reason code 35

CMON (Reason Code)
Message Subscription Rule screen 249

collection fees 225

Collection Fees screen (fields)
Description
Party BIC 227
Description 227
Party BIC 227
Period from 227
Period to 227

Common Reference (field)
Create Settlement Instruction screen 86

communication fees 227

Communication Fees screen (fields)
Description 229
Party BIC 229
Party BIC 229
Period from 229
Period to 229

Confirmations (screen section)
Message Subscription Rule screen
rule type Intra-Position Movement 252
rule type OCSD Settlement Instruction 254
rule type Settlement Instruction 251

contact 26

copy
intra-position movement 140
physical instruction 173
settlement instruction 102

Corporate Action Reference (field)
Create Settlement Instruction screen 66
Search Allegements screen 190
Search Settlement Instructions screen 109

CoSD Hold Status (field)
Search Settlement Instructions screen 115

counter instruction 186

create copy, button 21

Create Intra-Position Movement 118

Create Intra-Position Movement screen (fields)
Additional Information
Reason Code 130
Creation Time
OeKB CSD Status 130
Customer Reference 124
Description
Instructing Party BIC 125

ISIN ... *126*
Securities Account ... *125*
Effective Settlement Date ... 127
field next to Settlement Quantity ... 126
Instructing Party BIC ... 125
Instruction Status ... 130
Intended Settlement Date ... 126
ISIN ... 126
Linkages (screen section) ... 129
MITI ... 125
Priority ... 127
Processing Status ... 129
Quantity Type (field next to Settlement Quantity) ... 126
ason Code
Processing Status ... *130*
Request Party BIC ... 130
Request User ... 130
Restr. Type Balance From ... 127
Restr. Type Balance To ... 128
Restriction Reference
Restr. Type Balance From ... *128*
Restr. Type Balance To ... *129*
Securities Account ... 125
Settled Quantity ... 126
Settlement Quantity ... 126
User Request Status ... 131
User Request Type ... 131

Create Intra-Position Movement, menu item ... 118

Create Physical Instruction ... 152

Create Physical Instruction screen (fields)
Additional Details ... 169
Additional Information
Reason Code ... *169*
Beneficiary Account ... 166
Beneficiary BIC ... 166
Certificate Numbers ... 169
Creation Time
OeKB CSD Status ... *170*
Customer Reference ... 165
Denomination, Certificate Numbers (pop-up dialog) ... 171
Description
Beneficiary BIC ... *166*
Instructing Party BIC ... *165*
ISIN ... *168*
Request Party BIC ... *170*
Request User ... *170*
Securities Account ... *167*
Effective Settlement Date ... 168
field next to Quantity ... 168
From Certificate No., Certificate Numbers (pop-up dialog) ... 170
Individual Custody ... 168
Instructing Party BIC ... 165
Instruction Status ... 169
Instruction Type ... 165
Intended Settlement Date ... 168
ISIN ... 167
MITI ... 165
Processing Status ... 169
Quantity ... 168
Quantity Type (field next to Quantity) ... 168
Reason Code
Processing Status ... *169*
Represented as ... 169
Securities Account ... 167
To Certificate No., Certificate Numbers (pop-up dialog) ... 171
User Request Status ... 170
User Request Type ... 170

Create Physical Instruction, menu item ... 152

Create Physical Instructions screen (fields)
Represented as ... 181

Create Settlement Instruction ... 48

Create Settlement Instruction Maske (Felder)
Description
Instructing Party BIC ... *88*
Restriction References, Use of Restrictions (Maskenbereich) ... 88
Restriction Type, Use of Restrictions (Maskenbereich) ... 88
Use of Restrictions (Maskenbereich)
Restriction References ... *88*
Restriction Type ... *88*

Create Settlement Instruction screen (fields)
Add Delivering Party
Delivery Instructions, Payment Credit ... *77*
Receive Instructions, Payment Debit ... *84*
Add Receiving Party
Delivery Instructions, Payment Credit ... *83*
Receive Instructions, Payment Debit ... *78*
Additional Information
CSD Hold Status ... *74*
Party Hold Status ... *73*
Reason Code ... *74*
Additional Information (OeKB CSD Status) ... 76
BIC

Client of the Delivering Party ... *81*
Client of the Receiving Party ... *81*
Delivering Party ... *80*
Depository of the Delivering Party ... *79*
Depository of the Receiving Party ... *79*
Receiving Party ... *80*
Booking Timestamp ... 73
Cancellation Requested ... 75
Cash Account ... 67
Common Reference ... 86
Corporate Action Reference ... 66
Creation Time
OeKB CSD Status ... *75*
Open Task ... *76*
CSD Hold Status ... 74
Description
BIC
Client of the Delivering Party ... 81
Client of the Receiving Party ... 81
BIC (Delivering Party) ... *80*
BIC (Depository of the Delivering Party) ... *79*
BIC (Depository of the Receiving Party) ... *79*
BIC (Receiving Party) ... *80*
Instructing Party BIC ... *66*
ISIN ... *68*
Reference Owner BIC (Linkages pop-up dialog) ... *92*
Securities Account ... *67*
ecurities Account (Delivering Party) ... *81*
Securities Account (Receiving Party) ... *81*
Effective Settlement Date ... 73
field next to Settlement Amount ... 71
field next to Settlement Quantity ... 69
Instructing Party BIC ... 66
Instruction Status ... 75
Instruction Type ... 65
Intended Settlement Date ... 73
Linkage Type, Linkages (pop-up dialog) ... 91
Linkages (pop-up dialog)
Description (Reference Owner BIC) ... *92*
Linkage Type ... *91*
Reference ... *91*
Reference Owner BIC ... *92*
Reference Type ... *91*
Linkages (screen section) ... 87
Sequential Number ... *90*
Total Number ... *90*
Match Status ... 75
Matching Reference ... 66
Name and Address ... 82
Narrative Trade Details ... 86
Opt-out Indicator ... 86
Partial Settlement Ind. ... 85
Party BIC ... 76
Party Hold Status ... 73
Priority ... 84
Processing Status ... 74, 130
Processing User ... 77
Proprietary Identification ... 82
Proprietary Issuer ... 82
Proprietary Scheme Name ... 83
Quantity Type (field next to Settlement Quantity) ... 69
Reason Code
Settlement Status ... *74*
Reasong code
Processing Status ... *74*
Reference Owner BIC, Linkages (pop-up dialog) ... 92
Reference Type, Linkages (pop-up dialog) ... 91
Reference, Linkages (pop-up dialog) ... 91
Request Party BIC ... 75
Request User ... 75
Restriction References, Use of Restrictions (screen section) ... 90
Restriction Type, Use of Restrictions (screen section) ... 89
Securities Account ... 66
Client of the Delivering Party ... *81*
Client of the Receiving Party ... *81*
Delivering Party ... *81*
Receiving Party ... *81*
Sequential Number, Linkages (screen section) ... 90
Settled Amount ... 72
Settled Quantity ... 69
Settlement Amount ... 69
Settlement Amount Currency ... 71
Settlement Quantity ... 68
Settlement Status ... 74
Target Restriction Type ... 86
Task Type ... 76
Total Number, Linkages (screen section) ... 90
Trade Date ... 72
Trade Transaction Condition ... 85
Transaction Type ... 65
Use of Restrictions ... 87
Use of Restrictions (screen section)
Restriction References ... *90*
Restriction Type ... *89*
User Request Status ... 76
User Request Type ... 76

Create Settlement Instruction, menu item 48

Create Settlement Restriction screen (fields)
Customer Reference 65
ISIN 68
MITI 66

Creation Time (field)
Create Intra-Position Movement screen
OeKB CSD Status (screen section) *130*
Create Physical Instruction screen
OeKB CSD Status (screen section) *170*
Create Settlement Instruction screen
OeKB CSD Status (screen section) *75*
Open Task (screen section) *76*

Criteria (screen section)
Search Allegements screen 190
Search Intra-Position Movements screen 146
Search Physical Instructions screen 180
Search Settlement Instructions screen 110

CSD Hold Status (field)
Create Settlement Instruction screen 74
Search Settlement Instructions screen 115

CSD Validation Hold Status (field)
Search Settlement Instructions screen 115

CSDH (Reason Code)
Message Subscription Rule screen 249

CTHP (Reason Code)
Message Subscription Rule screen 249

Currency (field)
Cash Account pop-up dialog (Securities Account Details) 33
Cash Preview screen 205
Securities Posting Items screen 201

Custodian (field)
Safekeeping Fee Holdings screen (search filter) 219
Safekeeping Fee Holdings Volume Details screen 222

Custody Type (field)
Safekeeping Fee Holdings screen (search filter) 218
Safekeeping Fee Holdings Volume Details screen 222

Customer Invoice Details screen (fields)
Description (Party BIC) 212
Party BIC 212
Period from 212
Period to 212

Customer Invoices **210**

Customer Invoices screen (fields)
Period from 211
Period to 211

Customer Invoices, menu item **210**

Customer Reference (field)
Create Intra-Position Movement screen 124
Create Physical Instruction screen 165
Create Settlement Instruction screen 65
Search Allegements screen 190
Search Intra-Position Movements screen 146
Search Physical Instructions screen 180
Search Settlement Instructions screen 109

CVAL (Reason Code)
Message Subscription Rule screen 249

D

date field **19**

Date from (field)
Securities Posting Items screen 202

Date per (field)
Securities Positions screen 198
Statement of Holdings screen 207

Date to (field)
Securities Posting Items screen 202

DDAT (Reason Code)
Message Subscription Rule screen 250

decimal places **19**

Default Instr. Format (field)
Securities Account Details screen 32

Default Sec. Account (field)
Securities Account Details screen 32

delete
intra-position movement ..... *see* cancel
Message Subscription Rule 238

physical instruction ..... s*ee* cancel
settlement instruction ..... s*ee* cancel

delete, button 21

Delivering Depository BIC (field)
Search Allegements screen 193
Search Settlement Instructions screen 116

Delivering Party (screen section)
Create Settlement Instruction, step 2 80
Edit Settlement Instruction, step 2 80

Delivering Party BIC (field)
Search Allegements screen 193
Search Settlement Instructions screen 116

Delivery Free of Payment 48

Delivery versus Payment 48

Delivery with Payment 48

Denomination (field)
Create Physical Instruction screen (Certificate Numbers) 171

deposit advice note
bulk physical deposit 159

Depository of the Delivering Party (screen section)
Create Settlement Instruction, step 2 79
Edit Settlement Instruction, step 2 79

Depository of the Receiving Party (screen section)
Create Settlement Instruction, step 2 79
Edit Settlement Instruction, step 2 79

DEPT (Reason Code)
Message Subscription Rule screen 250

Description (Feld)
Create Settlement Instruction Maske
Instructing Party BIC 88

Description (field)
Cash Preview screen
Party BIC 204
Collection Fees screen
Party BIC 227
Collection Fees screen 227
Communication Fees screen 229
Party BIC 229
Create Intra-Position Movement screen
Instructing Party BIC 125
ISIN 126
Securities Account 125
Create Physical Instruction screen
Beneficiary BIC 166
Instructing Party BIC 165
ISIN 168
Securities Account 167
Create Settlement Instruction screen
BIC (Client of the Delivering Party) 81
BIC (Client of the Receiving Party) 81
BIC (Delivering Party) 80
BIC (Depository of the Delivering Party) 79
BIC (Depository of the Receiving Party) 79
BIC (Receiving Party) 80
Instructing Party BIC 66
ISIN 68
Reference Owner BIC (Linkages pop-up dialog) 92
Securities Account 67
Securities Account (Delivering Party) 81
Securities Account (Receiving Party) 81
Customer Invoice Details
Party BIC 212
Edit Message Subscription screen
Party BIC 235
Four Eyes Principle screen
Securities Account 257
Message Subscription Rule screen
Party BIC 246
Safekeeping Fee Holdings screen 216
ISIN (search filter) 217
Party BIC 216
Securities Account 216
Safekeeping Fee Holdings Volume Details screen 221
Custodian 222
ISIN 221
Party BIC 221
Securities Account 221
Search Allegements screen
ISIN 190
Search Intra-Position Movements screen
Instructing Party BIC 147
ISIN 146
Search Physical Instructions screen
Instructing Party BIC 182
ISIN 181
Search Settlement Instructions screen

Instructing Party BIC ... *113*
ISIN ... *110*
Securities Account Details screen
Securities Account ... *31*
Securities Positions screen
ISIN ... *197*
Party BIC ... *197*
Securities Posting Items screen
ISIN ... *201*
Party BIC ... *201*
Statement of Holdings screen
Party BIC ... *207*
Transaction Fees screen
Party BIC ... *224*
Transaction Fees screen ... 224
User Portal Fees screen
Party BIC ... *231*

Destination BIC (field)
Edit Message Subscription screen ... 235
Message Subscription Rule screen ... 246
Search Message Subscription screen ... 235

details icon ... **24**

DFP - Delivery Free of Payment ... **48**

DFP (field)
Four Eyes Principle screen ... 257

disc icon ... **24**

display field ... **19**

display icon ... **24**

display of securities positions ... **194**

display of securities posting items ... **198**

DMON (Reason Code)
Message Subscription Rule screen ... 250

double line with arrow pointing up ... **24**

double tick ... **25**

download ... **46**
Excel ... 46
PDF ... 46

DQVA (Reason Code)
Message Subscription Rule screen ... 250

dropdown field ... **19**

DSEC (Reason Code)
Message Subscription Rule screen ... 250

DTRD (Reason Code)
Message Subscription Rule screen ... 250

DVP - Delivery versus Payment ... **48**

DVP (field)
Four Eyes Principle screen ... 257

DWP - Delivery with Payment ... **48**

DWP (field)
Four Eyes Principle screen ... 257

E

edit
intra-position movement ... 133
linkages (settlement instruction) ... 100
Message Subscription ... 233, 236
settlement instruction ... 95

edit icon ... **25**

Edit Message Subscription screen (fields)
Branch ... 236
Description (Party BIC) ... 235
Destiination BIC ... 235
Instruction Format ... 236
Party BIC ... 235
Securities Account ... 235
Subscription Rules ... 236
T2S Account Number ... 236

edit, button ... **21**

Effective Settlement Date (field)
Create Intra-Position Movement screen ... 127
Create Physical Instruction screen ... 168
Create Settlement Instruction screen ... 73

Effective Settlement Date from (field)
Search Intra-Position Movements screen ... 146
Search Physical Instructions screen ... 180
Search Settlement Instructions screen ... 110

Effective Settlement Date to (field)
Search Intra-Position Movements screen ... 146
Search Physical Instructions screen ... 180
Search Settlement Instructions screen ... 110

entry page **26**

Excel **46**
download 46

Excel download
button 21

extended list view **41**

extended search results **41**

F

failed **37**

fees **210**

fees list **212**

Feld
Description (Instructing Party BIC)
Create Settlement Instruction *88*
Restriction References
Use of Restrictions *88*
Restriction Type
Use of Restrictions *88*

field
Accepted (Transaction Status Advice)
Message Subscription Rules, Settlement Instruction *249, 254*
Add Delivering Party
Create Settlement Instruction *77, 84*
Add Receiving Party
Create Settlement Instruction *78, 83*
Additional Details
Create Physical Instruction *169*
Additional Information
Create Intra-Position Movement
Reason Code 130
Create Physical Instruction
Reason Code 169
Create Settlement Instruction
CSD Hold Status 74
Party Hold Status 73
Reason Code 74
Additional Information (OeKB CSD Status)
Create Settlement Instruction *76*
Allegement Cancellation Advice
Message Subscription Rules *252*
Allegement Notification
Message Subscription Rules *252*
Allegement Reference
Search Allegements *190*
Allegement Removal Advice
Message Subscription Rules *252*
Alleging Party BIC
Search Allegements *192*
Auto Receive
Securities Account Details *32*
Auto-Collateralisation
Cash Account pop-up dialog (Securities Account Details) *33*
Avg. Value/Nominal
from (Safekeeping Fee Holdings search filter) *218*
to (Safekeeping Fee Holdings search filter) *218*
to (Safekeeping Fee Holdings Volume Details) *222*
Beneficiary Account
Create Physical Instruction *166*
Beneficiary BIC
Create Physical Instruction *166*
BIC
Client of the Delivering Party, Create Settlement Instruction *81*
Client of the Receiving Party, Create Settlement Instruction *81*
Delivering Party, Create Settlement Instruction *80*
Depository of the Delivering Party, Create Settlement Instruction *79*
Depository of the Receiving Party, Create Settlement Instruction *79*
Receiving Party, Create Settlement Instruction *80*
Blocking Date from
Securities Account Details *32*
Blocking Date to
Securities Account Details *32*
Blocking Reason
Securities Account Details *32*
Booking Timestamp
Create Settlement Instruction *73*
Branch
Edit Message Subscription *236*
Cancellation Requested
Create Settlement Instruction *75*
Cancellation Requested (Transaction Status Advice)
Message Subscription Rules, Settlement Instruction *249, 254*

Cancellation Status Advice
Message Subscription Rules, OCSD Settlement Instruction ... *254*
Message Subscription Rules, Settlement Instruction ... *251*
Cancelled (Transaction Status Advice)
Message Subscription Rules, Settlement Instruction ... *249, 254*
Cash Account
Cash Preview ... *204*
Create Settlement Instruction ... *67*
Cash Account Number
Cash Account pop-up dialog (Securities Account Details) ... *33*
Cash Account Type
Cash Account pop-up dialog (Securities Account Details) ... *33*
Cash Collection
Cash Account pop-up dialog (Securities Account Details) ... *33*
Cash Settlement
Cash Account pop-up dialog (Securities Account Details) ... *33*
CCP.A Collateral
Securities Account Details ... *32*
Certificate Numbers
Create Physical Instruction ... *169*
eck box ... 20
Closing Date
Securities Account Details ... *31*
Corporate Action Reference
Create Settlement Instruction ... *66*
Search Allegements ... *190*
Search Settlement Instructions ... *109*
CoSD Hold Status
Search Settlement Instructions ... *115*
Creation Time
Create Intra-Position Movement (OeKB CSD Status) ... *130*
Create Physical Instruction (OeKB CSD Status) ... *170*
Create Settlement Instruction (OeKB CSD Status) ... *75*
Create Settlement Instruction (Open Task) ... *76*
CSD Hold Status
Create Settlement Instruction ... *74*
Search Settlement Instructions ... *115*
CSD Validation Hold Status
Search Settlement Instructions ... *115*
Currency
Cash Account pop-up dialog (Securities Account Details) ... *33*
Cash Preview ... *205*
Securities Posting Items ... *201*
Custodian
Safekeeping Fee Holdings search filter ... *219*
Safekeeping Fee Holdings Volume Details ... *222*
Custody Type
Safekeeping Fee Holdings search filter ... *218*
Safekeeping Fee Holdings Volume Details ... *222*
Customer Reference
Create Intra-Position Movement ... *124*
Create Physical Instruction ... *165*
Create Settlement Instruction ... *65, 86*
Search Allegements ... *190*
Search Intra-Position Movements ... *146*
Search Physical Instructions ... *180*
Search Settlement Instructions ... *109*
date field ... 19
Date from
Securities Posting Items ... *202*
Date per
Securities Positions ... *198*
Statement of Holdings ... *207*
Date to
Securities Posting Items ... *202*
Default Instr. Format
Securities Account Details ... *32*
Default Sec. Account
Securities Account Details ... *32*
Delivering Depository BIC
Search Allegements ... *193*
Search Settlement Instructions ... *116*
Delivering Party BIC
Search Allegements ... *193*
Search Settlement Instructions ... *116*
Denomination
Certificate Numbers ... *171*
Description
Collection Fees ... *227*
Communication Fees ... *229*
Safekeeping Fee Holdings ... *216*
Safekeeping Fee Holdings Volume Details ... *221*
Transaction Fees ... *224*
Description (Beneficiary BIC)
Create Physical Instruction ... *166*

Description (BIC, Client of the Receiving/Delivering Party)
Create Settlement Instruction ... *81*
Description (BIC, Delivering/Receiving Party)
Create Settlement Instruction ... *80*
Description (BIC, Depository of the Delivering/Receiving Party)
Create Settlement Instruction ... *79*
Description (Custodian)
Safekeeping Fee Holdings Volume Details .. *222*
Description (Instructing Party BIC)
Create Intra-Position Movement ... *125*
Create Physical Instruction ... *165*
Create Settlement Instruction ... *66*
Search Intra-Position Movements ... *147*
Search Physical Instructions ... *182*
Search Settlement Instructions ... *113*
Description (ISIN)
Create Intra-Position Movement ... *126*
Create Physical Instruction ... *168*
Create Settlement Instruction ... *68*
Safekeeping Fee Holdings search filter ... *217*
Safekeeping Fee Holdings Volume Details .. *221*
Search Allegements ... *190*
Search Intra-Position Movements ... *146*
Search Physical Instructions ... *181*
Search Settlement Instructions ... *110*
Securities Positions ... *197*
Securities Posting Items ... *201*
Description (Party BIC)
Cash Preview ... *204*
Collection Fees ... *227*
Communication Fees ... *229*
Customer Invoice Details ... *212*
Message Subscription Rules ... *246*
Safekeeping Fee Holdings ... *216*
Safekeeping Fee Holdings Volume Details .. *221*
Search Message Subscription ... *235*
Securities Account Details ... *31*
Securities Positions ... *197*
Securities Posting Items ... *201*
Statement of Holdings ... *207*
Transaction Fees ... *224*
ser Portal Fees ... *231*
Description (Reference Owner BIC), Linkages ... 92
Description (Securities Account)
Create Intra-Position Movement ... *125*
Create Physical Instruction ... *167*
Create Settlement Instruction ... *67*
Four Eyes Principle ... *257*
Safekeeping Fee Holdings ... *216*
Safekeeping Fee Holdings Volume Details .. *221*
Securities Account Details ... *31*
Description (Securities Account, Receiving/Delivering Party)
Create Settlement Instruction ... *81*
Destination BIC
Edit Message Subscription ... *235*
Message Subscription Rules ... *246*
Search Message Subscription ... *235*
DFP
Four Eyes Principle ... *257*
disabled field ... 19
display field ... 19
dropdown field ... 19
DVP
Four Eyes Principle ... *257*
DWP
Four Eyes Principle ... *257*
Effective Settlement Date
Create Intra-Position Movement ... *127*
Create Physical Instruction ... *168*
Create Settlement Instruction ... *73*
Effective Settlement Date from
Search Intra-Position Movements ... *146*
Search Physical Instructions ... *180*
Search Settlement Instructions ... *110*
Effective Settlement Date to
Search Intra-Position Movements ... *146*
Search Physical Instructions ... *180*
Search Settlement Instructions ... *110*
field next to Settlement Amount
Create Settlement Instruction ... *71*
Search Allegements ... *191*
Search Settlement Instructions ... *111*
From Certificate No.
Certificate Numbers ... *170*
Hold Claim Cash
Securities Account Details ... *32*
Hold Claim Securities
Securities Account Details ... *32*
Hold Default
Securities Account Details ... *32*
Holding Fee
Safekeeping Fee Holdings Volume Details .. *222*
Incl. Unmatched
Cash Preview ... *205*
Securities Posting Items ... *202*
Include Nil Securities Positions
Securities Positions ... *198*
Income Default

Cash Account pop-up dialog (Securities Account Details) *33*
input field 19
Instructing Party BIC
Create Intra-Position Movement *125*
Create Physical Instruction *165*
Create Settlement Instruction *66*
Search Intra-Position Movements *147*
Search Message Subscription *235*
Search Physical Instructions *182*
Search Settlement Instructions *113*
Instructing Party BICs
Message Subscription Rules *246, 251*
Instruction Format
Edit Message Subscription *236*
Instruction Status
Create Intra-Position Movement *130*
Create Physical Instruction *169*
Create Settlement Instruction *75*
Search Allegements *193*
Search Intra-Position Movements *150*
Search Physical Instructions *183*
Search Settlement Instructions *114*
Instruction Type
Create Physical Instruction *165*
Create Settlement Instruction *65*
Search Allegements *191*
Search Physical Instructions *182*
Search Settlement Instructions *112*
Instruction Types
Message Subscription Rules *246, 252*
Intended Settlement Date
Create Intra-Position Movement *126*
Create Physical Instruction *168*
Create Settlement Instruction *73*
Intended Settlement Date from
Cash Preview *205*
Search Allegements *190*
Search Intra-Position Movements *146*
Search Physical Instructions *180*
Search Settlement Instructions *110*
Intended Settlement Date to
Cash Preview *205*
Search Allegements *190*
Search Intra-Position Movements *146*
Search Physical Instructions *180*
Search Settlement Instructions *110*
Intra-Position Movement
Four Eyes Principle *257*
Intra-Position Movement Confirmation
essage Subscription Rules *252*
Intra-Position Movement Status Advice
Message Subscription Rules *251*
ISIN
Create Intra-Position Movement *126*
Create Physical Instruction *167*
Create Settlement Instruction *68*
Safekeeping Fee Holdings search filter *217*
Safekeeping Fee Holdings Volume Details *221*
Search Allegements *190*
Search Intra-Position Movements *146*
Search Physical Instructions *180*
Search Settlement Instructions *110*
Securities Positions *197*
Securities Posting Items *201*
ISIN field 19
Issuing Country
Safekeeping Fee Holdings search filter *219*
Safekeeping Fee Holdings Volume Details *222*
Linkage Type
Linkages *91*
Linkages
Create Intra-Position Movement *129*
Create Settlement Instruction *87*
Match Status
Create Settlement Instruction *75*
Search Settlement Instructions *116*
Matched (Transaction Status Advice)
Message Subscription Rules, Settlement Instruction *249, 254*
Matching Reference
Create Settlement Instruction *66*
Search Settlement Instructions *109*
MITI
Create Intra-Position Movement *125*
Create Physical Instruction *165*
Create Settlement Instruction *66*
Search Allegements *190*
Search Intra-Position Movements *146*
Search Physical Instructions *180*
Search Settlement Instructions *109*
Modification Status Advice
Message Subscription Rules, OCSD Settlement Instruction *254*
Message Subscription Rules, Settlement Instruction *251*
MT508/semt.015

Message Subscription Rules ... *252*
MT544/MT545/MT546/MT547/sese.025
Message Subscription Rules
OCSD Settlement Instruction ... 254
Settlement Instruction ... 251
MT548/semt.014
Message Subscription Rules ... *251*
MT548/sese.024
Message Subscription Rules
OCSD Settlement Instruction ... 254
Settlement Instruction ... 249
MT548/sese.027
Message Subscription Rules ... *254*
Settlement Instruction ... 251
MT548/sese.031
Message Subscription Rules
OCSD Settlement Instruction ... 254
Settlement Instruction ... 251
MT548/sese.032
Message Subscription Rules
OCSD Settlement Instruction ... 253
Settlement Instruction ... 248
MT578/semt.020
Message Subscription Rules ... *252*
MT578/sese.028
Message Subscription Rules ... *252*
MT578/sese.029
Message Subscription Rules ... *252*
Name and Address
Create Settlement Instruction ... *82*
Narrative Trade Details
Create Settlement Instruction ... *86*
numeric field ... 19
Open Message Types
Search Message Subscription ... *235*
Opening Date
Securities Account Details ... *31*
Opt-out Indicator
Create Settlement Instruction ... *86*
Partial Settlement Default
Securities Account Details ... *32*
Partial Settlement Ind.
Create Settlement Instruction ... *85*
Search Settlement Instructions ... *117*
Party BIC
Cash Preview ... *204*
Collection Fees ... *227*
Communication Fees ... *229*
Create Settlement Instruction ... *76*
Customer Invoice Details ... *212*
Edit Message Subscription ... *235*
Message Subscription Rules ... *246*
Safekeeping Fee Holdings ... *216*
Safekeeping Fee Holdings Volume Details ... *221*
Search Message Subscription ... *234*
Securities Account Details ... *31*
Securities Positions ... *197*
Securities Posting Items ... *201*
Statement of Holdings ... *207*
Transaction Fees ... *224*
User Portal Fees ... *231*
Party Hold Status
Create Settlement Instruction ... *73*
Search Settlement Instructions ... *114*
Party Name
Message Subscription Rules ... *246*
Pending (Transaction Status Advice)
Message Subscription Rules, Settlement Instruction ... *249, 254*
Pending Reason Codes
Search Settlement Instructions ... *115*
Period from
Collection Fees ... *227*
Communication Fees ... *229*
Customer Invoice Details ... *212*
Customer Invoices ... *211*
Safekeeping Fee Holdings ... *216*
Safekeeping Fee Holdings Volume Details ... *221*
Transaction Fees ... *224*
User Portal Fees ... *231*
Period to
Collection Fees ... *227*
Communication Fees ... *229*
Customer Invoice Details ... *212*
Customer Invoices ... *211*
Safekeeping Fee Holdings ... *216*
Safekeeping Fee Holdings Volume Details ... *221*
Transaction Fees ... *224*
User Portal Fees ... *231*
PFD Credit
Four Eyes Principle ... *257*
PFD Debit
Four Eyes Principle ... *257*
PFR Credit

Four Eyes Principle *257*
PFR Debit
Four Eyes Principle *257*
Physicals
Four Eyes Principle *257*
Priority
Create Intra-Position Movement *127*
Create Settlement Instruction *84*
Search Settlement Instructions *117*
Processing Status
Create Intra-Position Movement *129*
Create Physical Instruction *169*
Create Settlement Instruction *74, 130*
Search Intra-Position Movements *151*
Search Settlement Instructions *115*
Processing User
Create Settlement Instruction *77*
Proprietary Identification
Create Settlement Instruction *82*
Proprietary Issuer
Create Settlement Instruction *82*
Proprietary Scheme Name
Create Settlement Instruction *83*
Purpose
Cash Preview *205*
Securities Posting Items *201*
Quantity
Create Physical Instruction *168*
Quantity Type
Create Intra-Position Movement *126*
Create Physical Instruction *168*
Create Settlement Instruction *69*
Safekeeping Fee Holdings Volume Details *221*
Search Allegements *191*
Search Intra-Position Movements *147*
Search Physical Instructions *181*
Search Settlement Instructions *111*
Reason Code
Create Intra-Position Movement
Processing Status 130
Create Physical Instruction
Processing Status 169
Create Settlement Instruction
Processing Status 74
Settlement Status 74
Receiving Depository BIC
Search Allegements *193*
Search Settlement Instructions *116*
Receiving Party BIC
Search Allegements *193*
Search Settlement Instructions *116*
Reference Owner BIC, Linkages 92
Reference Type, Linkages 91
Reference, Linkages 91
Rejected (Transaction Status Advice)
Message Subscription Rules, Settlement Instruction *249, 254*
Represented as
Create Physical Instruction *169*
Search Physical Instructions *181*
Request Party BIC
Create Intra-Position Movement *130*
Create Physical Instruction *170*
Create Settlement Instruction *75*
Request User
Create Intra-Position Movement *130*
Create Physical Instruction *170*
Create Settlement Instruction *75*
Restr. Type Balance From
Create Intra-Position Movement *127*
Search Intra-Position Movements *148*
Restr. Type Balance To
Create Intra-Position Movement *128*
Search Intra-Position Movements *149*
Restriction Reference
reate Intra-Position Movement (Restr. Type Balance From) *128*
Create Intra-Position Movement (Restr. Type Balance To) *129*
Search Intra-Position Movements *146*
Restriction References
Use of Restrictions *90*
Restriction Type
Use of Restrictions *89*
RFP
Four Eyes Principle *257*
Rule Name
Message Subscription Rules *246*
Rule Type
Message Subscription Rules *246*
RVP
Four Eyes Principle *257*
RWP
Four Eyes Principle *257*
Sec. Acc. Category

Securities Account Details *32*
Sec. Acc. Type
Securities Account Details *31*
Securities Account
Cash Preview *204*
Create Intra-Position Movement *125*
Create Physical Instruction *167*
Create Settlement Instruction *66*
Create Settlement Instruction, Client of the Delivering Party *81*
Create Settlement Instruction, Client of the Receiving Party *81*
Create Settlement Instruction, Delivering Party *81*
Create Settlement Instruction, Receiving Party *81*
Edit Message Subscription *235*
Four Eyes Principle *257*
Message Subscription Rules *246*
Safekeeping Fee Holdings *216*
Safekeeping Fee Holdings Volume Details .. *221*
Search Allegements *192*
Search Intra-Position Movements *147*
Search Message Subscription *234*
Search Physical Instructions *182*
Search Settlement Instructions *113*
Securities Account Details *31*
Securities Positions *198*
Securities Posting Items *201*
Statement of Holdings *207*
Securities Settlement Transaction Generation Notification
Message Subscription Rules, OCSD Settlement Instruction *253*
Message Subscription Rules, Settlement Instruction *248*
Security Type
Safekeeping Fee Holdings search filter *219*
Safekeeping Fee Holdings Volume Details *221*
Sequential Number, Linkages 90
Settled Amount
Create Settlement Instruction *72*
Settled Quantity
Create Settlement Instruction *69*
Settlement Amount
Create Settlement Instruction *69*
Settlement Amount Currency
Create Settlement Instruction *71*
Search Allegements *191*
Search Settlement Instructions *111*
Settlement Amount from
Search Allegements *191*
Search Settlement Instructions *111*
Settlement Amount to
Search Allegements *191*
Search Settlement Instructions *111*
Settlement Default
Cash Account pop-up dialog (Securities Account Details) *33*
Settlement Quantity
Create Intra-Position Movement *126*
Create Settlement Instruction *68*
Settlement Quantity from
Search Allegements *191*
Search Intra-Position Movements *147*
Search Physical Instructions *181*
Search Settlement Instructions *111*
Settlement Quantity to
Search Allegements *191*
Search Intra-Position Movements *147*
Search Physical Instructions *181*
Search Settlement Instructions *111*
Settlement Status
Create Settlement Instruction *74*
Search Intra-Position Movements *151*
Short only
Securities Posting Items *202*
Subscription Rules
Edit Message Subscription *236*
Sum up
Securities Posting Items *202*
T2S Account Number
Edit Message Subscription *236*
Target Restriction Type
Create Settlement Instruction *86*
Task Type
Create Settlement Instruction *76*
Search Intra-Position Movements *150*
Search Physical Instructions *183*
Search Settlement Instructions *114*
To Certificate No.
Certificate Numbers *171*
otal Number, Linkages 90

Trade Date
Create Settlement Instruction ... *72*
Trade Date from
Search Allegements ... *190*
Search Physical Instructions ... *180*
Search Settlement Instructions ... *110*
Trade Date to
Search Allegements ... *190*
Search Physical Instructions ... *180*
Search Settlement Instructions ... *110*
Trade Transaction Condition
Create Settlement Instruction ... *85*
Transaction Confirmation
Message Subscription Rules, OCSD Settlement Instruction ... *254*
Message Subscription Rules, Settlement Instruction ... *251*
Transaction Status Advice
Message Subscription Rules, OCSD Settlement Instruction ... *254*
Message Subscription Rules, Settlement Instruction ... *249*
Transaction Type
Create Settlement Instruction ... *65*
Search Allegements ... *192*
Search Settlement Instructions ... *113*
Transaction Types
Message Subscription Rules ... *247, 253*
Use of Restrictions
Create Settlement Instruction ... *87*
User Request Status
Create Intra-Position Movement ... *131*
Create Physical Instruction ... *170*
Create Settlement Instruction ... *76*
User Request Type
Create Intra-Position Movement ... *131*
Create Physical Instruction ... *170*
Create Settlement Instruction ... *76*
Valid from
Cash Account pop-up dialog (Securities Account Details) ... *33*
Valid to
Cash Account pop-up dialog (Securities Account Details) ... *33*

field next to Quantity
Create Physical Instruction screen ... 168

field next to Settlement Amount
Create Settlement Instruction screen ... 71
Search Allegements screen ... 191
Search Settlement Instructions screen ... 111

field next to Settlement Quantity
Create Intra-Position Movement screen ... 126
Create Settlement Instruction screen ... 69
Search Allegements screen ... 191
Search Instruction screen ... 181
Search Intra-Position Movements screen ... 147
Search Settlement Instructions screen ... 111

fields ... 19
active field ... 19
check box ... 20
date field ... 19
disabled field ... 19
display field ... 19
dropdown field ... 19
grey field ... 19
input field ... 19
ISIN field ... 19
numeric field ... 19

filter, button ... 21

FOP releaser ... 261

FOP user ... 259

four eyes principle ... 35, 255

Four Eyes Principle screen (fields)
Description (Securities Account) ... 257
DFP ... 257
DVP ... 257
DWP ... 257
Intra-Position Movement ... 257
PFD Credit ... 257
PFD Debit ... 257
PFR Credit ... 257
PFR Debit ... 257
Physicals ... 257
RFP ... 257
RVP ... 257
RWP ... 257

Securities Account ... 257

Four Eyes Principle, menu item ... 255

From Certificate No. (field)
Create Physical Instruction screen (Certificate Numbers) ... 170

function link
back
detail view ... 25
Edit screens ... 25
search result list ... 25
next (search result list) ... 25
top ... 25

FUTU (Reason Code)
Message Subscription Rule screen ... 250

G

Generate Counter Instruction ... 186
icon ... 25

green bullseye with tick ... 23

grey field ... 19

H

hide update, button ... 21

Hold Claim Cash (field)
Securities Account Details screen ... 32

Hold Claim Securities (field)
Securities Account Details screen ... 32

Hold Default (field)
Securities Account Details screen ... 32

Holding Fee (field)
Safekeeping Fee Holdings Volume Details screen ... 222

Holdings, menu item ... 194

Home ... 26

I

i icon ... 23

ICAG (Reason Code)
Message Subscription Rule screen ... 250

icon
* ... 18
A with arrow pointing down ... 24
A with arrow pointing up ... 24
A ... 24
angle bracket with pen ... 25
arrow between horizontal lines ... 24
arrow pointing down between horizontal lines ... 24
arrow pointing up with line on top ... 24
arrow with double line on top ... 24
biro ... 23, 25
biro with angle bracket ... 25
box with 2 ticks ... 25
calendar ... 22
cancel ... 24
details ... 24
disc ... 24
double line with arrow pointing up ... 24
double tick ... 25
edit ... 25
Generate Counter Instruction ... 25
green bullseye with tick ... 23
Info ... 23
lines with arrow pointing down ... 24
lines with arrow pointing up ... 24
list ... 24, 25, 28
list with arrow pointing down ... 24
list with arrow pointing up ... 24
magnifier ... 24
magnifier with plus symbol and table rows ... 25
PDF ... 24
pen ... 23, 25
pen with angle bracket ... 25
pencil ... 23, 25
plus and pen ... 23
positions ... 25
review ... 25
rows with magnifier ... 25
select all ... 25
select none ... 25
sort order ... 24
spreadsheet list ... 25, 28
table ... 25
tick, double ... 25
two ticks ... 25
vertical bullet points ... 25

white bullseye ... 23
writing pen ... 23, 25
X all ... 25
X none ... 25
X ... 24
yellow bullseye ... 23

ICUS (Reason Code)
Message Subscription Rule screen ... 250

INBC (Reason Code)
Message Subscription Rule screen ... 250

Incl. Unmatched (field)
Cash Preview screen ... 205
Securities Posting Items screen ... 202

Include Nil Securities Positions (field)
Securities Positions ... 198

Income Default (field)
Cash Account pop-up dialog (Securities Account Details) ... 33

Individual Custody (field)
Create Physical Instruction screen ... 168

information box ... 15

information types ... 16

input field ... 19
disabled ... 19

Instructing Party BIC (field)
Create Intra-Position Movement screen ... 125
Create Physical Instruction screen ... 165
Create Settlement Instruction screen ... 66
Search Intra-Position Movements screen ... 147
Search Message Subscription screen ... 235
Search Physical Instructions screen ... 182
Search Settlement Instructions screen ... 113

Instructing Party BICs (field)
Message Subscription Rule screen
Intra-Position Movement rule type ... 251
Settlement Instruction rule type ... 246

instruction
cancel
physical instruction ... 174
settlement instruction ... 103
copy
physical instruction ... 173
settlement instruction ... 102
edit ... 95
edit (linkages, settlement instruction) ... 100
entry ... 49
Additional Information ... 54
Instruction Details ... 49
Linkages ... 61
physical instruction ... 152
Restrictions ... 58, 60
settlement instruction ... 49
Settlement Instruction Summary ... 57
Settlement Parties ... 52
Target Restriction Type ... 60
Use of Restrictions ... 58
Instruction History
physical instruction ... 178
settlement instruction ... 107
modify ... 95
modify (linkages, settlement instruction) ... 100
PDF download
physical instruction ... 176
physical instruction (bulk physical deposit) ... 159
settlement instruction ... 106
refresh
physical instruction ... 179
settlement instruction ... 108
reject ... 35
release ... 35
search
physical instructions ... 171
settlement instructions ... 92
Settlement Instruction Summary ... 57
Status History
physical instruction ... 178
settlement instruction ... 108

instruction alerts ... 35, 38

Instruction Details (step)
Create Settlement Instruction
field descriptions ... 65
step-by-step description ... 50

instruction for the decrease of a global certificate ... 153
create ... 152
search ... 171

instruction for the increase of a global certificate ... 153
create ... 152
search ... 171

instruction for the physical deposit of securities 153
create ... 152
search ... 171

instruction for the physical withdrawal of securities ... 153
create ... 152
search ... 171

Instruction Format (field)
Edit Message Subscription screen ... 236

Instruction History
allegement ... 188
intra-position movement ... 143
physical instruction ... 178
settlement instruction ... 107

Instruction Status (field)
Create Intra-Position Movement screen ... 130
Create Physical Instruction screen ... 169
Create Settlement Instruction screen ... 75
Search Allegements screen ... 193
Search Intra-Position Movements screen ... 150
Search Physical Instructions screen ... 183
Search Settlement Instructions screen ... 114

Instruction Type (field)
Create Physical Instruction screen ... 165
Create Settlement Instruction screen ... 65
Search Allegements screen ... 191
Search Physical Instructions screen ... 182
Search Settlement Instructions screen ... 112

instruction types
physical instructions ... 153
settlement instructions ... 48

Instruction Types (field)
Message Subscription Rule screen ... 246, 252

Intended Settlement Date (field)
Create Intra-Position Movement screen ... 126
Create Physical Instruction screen ... 168
Create Settlement Instruction screen ... 73

Intended Settlement Date from (field)
Cash Preview screen ... 205
Search Allegements screen ... 190
Search Intra-Position Movements screen ... 146
Search Physical Instructions screen ... 180
Search Settlement Instructions screen ... 110

Intended Settlement Date to (field)
Cash Preview screen ... 205
Search Allegements screen ... 190
Search Intra-Position Movements screen ... 146
Search Physical Instructions screen ... 180
Search Settlement Instructions screen ... 110

intra-position movement
cancel ... 142
copy ... 140
edit ... 133
Instruction History ... 143
modify ... 133
refresh ... 145
search ... 131
step-by-step description ... 140
Status History ... 144

Intra-Position Movement (field)
Four Eyes Principle screen ... 257

Intra-Position Movement Confirmation (field)
Message Subscription Rule screen ... 252

Intra-Position Movement Details
reate Intra-Position Movement ... 118

Intra-Position Movement Status Advice (field)
Message Subscription Rule screen ... 251

Introduction ... 13

INVB (Reason Code)
Message Subscription Rule screen ... 250

invisible
menu item ... 259

INVL (Reason Code)
Message Subscription Rule screen ... 250

INVN (Reason Code)
Message Subscription Rule screen ... 250

invoice
detail view ... 211
show ... 210

ISIN (field)
Create Intra-Position Movement screen ... 126
Create Physical Instruction screen ... 167
Create Settlement Instruction screen ... 68

Safekeeping Fee Holdings screen (search filter) 217
Safekeeping Fee Holdings Volume Details screen 221
Search Allegements screen 190
Search Intra-Position Movements screen 146
Search Physical Instructions screen 180
Search Settlement Instructions screen 110
Securities Positions screen 197
Securities Posting Items screen 201

ISIN field 19

Issuing Country (field)
Safekeeping Fee Holdings screen (search filter) 219
Safekeeping Fee Holdings Volume Details screen 222

items 198

L

LACK 35

LACK (reason code)
pending reason code 35

LACK (Reason Code)
Message Subscription Rule screen 250

LATE (Reason Code)
Message Subscription Rule screen 250

leave 18

line with arrow pointing down 24

line with arrow pointing up 24

link
back
detail view 25
Edit screens 25
search result list 25
next (search result list) 25
top 25

LINK (Reason Code)
Message Subscription Rule screen 250

Linkage Type (field)
Create Settlement Instruction screen (Linkages) 91

Linkages (pop-up dialog)
Create Intra-Position Movement 124
Create Settlement Instruction, step 3 91

Linkages (screen section)
Create Intra-Position Movement screen 129
Create Settlement Instruction screen, step 3 ..... 87, 90

list icon 25, 28

locked field 19

Login 17

Logout 18

M

magnifier 24, 25

magnifier with plus symbol and table rows 25

mandatory fields 18

Match Status (field)
Search Settlement Instruction screen 75
Search Settlement Instructions screen 116

Matched (field)
Message Subscription Rule screen (Transaction Status Advice) 249, 254

Matching Reference (field)
Create Settlement Instruction screen 66
Search Settlement Instructions screen 109

menu bar 27

menu item
Administration 232, 255
Billing 208
Cash Preview 203
Create Intra-Position Movement 118
Create Physical Instruction 152
Create Settlement Instruction 48
Customer Invoices 210
Four Eyes Principle 255
Holdings 194

Home ... 26
Message Subscription ... 232
Search Allegements ... 184
Search Intra-Position Movements ... 131
Search Physical Instructions ... 171
Search Settlement Instructions ... 92
Securities Positions ... 194
Securities Posting Items ... 198
Settlement ... 48, 118, 152, 184
Statement of Holdings ... 206

menu items
invisible ... 259

Menu items ... 27

Message Subscription ... 232
search ... 232

Message Subscription Rule
create ... 240
delete ... 238
edit ... 236
modify ... 236

Message Subscription Rule screen (fields)
Accepted (Transaction Status Advice) ... 249, 254
Allegement Cancellation Advice ... 252
Allegement Notification ... 252
Allegement Removal Advice ... 252
Cancellation Requested (Transaction Status Advice) ... 249, 254
Cancellation Status Advice ... 251, 254
Cancelled (Transaction Status Advice) ... 249, 254
Description (Party BIC) ... 246
Destination BIC ... 246
Instructing Party BICs ... 246, 251
Instruction Types ... 246, 252
Intra-Position Movement Confirmation ... 252
Intra-Position Movement Status Advice ... 251
Matched (Transaction Status Advice) ... 249, 254
Modification Status Advice ... 251, 254
MT508/semt.015 ... 252
MT544/MT545/MT546/MT547/sese.025 ... 251, 254
MT548/semt.014 ... 251
MT548/sese.024 ... 249, 254
MT548/sese.027 ... 251, 254
MT548/sese.031 ... 251, 254
MT548/sese.032 ... 248, 253
MT578/semt.020 ... 252
MT578/sese.028 ... 252
MT578/sese.029 ... 252
Party BIC ... 246
Party Name ... 246
Pending (Transaction Status Advice) ... 249, 254
Rejected (Transaction Status Advice) ... 249, 254
Rule Name ... 246
Rule Type ... 246
Securities Account ... 246
Securities Settlement Transaction Generation Notification ... 248, 253
Transaction Confirmation ... 251, 254
Transaction Status Advice ... 249, 254
Transaction Types ... 247, 253

Message Subscription Rules ... 236

Message Subscription, menu item ... 232

MINO (Reason Code)
Message Subscription Rule screen ... 250

MITI (field)
Create Intra-Position Movement screen ... 125
Create Physical Instruction screen ... 165
Create Settlement Instruction screen ... 66
Search Allegements screen ... 190
Search Intra-Position Movements screen ... 146
Search Physical Instructions screen ... 180
Search Settlement Instructions screen ... 109

Modification Status Advice (field)
Message Subscription Rule screen ... 251, 254

modify
intra-position movement ... 133
linkages (settlement instruction) ... 100
Message Subscription ... 233, 236
settlement instruction ... 95

MONY ... 35

MONY (reason code)
pending reason code ... 35

MONY (Reason Code)

Message Subscription Rule screen 250

More Criteria (screen section)
Search Settlement Instructions screen 117

MT544/MT545/MT546/MT547/sese.025 (field)
Message Subscription Rule screen 251, 254

MT548/semt.014 (field)
Message Subscription Rule screen 251

MT548/semt.015 (field)
Message Subscription Rule screen 252

MT548/sese.024 (field)
Message Subscription Rule screen 249, 254

MT548/sese.027 (field)
Message Subscription Rule screen 251, 254

MT548/sese.031 (field)
Message Subscription Rule screen 251, 254

MT548/sese.032 (field)
Message Subscription Rule screen 248, 253

MT578/semt.020 (field)
Message Subscription Rule screen 252

MT578/sese.028 (field)
Message Subscription Rule screen 252

MT578/sese.029 (field)
Message Subscription Rule screen 252

MUNO (Reason Code)
Message Subscription Rule screen 250

N

Name and Address (field)
Create Settlement Instruction screen 82

Narrative Trade Details (field)
Create Settlement Instruction screen 86

NCRR (Reason Code)
Message Subscription Rule screen 250

next
button 21
function link (search result list) 25

no, button 21

NORE (Reason Code)
Message Subscription Rule screen 251

notes box 15

Notifications (screen section)
Message Subscription Rule screen
rule type Allegement 252
rule type OCSD Settlement Instruction 253
rule type Settlement Instruction 248

numeric field 19

O

OeKB CSD Status (screen section)
Intra-Position Movement Details 130
Physical Instruction Details 169

OeKC CSD Status Criteria (screen section)
Search Allegements screen 193
Search Intra-Position Movements screen 150
Search Physical Instructions screen 183
Search Settlement Instructions screen 114

ok, button 22

Open Message Types (fields)
Search Message Subscription screen 235

Open Task (screen section)
Settlement Instruction Details, step 1 ..... 75, 76
Settlement Instruction Summary, step 1 76

open tasks 36

Opening Date (field)
Securities Account Details screen 31

Opt-out Indicator (field)
Create Settlement Instruction screen 86

other fees 231

OTHR (Reason Code)
Message Subscription Rule screen 251

P

PART (Reason Code)
Message Subscription Rule screen 251

Partial Settlement Default (field)
Securities Account Details screen 32

Partial Settlement Ind. (field)
Create Settlement Instruction screen ... 85
Search Settlement Instructions screen ... 117

Party BIC (field)
Cash Preview screen ... 204
Collection Fees screen ... 227
Communication Fees screen ... 229
Create Settlement Instruction screen ... 76
Customer Invoice Details screen ... 212
Edit Message Subscription screen ... 235
Message Subscription Rule screen ... 246
Safekeeping Fee Holdings screen ... 216
Safekeeping Fee Holdings Volume Details screen ... 221
Search Message Subscription screen ... 234
Securities Account Details screen ... 31
Party BIC ... 31
Securities Positions screen ... 197
Securities Posting Items screen ... 201
Statement of Holdings screen ... 207
Transaction Fees screen ... 224
User Portal Fees ... 231

Party Hold Status (field)
Create Settlement Instruction screen ... 73
Search Settlement Instructions screen ... 114

Party Name (field)
Message Subscription Rule screen ... 246

Payment Free of Delivery Credit ... 48

Payment Free of Delivery Debit ... 48

Payment Free of Receive Credit ... 48

Payment Free of Receive Debit ... 48

PDF ... 46

PDF download ... 46
allegement ... 187
button ... 22
physical instruction ... 176
bulk physical deposit ... 159
settlement instruction ... 106
Statement of Holdings ... 206

PDF icon ... 24

pen icon ... 23, 25

pen icon with angle bracket ... 25

pencil icon ... 23, 25

pending
alert reason (task list) ... 39

Pending (field)
Message Subscription Rule screen (Transaction Status Advice) ... 249, 254

Pending Reason Codes (field)
Search Settlement Instructions screen ... 115

Period (screen section)
Search Allegements screen ... 190
Search Intra-Position Movements screen ... 146
Search Physical Instructions screen ... 180
Search Settlement Instructions screen ... 110

Period from (field)
Collection Fees screen ... 227
Communication Fees screen ... 229
Customer Invoice Details screen ... 212
Customer Invoices screen ... 211
Safekeeping Fee Holdings screen ... 216
Safekeeping Fee Holdings Volume Details screen ... 221
Transaction Fees screen ... 224
User Portal Fees screen ... 231

Period to (field)
Collection Fees screen ... 227
Communication Fees screen ... 229
Customer Invoice Details screen ... 212
Customer Invoices screen ... 211
Safekeeping Fee Holdings screen ... 216
Safekeeping Fee Holdings Volume Details screen ... 221
Transaction Fees screen ... 224
User Portal Fees screen ... 231

Permissions ... 259

PFD - Payment Free of Delivery Credit ... 48

PFD - Payment Free of Delivery Debit ... 48

PFD - Payment Free of Receive Credit ... 48

PFD - Payment Free of Receive Debit ... 48

PFD Credit (field)
Four Eyes Principle screen ... 257

PFD Debit (field)
Four Eyes Principle screen ... 257

PFR Credit (field)
Four Eyes Principle screen ... 257

PFR Debit (field)
Four Eyes Principle screen ... 257

physical instruction
cancel ... 174
copy ... 173
entry ... 152
Instruction History ... 178
PDF download ... 176
bulk physical deposit ... 159
refresh ... 179
search ... 171
step-by-step description ... 173
Status History ... 178

Physical Instruction Details
Create Physical Instruction ... 152

Physical releaser ... 265

Physical user ... 264

Physicals (field)
Four Eyes Principle screen ... 257

plus icon with pen ... 23

pool ... 63

pool linkage ... 63

pool reference ... 63

position linkage ... 64

positions ... 194

positions icon ... 25

posting items ... 198

PRCY (Reason Code)
Message Subscription Rule screen ... 251

PREA (Reason Code)
Message Subscription Rule screen ... 251

Priority (field)
Create Instruction screen ... 84
Create Intra-Position Movement screen ... 127
Search Settlement Instructions screen ... 117

Processing Status (field)
Create Intra-Position Movement screen ... 129
Create Physical Instruction screen ... 169
Create Settlement Instruction screen ... 74, 130
Search Intra-Position Movements screen ... 151
Search Settlement Instructions screen ... 115

Processing User (field)
Create Settlement Instruction screen ... 77

Proprietary Identification (field)
Create Settlement Instruction screen ... 82

Proprietary Issuer (field)
Create Settlement Instruction screen ... 82

Proprietary Scheme Name (field)
Create Settlement Instruction screen ... 83

PRSY (Reason Code)
Message Subscription Rule screen ... 251

Purpose (field)
Cash Preview screen ... 205
Securities Posting Items screen ... 201

Q

Quantity (field)
Create Physical Instruction screen ... 168

Quantity Type (field)
Create Intra-Position Movement screen ... 126
Create Physical Instruction screen ... 168
Create Settlement Instruction screen ... 69
Safekeeping Fee Holdings Volume Details screen ... 221
Search Allegements screen ... 191
Search Intra-Position Movements screen ... 147
Search Physical Instructions screen ... 181
Search Settlement Instructions screen ... 111

R

read only (user role) ... 265

Reason Code (field)

Create Intra-Position Movement screen
Processing Status ... *130*
Create Physical Instruction screen
Processing Status ... *169*
Create Settlement Instruction screen
Processing Status ... *74*
Settlement Status ... *74*

reason codes
CLAC
pending reason codes ... *35*
CMON
pending reason codes ... *35*
LACK
pending reason codes ... *35*
MONY
pending reason codes ... *35*

Reason Codes
BLOC (Message Subscription Rule screen) ... 249
CANI (Message Subscription Rule screen) ... 249
CANS (Message Subscription Rule screen) ... 249
CASH (Message Subscription Rule screen) ... 249
CDLR (Message Subscription Rule screen) ... 249
CLAC
Message Subscription Rule screen ... *249*
CMON
Message Subscription Rule screen ... *249*
CSDH (Message Subscription Rule screen) ... 249
CTHP (Message Subscription Rule screen) ... 249
CVAL (Message Subscription Rule screen) ... 249
DDAT (Message Subscription Rule screen) ... 250
DEPT (Message Subscription Rule screen) ... 250
DMON (Message Subscription Rule screen) ... 250
DQVA (Message Subscription Rule screen) ... 250
DSEC (Message Subscription Rule screen) ... 250
DTRD (Message Subscription Rule screen) ... 250
FUTU (Message Subscription Rule screen) ... 250
ICAG (Message Subscription Rule screen) ... 250
ICUS (Message Subscription Rule screen) ... 250
INBC (Message Subscription Rule screen) ... 250
INVB (Message Subscription Rule screen) ... 250
INVL (Message Subscription Rule screen) ... 250
INVN (Message Subscription Rule screen) ... 250
LACK
Message Subscription Rule screen ... *250*
LATE (Message Subscription Rule screen) ... 250

LINK (Message Subscription Rule screen) 250
MINO (Message Subscription Rule screen) 250
MONY
Message Subscription Rule screen *250*
MUNO (Message Subscription Rule screen) 250
NCRR (Message Subscription Rule screen) 250
NORE (Message Subscription Rule screen) 251
OTHR (Message Subscription Rule screen) 251
PART (Message Subscription Rule screen) 251
PRCY (Message Subscription Rule screen) 251
PREA (Message Subscription Rule screen) 251
PRSY (Message Subscription Rule screen) 251
REFE (Message Subscription Rule screen) 251
SAFE (Message Subscription Rule screen) 251
SBLO (Message Subscription Rule screen) 251
SETR (Message Subscription Rule screen) 251
VALR (Message Subscription Rule screen) 251

Reason Codes (screen section)
Message Subscription Rule screen
rule type OCSD Settlement Instruction *254*
rule type Settlement Instruction *249*

Receive Free of Payment **48**

Receive versus Payment **48**

Receive with Payment **48**

Receiving Depository BIC (field)
Search Allegements screen 193
Search Settlement Instructions screen 116

Receiving Party (screen section)
Create Settlement Instruction, step 2 80
Edit Settlement Instruction, step 2 80

Receiving Party BIC (field)
Search Allegements screen 193
Search Settlement Instructions screen 116

REFE (Reason Code)
Message Subscription Rule screen 251

Reference (field)
Create Settlement Instruction screen (Linkages) 91

Reference (screen section)
Search Allegements screen 190
Search Intra-Position Movements screen 146
Search Physical Instructions screen 180
Search Settlement Instructions screen 109

Reference of Counterparty (screen section)
Search Allegements screen 190

Reference Owner BIC (field)
Create Settlement Instruction screen (Linkages) 92

Reference Type (field)
Create Settlement Instruction screen (Linkages) 91

refresh
allegement 189
intra-position movement 145
physical instruction 179

settlement instruction 108

refresh, button 22

reject, button 22

rejected 37

Rejected (field)
Message Subscription Rule screen (Transaction Status Advice) 249, 254

release 35

releaser 35
user role
FOP 261
Physical 265
VP 263

remove, button 22

Represented as (field)
Create Physical Instruction screen 169
Search Physical Instructions screen 181

Request Party BIC (field)
Create Intra-Position Movement screen 130
Create Physical Instruction screen 170
Create Settlement Instruction screen 75

Request User (field)
Create Intra-Position Movement screen 130
Create Physical Instruction screen 170
Create Settlement Instruction screen 75

reset, button 22

Restr. Type Balance From (field)
Search Intra-Position Movements screen 148

Restr. Type Balance To (field)
Create Intra-Position Movement screen 128
Search Intra-Position Movements screen 149

Restriction Reference (field)
Create Intra-Position Movement screen (Restr. Type Balance From 128
reate Intra-Position Movement screen (Restr. Type Balance To 129
Search Intra-Position Movements screen 146

Restriction References (Feld)
Create Instruction Maske (Use of Restrictions) 88

Restriction References (field)
Create Instruction screen (Use of Restrictions) 90

Restriction Type (Feld)
Create Instruction Maske (Use of Restrictions) 88

Restriction Type (field)
Create Instruction screen (Use of Restrictions .....) 89

Restrictions, Use of (screen section)
Create Settlement Instruction screen 87

review icon 25

RFP - Receive Free of Payment 48

RFP (field)
Four Eyes Principle screen 257

roles, users 259

rows icon with magnifier 25

Rule Name (field)
Message Subscription Rule screen 246

Rule Type (field)
Message Subscription Rule screen 246

RVP - Receive versus Payment 48

RVP (field)

Four Eyes Principle screen ... 257

RWP - Receive with Payment ... 48

RWP (field)
Four Eyes Principle screen ... 257

S

SAFE (Reason Code)
Message Subscription Rule screen ... 251

Safekeeping Fee Holdings ... 215

Safekeeping Fee Holdings screen (fields)
Avg. Value/Nominal from (search filter) ... 218
Avg. Value/Nominal to (search filter) ... 218
Custodian (search filter) ... 219
Custody Type (search filter) ... 218
Description ... 216
ISIN (search filter) ... 217
Party BIC ... 216
Securities Account ... 216
ISIN (search filter) ... 217
Issuing Country (search filter) ... 219
Party BIC ... 216
Period from ... 216
Period to ... 216
Securities Account ... 216
Security Type (search filter) ... 219

Safekeeping Fee Holdings search filter (fields)
Avg. Value/Nominal from ... 218
Avg. Value/Nominal to ... 218
Custodian ... 219
Custody Type ... 218
Description (ISIN) ... 217
ISIN ... 217
Issuing Country ... 219
Security Type ... 219

Safekeeping Fee Holdings Volume Details screen (fields)
Avg. Value/Nominal (EUR) ... 222
Custodian ... 222
Custody Type ... 222
Description ... 221
Custodian ... 222
ISIN ... 221
Party BIC ... 221
Securities Account ... 221
Holding Fee ... 222
ISIN ... 221
Issuing Country ... 222
Party BIC ... 221
Period from ... 221
Period to ... 221
Quantity Type ... 221
Securities Account ... 221
Security Type ... 221

safekeeping fees ... 212, 214
filter ... 217
monthly holdings volume by ISIN ... 220

Safekeeping Fees ... 215

save, button ... 22

SBLO (Reason Code)
Message Subscription Rule screen ... 251

screen section
Certificate Numbers ... 169
Linkages
Create Intra-Position Movement ... 129
Create Settlement Instruction ... 87
Use of Restrictions ... 87

search
allegements ... 184
step-by-step description ... 186
instruction for the decrease of a global certificate ... 171
instruction for the increase of a global certificate ... 171
instruction for the physical deposit of securities ... 171
instruction for the physical withdrawal of securities ... 171
intra-position movements ... 131
step-by-step description ... 140
message subscription ... 232
physical instructions ... 171
step-by-step description ... 173
settlement instructions ... 92
step-by-step description ... 101

Search (screen section)
Search Allegements screen ... 190
Search Intra-Position Movements screen ... 146
earch Physical Instructions screen ... 180
Search Settlement Instructions screen ... 109

Search Allegements ... 184

Search Allegements screen (fields)
Allegement Reference ... 190
Alleging Party BIC ... 192
Corporate Action Reference ... 190
Customer Reference ... 190
Delivering Depository BIC ... 193
Delivering Party BIC ... 193
Description (ISIN) ... 190
field next to Settlement Amount ... 191
field next to Settlement Quantity ... 191
Instruction Status ... 193
Instruction Type ... 191
Intended Settlement Date from ... 190
Intended Settlement Date to ... 190
ISIN ... 190
MITI ... 190
Quantity Type ... 191
Receiving Depository BIC ... 193
Receiving Party BIC ... 193
Securities Account ... 192
Settlement Amount Currency ... 191
Settlement Amount from ... 191
Settlement Amount to ... 191
Settlement Quantity from ... 191
Settlement Quantity to ... 191
Trade Date from ... 190
Trade Date to ... 190
Transaction Type ... 192

Search Allegements, menu item ... 184

search function ... 40

search functionality
search result lists ... 40
search template ... 43
template ... 43

Search Intra-Position Movements ... 131

Search Intra-Position Movements screen (fields)
Customer Reference ... 146
Description
ISIN ... 146
Desscription
Instructing Party BIC ... 147
Effective Settlement Date from ... 146
Effective Settlement Date to ... 146
field next to Settlement Quantity ... 147
Instructing Party BIC ... 147
Instruction Status ... 150
Intended Settlement Date from ... 146
Intended Settlement Date to ... 146
ISIN ... 146
MITI ... 146
Processing Status ... 151
Quantity Type ... 147
Restr. Type Balance From ... 148
Restr. Type Balance To ... 149
Restriction Reference ... 146
Securities Account ... 147
Settlement Quantity from ... 147
Settlement Quantity to ... 147
Settlement Status ... 151
Task Type ... 150

Search Intra-Position Movements, menu item ... 131

Search Message Subscription ... 232

Search Message Subscription screen (fields)
Destination BIC ... 235
Instructing Party BIC ... 235
Open Message Types ... 235
Party BIC ... 234
Securities Account ... 234

Search Physical Instruction screen (fields)
field next to Settlement Quantity ... 181

Search Physical Instructions ... 171

Search Physical Instructions screen (fields)
Customer Reference ... 180
Description
Instructing Party BIC ... 182
ISIN ... 181
Effective Settlement Date from ... 180
Effective Settlement Date to ... 180
Instructing Party BIC ... 182
Instruction Status ... 183
Instruction Type ... 182
Intended Settlement Date from ... 180
Intended Settlement Date to ... 180
ISIN ... 180
MITI ... 180
Quantity Type ... 181
Securities Account ... 182
Settlement Quantity from ... 181
Settlement Quantity to ... 181
Task Type ... 183
Trade Date from ... 180
Trade Date to ... 180

Search Physical Instructions, menu item **171**

search result list **40**

Search Settlement Instruction screen (fields)
field next to Settlement Amount 111

Search Settlement Instructions **92**

Search Settlement Instructions (fields)
field next to Settlement Quantity 111
Quantity Type 111
Settlement Amount from 111
Settlement Amount to 111
Settlement Quantity from 111
Settlement Quantity to 111

Search Settlement Instructions screen (fields)
Corporate Action Reference 109
CoSD Hold Status 115
CSD Hold Status 115
CSD Validation Hold Status 115
Customer Reference 109
Delivering Depository BIC 116
Delivering Party BIC 116
Description
Instructing Party BIC *113*
ISIN *110*
Effective Settlement Date from 110
Effective Settlement Date to 110
Instructing Party BIC 113
Instruction Status 114
Instruction Type 112
Intended Settlement Date from 110
Intended Settlement Date to 110
ISIN 110
Match Status 116
Matching Reference 109
MITI 109
Partial Settlement Ind. 117
Party Hold Status 114
Pending Reason Codes 115
Priority 117
Processing Status 115
Receiving Depository BIC 116
Receiving Party BIC 116
Securities Account 113
Settlement Amount Currency 111
Task Type 114
Trade Date from 110
Trade Date to 110
Transaction Type 113

Search Settlement Instructions, menu item **92**

search template **43**

search, button **22**

Sec. Acc. Category (field)
Securities Account Details screen 32

Sec. Acc. Type (field)
Securities Account Details screen 31

second person authorisation **35, 255**

Securities Account (Client of the Receiving/Delivering Party)
Create Settlement Instruction screen 81

Securities Account (field)
Cash Preview screen 204
Create Intra-Position Movement screen 125
Create Physical Instruction screen 167
Create Settlement Instruction screen 66
Edit Message Subscription screen 235
Four Eyes Principle screen 257
Message Subscription Rule screen 246
Safekeeping Fee Holdings screen 216
Safekeeping Fee Holdings Volume Details screen 221
Search Allegements screen 192
Search Intra-Position Movements screen 147
Search Message Subscription screen 234
Search Physical Instruments screen 182
Search Settlement Instructions screen 113
Securities Account Details screen 31
Securities Positions screen 198
Securities Posting Items screen 201
Statement of Holdings screen 207

Securities Account (Receiving/Delivering Party) (field)
Create Settlement Instruction screen 81

securities account detail view **29**

Securities Account Details **29**

Securities Account Details screen (fields)
Auto Receive (check box) 32
Auto-Collateralisation (Cash Account pop-up dialog) 33
Blocking Date from 32
Blocking Date to 32

Blocking Reason 32
Cash Account Number (Cash Account pop-up dialog)
..... 33
Cash Account Type (Cash Account pop-up dialog)
..... 33
Cash Collection (Cash Account pop-up dialog)
..... 33
Cash Settlement (Cash Account pop-up dialog)
..... 33
CCP.A Collateral (check box) 32
Closing Date 31
Currency (Cash Account pop-up dialog) 33
Default Instr. Format 32
Default Sec. Account (check box) 32
Description
Party BIC *31*
Securities Account *31*
Hold Claim Cash (check box) 32
Hold Claim Securities (check box) 32
Hold Default (check box) 32
Income Default (Cash Account pop-up dialog) . 33
Opening Date 31
Partial Settlement Default (check box) 32
Party BIC 31
Sec. Acc. Category 32
Sec. Acc. Type 31
Securities Account 31
Settlement Default (Cash Account pop-up dialog)
..... 33
Valid from (Cash Account pop-up dialog) 33
Valid to (Cash Account pop-up dialog) 33

Securities Account pop-up dialog (fields)
Auto-Collateralisation (check box) 33
Partial Settlement Default (check box) 33

securities account statement 206

Securities Cash Preview 203

Securities Positions 194

securities positions inquiry
by ISIN 196
by securities account 197

ecurities Positions screen (fields)
Date per 198
Description
ISIN *197*
Desscription
Party BIC *197*
Include Nil Securities Positions 198
ISIN 197
Party BIC 197
Securities Account 198

Securities Positions, menu item 194

Securities Posting Items 198

Securities Posting Items screen (fields)
Currency 201
Date from 202
Date to 202
Description
ISIN *201*
Party BIC *201*
Incl. Unmatched 202
ISIN 201
Party BIC 201
Purpose 201
Securities Account 201
Short only 202
Sum up 202

Securities Posting Items, menu item 198

Securities Settlement Transaction Generation Notification (field)
Message Subscription Rule screen 248, 253

Security Type (field)
Safekeeping Fee Holdings screen (search filter)
..... 219
Safekeeping Fee Holdings Volume Details screen
..... 221

Sequential Number (field)
Create Settlement Instruction screen (Linkages)
..... 90

SETR (Reason Code)
Message Subscription Rule screen 251

Settled Amount (field)
Create Settlement Instruction screen 72

Settled Quantity (field)
Create Intra-Position Movement screen 126
Create Settlement Instruction screen 69

Settlement Amount (field)
Create Settlement Instruction screen 69

Settlement Amount Currency (field)
Create Settlement Instruction screen 71
Search Allegements screen 191
Search Settlement Instructions screen 111

Settlement Amount from (field)
Search Allegements screen 191
Search Settlement Instructions screen 111

Settlement Amount to (field)
Search Allegements screen 191
Search Settlement Instructions screen 111

Settlement Client, definition 17

Settlement Default (field)
Cash Account pop-up dialog (Securities Account Details) 33

settlement instruction
cancel 103
copy 102
edit 95
edit (linkages) 100
entry 49
Additional Information 54
Instruction Details 49
linkages 61
restrictions 58, 60
Settlement Instruction Summary 57
Settlement Parties 52
Target Restriction Type 60
Use of Restrictions 58
Instruction History 107
modify 95
modify (linkages) 100
PDF download 106
refresh 108
search 92
step-by-step description 101
Settlement Instruction Summary 57
Status History 108

Settlement Instruction Summary 57

Settlement Parties (screen section)
Search Settlement Instructions screen 116

Settlement Parties (step)
Create Settlement Instruction
field descriptions 77
step-by-step description 52

Settlement Quantity (field)
Create Intra-Position Movement screen 126
Create Settlement Instruction screen 68

Settlement Quantity from (field)
Search Allegements screen 191
Search Intra-Position Movements screen 147
Search Physical Instructions screen 181
Search Settlement Instructions screen 111

Settlement Quantity to (field)
Search Allegements screen 191
Search Intra-Position Movements screen 147
Search Physical Instructions screen 181
Search Settlement Instructions screen 111

Settlement Status (field)
Create Settlement Instruction screen 74
Search Intra-Position Movements screen 151

Settlement, menu item 48, 118, 152, 184

Short only (field)
Securities Posting Items screen 202

show update, button 22

ort order icon 24

Statement of Holdings 206

Statement of Holdings screen (fields)
Date per 207
Description (Party BIC) 207
Party BIC 207
Securities Account 207

Statement of Holdings, menu item 206

status (task list)

approval rejected ... 37
failed ... 37
rejected ... 37

Status Advices (screen section)
Message Subscription Rule screen
rule type Allegement ... 252
rule type Intra-Position Movement ... 251
rule type OCSD Settlement Instruction ... 254
rule type Settlement Instruction ... 249

Status History
allegement ... 188
intra-position movement ... 144
physical instruction ... 178
settlement instruction ... 108

step-by-step descriptions, general information ... 15

Subscription Rules (list)
Edit Message Subscription screen ... 236

Sum up (field)
Securities Posting Items screen ... 202

T

T2S Account Number (field)
Edit Message Subscription ... 236

T2S Status Criteria (screen section)
Search Allegements screen ... 193
Search Intra-Position Movements screen ... 151
Search Settlement Instructions screen ... 114

T2S Status Information (screen section)
Create Settlement Instruction, step 1 ... 73
Edit Settlement Instruction, step 1 ... 73
Intra-Position Movement Details ... 129
Settlement Instruction Details, step 1 ... 73

table icon ... 25
with magnifier ... 25

Target Restriction Type (field)
Create Settlement Instruction screen ... 86

task box ... 35

task list
alert reason
pending ... 39
open tasks ... 36
status
approval rejected ... 37
failed ... 37
rejected ... 37

Task Type (field)
Create Settlement Instruction screen ... 76
Search Intra-Position Movements screen ... 150
Search Physical Instructions screen ... 183
Search Settlement Instructions screen ... 114

Taskbox
release ... 35

Tasks waiting for approval ... 35

Tasks waiting to process ... 35, 36

templates ... 43
button ... 22

tick ... 20

tick, double ... 25

tip box ... 15

To Certificate No. (field)
Create Physical Instruction screen (Certificate Numbers) ... 171

top, function link ... 25

Total Number (field)
Create Settlement Instruction screen (Linkages) ... 90

Trade Date (field)
Create Settlement Instruction screen ... 72

Trade Date from (field)
Search Allegements screen ... 190
Search Physical Instructions screen ... 180
Search Settlement Instructions screen ... 110

Trade Date to (field)
Search Allegements screen ... 190
Search Physical Instructions screen ... 180
Search Settlement Instructions screen ... 110

Trade Transaction Condition (field)
Create Settlement Instruction screen ... 85

Transaction Confirmation (field)
Message Subscription Rule screen ... 251, 254

transaction fees ... 222

Transaction Fees screen (fields)
Description
Party BIC ... *224*
Description ... 224
Party BIC ... 224
Period from ... 224
Period to ... 224

Transaction Status Advice (field)
Message Subscription Rule screen ... 249, 254

Transaction Type (field)
Create Settlement Instruction screen ... 65
Search Allegements screen ... 192
Search Settlement Instructions screen ... 113

Transaction Types (field)
Message Subscription Rule screen ... 247, 253

two ticks ... 25

Typographic Conventions ... 16

*

* symbol ... 18

<

< remove, button ... 22

4

4-eyes principle ... 35, 255

A

A icon ... 24

abort, button ... 20

Accepted (field)
Message Subscription Rule screen (Transaction Status Advice) ... 249, 254

access rights ... 259

active field ... 19

add >, button ... 20

Add Delivering Party (field)
Create Settlement Instruction screen
Delivery Instructions, Payment Credit ... *77*
Receive Instructions, Payment Debit ... *84*

Add Receiving Party (field)
Create Settlement Instruction screen
Delivery Instructions, Payment Credit ... *83*
Receive Instructions, Payment Debit ... *78*

add, button ... 20

Additional Details (field)
Create Physical Instruction screen ... 169

Additional Information (field)
Create Settlement Instruction screen
CSD Hold Status ... *74*
OeKB CSD Status ... *76*
Party Hold Status ... *73*
Reason Code ... *74*

Additional Information (Reason Code) (field)
Create Intra-Position Movement screen ... 130
Create Physical Instruction screen ... 169
Create Settlement Instruction screen ... 74

Additional Information (step)
Create Settlement Instruction
field descriptions ... *84*
step-by-step description ... *56*

Administration, menu item ... 232, 255

administrator ... 266

alert reason (task list)
pending ... 39

allegement
generate counter instruction ... 186
Instruction History ... 188
refresh ... 189
search ... 184
step-by-step description ... *186*
Status History ... 188

Allegement Cancellation Advice (field)
Message Subscription Rule screen ... 252

Allegement Notification (field)
Message Subscription Rule screen 252

Allegement Reference (field)
Search Allegements screen 190

Allegement Removal Advice (field)
Message Subscription Rule screen 252

Alleging Party BIC (field)
Search Allegements screen 192

angle bracket with biro 25

approval 35
approval rejected 37

approve, button 20

arrow between horizontal lines 24

arrow pointing down between horizontal lines 24

arrow pointing up with line on top 24

arrow with double line on top 24

authorisation
4-Eyes Principle 255

Auto Receive (field)
Securities Account Details screen 32

Auto-Collateralisation (field)
Cash Account pop-up dialog (Securities Account Details) 33

Avg. Value/Nominal (EUR) (field)
Safekeeping Fee Holdings Volume Details screen 222

Avg. Value/Nominal from (field)
Safekeeping Fee Holdings screen (search filter) 218

Avg. Value/Nominal to (field)
Safekeeping Fee Holdings screen (search filter) 218

B

back, button 20

back, function link
detail view 25
Edit screens 25
search result list 25

Beneficiary Account (field)
Create Physical Instruction screen 166

Beneficiary BIC (field)
Create Physical Instruction screen 166

BIC (field)
Create Settlement Instruction screen
Client of the Delivering Party 81
Client of the Receiving Party 81
Delivering Party 80
Depository of the Delivering Party 79
Depository of the Receiving Party 79
Receiving Party 80

billing 210

Billing
user role 266

Billing, menu item 208

biro icon 23, 25

BLOC (Reason Code)
Message Subscription Rule screen 249

Blocking Date from (field)
Securities Account Details screen 32

Blocking Date to (field)
Securities Account Details screen 32

Blocking Reason (field)
Securities Account Details screen 32

Booking Timestamp (field)
Create Settlement Instruction screen 73

box with 2 ticks 25

Branch (field)
Edit Message Subscription screen 236

bulk physical deposit 155

bulk physical deposit advice note 159

Bulk Physical Deposit, button 20

bullet points icon 24, 25, 28

button
- < remove 22
- abort 20
- add 20
- add > 20
- approve 20
- back 20
- Bulk Physical Deposit 20
- cancel 21
- cancel instruction 21
- close 21
- create copy 21
- delete 21
- edit 21
- Excel download 21
- filter 21
- hide update 21
- next 21
- no 21
- ok 22
- PDF download 22
- refresh 22
- reject 22
- remove 22
- reset 22
- save 22
- search 22
- show update 22
- templates 22
- yes 22

C

Calendar icon 22

cancel
- intra-position movement 142
- physical instruction 174
- settlement instruction 103

cancel instruction, button 21

cancel, button 21

Cancellation Requested (field)
- Create Settlement Instruction screen 75
- Message Subscription Rule screen (Transaction Status Advice) 249, 254

Cancellation Status Advice (field)
- Message Subscription Rule screen 251, 254

Cancelled (field)
- Message Subscription Rule screen (Transaction Status Advice) 249, 254

CANI (Reason Code)
- Message Subscription Rule screen 249

CANS (Reason Code)
- Message Subscription Rule screen 249

CASH (Reason Code)
- Message Subscription Rule screen 249

Cash Account (field)
- Cash Preview screen 204
- Create Settlement Instruction screen 67

Cash Account Number (field)
- Cash Account pop-up dialog (Securities Account Details) 33

Cash Account pop-up dialog (fields)
- Cash Account Number 33
- Cash Account Type 33
- Cash Collection (check box) 33
- Cash Settlement (check box) 33
- Currency 33
- Income Default (check box) 33
- Valid from 33
- Valid to 33

Cash Account pop-up dialog (Securities Account Details screen) 29

Cash Account Type (field)
- Cash Account pop-up dialog (Securities Account Details) 33

cash accounts of a securities account 29

Cash Collection (field)
- Cash Account pop-up dialog (Securities Account Details) 33

cash movements 203

cash preview 203

Cash Preview 203

Cash Preview screen (fields)
Cash Account ... 204
Currency ... 205
Description (Party BIC) ... 204
Incl. Unmatched ... 205
Intended Settlement Date from ... 205
Intended Settlement Date to ... 205
Party BIC ... 204
Purpose ... 205
Securities Account ... 204

Cash Preview, menu item ... 203

Cash Settlement (field)
Cash Account pop-up dialog (Securities Account Details) ... 33

CCP.A Collateral (field)
Securities Account Details screen ... 32

CDLR (Reason Code)
Message Subscription Rule screen ... 249

Certificate Numbers (screen section)
Create Physical Instruction screen ... 169

chapter overview ... 13

check box ... 20

CLAC ... 35

CLAC (reason code)
pending reason code ... 35

CLAC (Reason Code)
Message Subscription Rule screen ... 249

Client of the Delivering Party (screen section)
Create Settlement Instruction, step 2 ... 81
Edit Settlement Instruction, step 2 ... 81

Client of the Receiving Party (screen section)
Create Settlement Instruction, step 2 ... 81
Edit Settlement Instruction, step 2 ... 81

close application ... 18

close, button ... 21

Closing Date (field)
Securities Account Details screen ... 31

CMON ... 35

CMON (reason code)
pending reason code ... 35

CMON (Reason Code)
Message Subscription Rule screen ... 249

collection fees ... 225

Collection Fees screen (fields)
Description
Party BIC ... 227
Description ... 227
Party BIC ... 227
Period from ... 227
Period to ... 227

Common Reference (field)
Create Settlement Instruction screen ... 86

communication fees ... 227

Communication Fees screen (fields)
Description ... 229
Party BIC ... 229
Party BIC ... 229
Period from ... 229
Period to ... 229

Confirmations (screen section)
Message Subscription Rule screen
rule type Intra-Position Movement ... 252
rule type OCSD Settlement Instruction ... 254
rule type Settlement Instruction ... 251

contact ... 26

copy
intra-position movement ... 140
physical instruction ... 173
settlement instruction ... 102

Corporate Action Reference (field)
Create Settlement Instruction screen ... 66
Search Allegements screen ... 190
Search Settlement Instructions screen ... 109

CoSD Hold Status (field)
Search Settlement Instructions screen ... 115

counter instruction ... 186

create copy, button **21**

Create Intra-Position Movement **118**

Create Intra-Position Movement screen (fields)
Additional Information
Reason Code *130*
Creation Time
OeKB CSD Status *130*
Customer Reference 124
Description
Instructing Party BIC *125*
ISIN *126*
Securities Account *125*
Effective Settlement Date 127
field next to Settlement Quantity 126
Instructing Party BIC 125
Instruction Status 130
Intended Settlement Date 126
ISIN 126
Linkages (screen section) 129
MITI 125
Priority 127
Processing Status 129
Quantity Type (field next to Settlement Quantity) 126
Reason Code
Processing Status *130*
Request Party BIC 130
Request User 130
Restr. Type Balance From 127
Restr. Type Balance To 128
Restriction Reference
Restr. Type Balance From *128*
Restr. Type Balance To *129*
Securities Account 125
Settled Quantity 126
Settlement Quantity 126
User Request Status 131
User Request Type 131

Create Intra-Position Movement, menu item **118**

Create Physical Instruction **152**

Create Physical Instruction screen (fields)
Additional Details 169
Additional Information
Reason Code *169*
Beneficiary Account 166
Beneficiary BIC 166
Certificate Numbers 169
Creation Time
OeKB CSD Status *170*
Customer Reference 165
Denomination, Certificate Numbers (pop-up dialog) 171
Description
Beneficiary BIC *166*
Instructing Party BIC *165*
ISIN *168*
Request Party BIC *170*
Request User *170*
Securities Account *167*
Effective Settlement Date 168
field next to Quantity 168
From Certificate No., Certificate Numbers (pop-up dialog) 170
Individual Custody 168
Instructing Party BIC 165
Instruction Status 169
Instruction Type 165
Intended Settlement Date 168
ISIN 167
MITI 165
Processing Status 169
Quantity 168
Quantity Type (field next to Quantity) 168
Reason Code
Processing Status *169*
Represented as 169
Securities Account 167
To Certificate No., Certificate Numbers (pop-up dialog) 171
User Request Status 170
User Request Type 170

Create Physical Instruction, menu item **152**

Create Physical Instructions screen (fields)
Represented as 181

Create Settlement Instruction **48**

Create Settlement Instruction Maske (Felder)
Description
Instructing Party BIC *88*
Restriction References, Use of Restrictions (Maskenbereich) 88
Restriction Type, Use of Restrictions (Maskenbereich) 88
Use of Restrictions (Maskenbereich)
Restriction References *88*
Restriction Type *88*

Create Settlement Instruction screen (fields)

Add Delivering Party
Delivery Instructions, Payment Credit ... *77*
Receive Instructions, Payment Debit ... *84*
Add Receiving Party
Delivery Instructions, Payment Credit ... *83*
Receive Instructions, Payment Debit ... *78*
Additional Information
CSD Hold Status ... *74*
Party Hold Status ... *73*
Reason Code ... *74*
Additional Information (OeKB CSD Status) ... 76
BIC
Client of the Delivering Party ... *81*
Client of the Receiving Party ... *81*
Delivering Party ... *80*
Depository of the Delivering Party ... *79*
Depository of the Receiving Party ... *79*
Receiving Party ... *80*
Booking Timestamp ... 73
Cancellation Requested ... 75
Cash Account ... 67
Common Reference ... 86
Corporate Action Reference ... 66
Creation Time
OeKB CSD Status ... *75*
Open Task ... *76*
CSD Hold Status ... 74
Description
BIC
Client of the Delivering Party ... 81
Client of the Receiving Party ... 81
BIC (Delivering Party) ... *80*
BIC (Depository of the Delivering Party) ... *79*
BIC (Depository of the Receiving Party) ... *79*
BIC (Receiving Party) ... *80*
Instructing Party BIC ... *66*
ISIN ... *68*
Reference Owner BIC (Linkages pop-up dialog) ... *92*
Securities Account ... *67*
Securities Account (Delivering Party) ... *81*
Securities Account (Receiving Party) ... *81*
Effective Settlement Date ... 73
field next to Settlement Amount ... 71
field next to Settlement Quantity ... 69
Instructing Party BIC ... 66
Instruction Status ... 75
Instruction Type ... 65
Intended Settlement Date ... 73
Linkage Type, Linkages (pop-up dialog) ... 91
Linkages (pop-up dialog)
Description (Reference Owner BIC) ... *92*
Linkage Type ... *91*
Reference ... *91*
Reference Owner BIC ... *92*
Reference Type ... *91*
Linkages (screen section) ... 87
Sequential Number ... *90*
Total Number ... *90*
Match Status ... 75
Matching Reference ... 66
Name and Address ... 82
Narrative Trade Details ... 86
Opt-out Indicator ... 86
Partial Settlement Ind. ... 85
Party BIC ... 76
Party Hold Status ... 73
Priority ... 84
Processing Status ... 74, 130
Processing User ... 77
Proprietary Identification ... 82
Proprietary Issuer ... 82
Proprietary Scheme Name ... 83
Quantity Type (field next to Settlement Quantity) ... 69
Reason Code
Settlement Status ... *74*
Reasong code
Processing Status ... *74*
Reference Owner BIC, Linkages (pop-up dialog) ... 92
Reference Type, Linkages (pop-up dialog) ... 91
Reference, Linkages (pop-up dialog) ... 91
Request Party BIC ... 75
Request User ... 75
Restriction References, Use of Restrictions (screen section) ... 90
Restriction Type, Use of Restrictions (screen section) ... 89
Securities Account ... 66
Client of the Delivering Party ... *81*
Client of the Receiving Party ... *81*
Delivering Party ... *81*
Receiving Party ... *81*
Sequential Number, Linkages (screen section) ... 90
Settled Amount ... 72
Settled Quantity ... 69
Settlement Amount ... 69
Settlement Amount Currency ... 71

Settlement Quantity ... 68
Settlement Status ... 74
Target Restriction Type ... 86
Task Type ... 76
Total Number, Linkages (screen section) ... 90
Trade Date ... 72
Trade Transaction Condition ... 85
Transaction Type ... 65
Use of Restrictions ... 87
Use of Restrictions (screen section)
Restriction References ... 90
Restriction Type ... 89
User Request Status ... 76
User Request Type ... 76

Create Settlement Instruction, menu item ... 48

Create Settlement Restriction screen (fields)
Customer Reference ... 65
ISIN ... 68
MITI ... 66

Creation Time (field)
Create Intra-Position Movement screen
OeKB CSD Status (screen section) ... 130
Create Physical Instruction screen
OeKB CSD Status (screen section) ... 170
Create Settlement Instruction screen
OeKB CSD Status (screen section) ... 75
Open Task (screen section) ... 76

Criteria (screen section)
Search Allegements screen ... 190
Search Intra-Position Movements screen ... 146
Search Physical Instructions screen ... 180
Search Settlement Instructions screen ... 110

CSD Hold Status (field)
Create Settlement Instruction screen ... 74
Search Settlement Instructions screen ... 115

CSD Validation Hold Status (field)
Search Settlement Instructions screen ... 115

CSDH (Reason Code)
Message Subscription Rule screen ... 249

CTHP (Reason Code)
Message Subscription Rule screen ... 249

Currency (field)
Cash Account pop-up dialog (Securities Account Details) ... 33
Cash Preview screen ... 205
Securities Posting Items screen ... 201

Custodian (field)
Safekeeping Fee Holdings screen (search filter) 219
Safekeeping Fee Holdings Volume Details screen ... 222

Custody Type (field)
Safekeeping Fee Holdings screen (search filter) 218
Safekeeping Fee Holdings Volume Details screen ... 222

Customer Invoice Details screen (fields)
Description (Party BIC) ... 212
Party BIC ... 212
Period from ... 212
Period to ... 212

Customer Invoices ... 210

Customer Invoices screen (fields)
Period from ... 211
Period to ... 211

Customer Invoices, menu item ... 210

Customer Reference (field)
Create Intra-Position Movement screen ... 124
Create Physical Instruction screen ... 165
Create Settlement Instruction screen ... 65
Search Allegements screen ... 190
Search Intra-Position Movements screen ... 146
Search Physical Instructions screen ... 180
Search Settlement Instructions screen ... 109

CVAL (Reason Code)
Message Subscription Rule screen ... 249

D

date field ... 19

Date from (field)
Securities Posting Items screen ... 202

Date per (field)

Securities Positions screen 198
Statement of Holdings screen 207

Date to (field)
Securities Posting Items screen 202

DDAT (Reason Code)
Message Subscription Rule screen 250

decimal places 19

Default Instr. Format (field)
Securities Account Details screen 32

Default Sec. Account (field)
Securities Account Details screen 32

delete
intra-position movement ..... *see* cancel
Message Subscription Rule 238
physical instruction ..... *see* cancel
settlement instruction ..... *see* cancel

delete, button 21

Delivering Depository BIC (field)
Search Allegements screen 193
Search Settlement Instructions screen 116

Delivering Party (screen section)
Create Settlement Instruction, step 2 80
Edit Settlement Instruction, step 2 80

Delivering Party BIC (field)
Search Allegements screen 193
Search Settlement Instructions screen 116

Delivery Free of Payment 48

Delivery versus Payment 48

Delivery with Payment 48

Denomination (field)
Create Physical Instruction screen (Certificate Numbers) 171

deposit advice note
bulk physical deposit 159

Depository of the Delivering Party (screen section)
Create Settlement Instruction, step 2 79
Edit Settlement Instruction, step 2 79

Depository of the Receiving Party (screen section)
Create Settlement Instruction, step 2 79
Edit Settlement Instruction, step 2 79

DEPT (Reason Code)
Message Subscription Rule screen 250

Description (Feld)
Create Settlement Instruction Maske
Instructing Party BIC 88

Description (field)
Cash Preview screen
Party BIC 204
Collection Fees screen
Party BIC 227
Collection Fees screen 227
Communication Fees screen 229
Party BIC 229
Create Intra-Position Movement screen
Instructing Party BIC 125
ISIN 126
Securities Account 125
Create Physical Instruction screen
Beneficiary BIC 166
Instructing Party BIC 165
ISIN 168
Securities Account 167
Create Settlement Instruction screen
BIC (Client of the Delivering Party) 81
BIC (Client of the Receiving Party) 81
BIC (Delivering Party) 80
BIC (Depository of the Delivering Party) 79
BIC (Depository of the Receiving Party) 79
BIC (Receiving Party) 80
Instructing Party BIC 66
ISIN 68
Reference Owner BIC (Linkages pop-up dialog) 92
Securities Account 67
Securities Account (Delivering Party) 81
Securities Account (Receiving Party) 81
Customer Invoice Details
Party BIC 212
Edit Message Subscription screen
Party BIC 235
Four Eyes Principle screen
Securities Account 257
Message Subscription Rule screen

Party BIC ... *246*
Safekeeping Fee Holdings screen ... 216
ISIN (search filter) ... *217*
Party BIC ... *216*
Securities Account ... *216*
Safekeeping Fee Holdings Volume Details screen ... 221
Custodian ... *222*
ISIN ... *221*
Party BIC ... *221*
Securities Account ... *221*
Search Allegements screen
ISIN ... *190*
Search Intra-Position Movements screen
Instructing Party BIC ... *147*
ISIN ... *146*
Search Physical Instructions screen
Instructing Party BIC ... *182*
ISIN ... *181*
Search Settlement Instructions screen
Instructing Party BIC ... *113*
ISIN ... *110*
Securities Account Details screen
Securities Account ... *31*
Securities Positions screen
ISIN ... *197*
Party BIC ... *197*
Securities Posting Items screen
ISIN ... *201*
Party BIC ... *201*
Statement of Holdings screen
Party BIC ... *207*
Transaction Fees screen
Party BIC ... *224*
Transaction Fees screen ... 224
User Portal Fees screen
Party BIC ... *231*

Destination BIC (field)
Edit Message Subscription screen ... 235
Message Subscription Rule screen ... 246
Search Message Subscription screen ... 235

details icon ... **24**

DFP - Delivery Free of Payment ... **48**

DFP (field)
Four Eyes Principle screen ... 257

disc icon ... **24**

display field ... **19**

display icon ... **24**

display of securities positions ... **194**

display of securities posting items ... **198**

DMON (Reason Code)
Message Subscription Rule screen ... 250

double line with arrow pointing up ... **24**

double tick ... **25**

download ... **46**
Excel ... 46
PDF ... 46

DQVA (Reason Code)
Message Subscription Rule screen ... 250

dropdown field ... **19**

DSEC (Reason Code)
Message Subscription Rule screen ... 250

DTRD (Reason Code)
Message Subscription Rule screen ... 250

DVP - Delivery versus Payment ... **48**

DVP (field)
Four Eyes Principle screen ... 257

DWP - Delivery with Payment ... **48**

DWP (field)
Four Eyes Principle screen ... 257

E

edit
intra-position movement ... 133
linkages (settlement instruction) ... 100
Message Subscription ... 233, 236
settlement instruction ... 95

edit icon ... **25**

Edit Message Subscription screen (fields)
Branch ... 236
Description (Party BIC) ... 235
Destiination BIC ... 235
Instruction Format ... 236
Party BIC ... 235

Securities Account ... 235
Subscription Rules ... 236
T2S Account Number ... 236

edit, button ... 21

Effective Settlement Date (field)
Create Intra-Position Movement screen ... 127
Create Physical Instruction screen ... 168
Create Settlement Instruction screen ... 73

Effective Settlement Date from (field)
Search Intra-Position Movements screen ... 146
Search Physical Instructions screen ... 180
Search Settlement Instructions screen ... 110

Effective Settlement Date to (field)
Search Intra-Position Movements screen ... 146
Search Physical Instructions screen ... 180
Search Settlement Instructions screen ... 110

entry page ... 26

Excel ... 46
download ... 46

Excel download
button ... 21

extended list view ... 41

extended search results ... 41

F

failed ... 37

fees ... 210

fees list ... 212

Feld
Description (Instructing Party BIC)
Create Settlement Instruction ... 88
Restriction References
Use of Restrictions ... 88
Restriction Type
Use of Restrictions ... 88

field
Accepted (Transaction Status Advice)
Message Subscription Rules, Settlement Instruction ... 249, 254
Add Delivering Party
Create Settlement Instruction ... 77, 84
Add Receiving Party
Create Settlement Instruction ... 78, 83
Additional Details
Create Physical Instruction ... 169
Additional Information
Create Intra-Position Movement
Reason Code ... 130
Create Physical Instruction
Reason Code ... 169
Create Settlement Instruction
CSD Hold Status ... 74
Party Hold Status ... 73
Reason Code ... 74
Additional Information (OeKB CSD Status)
Create Settlement Instruction ... 76
Allegement Cancellation Advice
Message Subscription Rules ... 252
Allegement Notification
Message Subscription Rules ... 252
Allegement Reference
Search Allegements ... 190
Allegement Removal Advice
Message Subscription Rules ... 252
Alleging Party BIC
Search Allegements ... 192
Auto Receive
Securities Account Details ... 32
Auto-Collateralisation
Cash Account pop-up dialog (Securities Account Details) ... 33
Avg. Value/Nominal
from (Safekeeping Fee Holdings search filter) ... 218
to (Safekeeping Fee Holdings search filter) ... 218
to (Safekeeping Fee Holdings Volume Details) ... 222
Beneficiary Account
Create Physical Instruction ... 166
Beneficiary BIC
Create Physical Instruction ... 166
BIC

Client of the Delivering Party, Create Settlement Instruction ... 81
Client of the Receiving Party, Create Settlement Instruction ... 81
Delivering Party, Create Settlement Instruction ... 80
Depository of the Delivering Party, Create Settlement Instruction ... 79
Depository of the Receiving Party, Create Settlement Instruction ... 79
Receiving Party, Create Settlement Instruction ... 80
Blocking Date from
Securities Account Details ... 32
Blocking Date to
Securities Account Details ... 32
Blocking Reason
Securities Account Details ... 32
Booking Timestamp
Create Settlement Instruction ... 73
Branch
Edit Message Subscription ... 236
Cancellation Requested
Create Settlement Instruction ... 75
Cancellation Requested (Transaction Status Advice)
Message Subscription Rules, Settlement Instruction ... 249, 254
Cancellation Status Advice
Message Subscription Rules, OCSD Settlement Instruction ... 254
Message Subscription Rules, Settlement Instruction ... 251
Cancelled (Transaction Status Advice)
Message Subscription Rules, Settlement Instruction ... 249, 254
Cash Account
Cash Preview ... 204
Create Settlement Instruction ... 67
Cash Account Number
Cash Account pop-up dialog (Securities Account Details) ... 33
Cash Account Type
Cash Account pop-up dialog (Securities Account Details) ... 33
Cash Collection
Cash Account pop-up dialog (Securities Account Details) ... 33
Cash Settlement
Cash Account pop-up dialog (Securities Account Details) ... 33
CCP.A Collateral
Securities Account Details ... 32
Certificate Numbers
Create Physical Instruction ... 169
check box ... 20
Closing Date
Securities Account Details ... 31
Corporate Action Reference
Create Settlement Instruction ... 66
Search Allegements ... 190
Search Settlement Instructions ... 109
CoSD Hold Status
Search Settlement Instructions ... 115
Creation Time
Create Intra-Position Movement (OeKB CSD Status) ... 130
Create Physical Instruction (OeKB CSD Status) ... 170
Create Settlement Instruction (OeKB CSD Status) ... 75
Create Settlement Instruction (Open Task) ... 76
CSD Hold Status
Create Settlement Instruction ... 74
Search Settlement Instructions ... 115
CSD Validation Hold Status
Search Settlement Instructions ... 115
Currency
Cash Account pop-up dialog (Securities Account Details) ... 33
Cash Preview ... 205

Securities Posting Items *201*
Custodian
Safekeeping Fee Holdings search filter *219*
Safekeeping Fee Holdings Volume Details *222*
Custody Type
Safekeeping Fee Holdings search filter *218*
Safekeeping Fee Holdings Volume Details *222*
Customer Reference
Create Intra-Position Movement *124*
Create Physical Instruction *165*
Create Settlement Instruction *65, 86*
Search Allegements *190*
Search Intra-Position Movements *146*
Search Physical Instructions *180*
Search Settlement Instructions *109*
date field 19
Date from
Securities Posting Items *202*
Date per
Securities Positions *198*
Statement of Holdings *207*
Date to
Securities Posting Items *202*
Default Instr. Format
Securities Account Details *32*
Default Sec. Account
Securities Account Details *32*
Delivering Depository BIC
Search Allegements *193*
Search Settlement Instructions *116*
Delivering Party BIC
Search Allegements *193*
Search Settlement Instructions *116*
Denomination
Certificate Numbers *171*
Description
Collection Fees *227*
Communication Fees *229*
Safekeeping Fee Holdings *216*
Safekeeping Fee Holdings Volume Details *221*
Transaction Fees *224*
Description (Beneficiary BIC)
Create Physical Instruction *166*
Description (BIC, Client of the Receiving/Delivering Party)
Create Settlement Instruction *81*
Description (BIC, Delivering/Receiving Party)
Create Settlement Instruction *80*
Description (BIC, Depository of the Delivering/Receiving Party)
Create Settlement Instruction *79*
Description (Custodian)
Safekeeping Fee Holdings Volume Details *222*
Description (Instructing Party BIC)
Create Intra-Position Movement *125*
Create Physical Instruction *165*
Create Settlement Instruction *66*
Search Intra-Position Movements *147*
Search Physical Instructions *182*
Search Settlement Instructions *113*
Description (ISIN)
Create Intra-Position Movement *126*
Create Physical Instruction *168*
Create Settlement Instruction *68*
Safekeeping Fee Holdings search filter *217*
Safekeeping Fee Holdings Volume Details *221*
Search Allegements *190*
Search Intra-Position Movements *146*
Search Physical Instructions *181*
Search Settlement Instructions *110*
Securities Positions *197*
Securities Posting Items *201*
Description (Party BIC)
Cash Preview *204*
Collection Fees *227*
Communication Fees *229*
Customer Invoice Details *212*
Message Subscription Rules *246*
Safekeeping Fee Holdings *216*
Safekeeping Fee Holdings Volume Details *221*
Search Message Subscription *235*
Securities Account Details *31*
Securities Positions *197*
Securities Posting Items *201*
Statement of Holdings *207*
Transaction Fees *224*
User Portal Fees *231*

Description (Reference Owner BIC), Linkages 92
Description (Securities Account)
Create Intra-Position Movement *125*
Create Physical Instruction *167*
Create Settlement Instruction *67*
Four Eyes Principle *257*
Safekeeping Fee Holdings *216*
Safekeeping Fee Holdings Volume Details *221*
Securities Account Details *31*
Description (Securities Account, Receiving/Delivering Party)
Create Settlement Instruction *81*
Destination BIC
Edit Message Subscription *235*
Message Subscription Rules *246*
Search Message Subscription *235*
DFP
Four Eyes Principle *257*
disabled field 19
display field 19
dropdown field 19
DVP
Four Eyes Principle *257*
DWP
Four Eyes Principle *257*
Effective Settlement Date
Create Intra-Position Movement *127*
Create Physical Instruction *168*
Create Settlement Instruction *73*
Effective Settlement Date from
Search Intra-Position Movements *146*
Search Physical Instructions *180*
Search Settlement Instructions *110*
Effective Settlement Date to
Search Intra-Position Movements *146*
Search Physical Instructions *180*
Search Settlement Instructions *110*
field next to Settlement Amount
Create Settlement Instruction *71*
Search Allegements *191*
Search Settlement Instructions *111*
From Certificate No.
Certificate Numbers *170*
Hold Claim Cash
Securities Account Details *32*
Hold Claim Securities
Securities Account Details *32*
Hold Default
Securities Account Details *32*
Holding Fee
Safekeeping Fee Holdings Volume Details *222*
Incl. Unmatched
Cash Preview *205*
Securities Posting Items *202*
Include Nil Securities Positions
Securities Positions *198*
Income Default
Cash Account pop-up dialog (Securities Account Details) *33*
input field 19
Instructing Party BIC
Create Intra-Position Movement *125*
Create Physical Instruction *165*
Create Settlement Instruction *66*
Search Intra-Position Movements *147*
Search Message Subscription *235*
Search Physical Instructions *182*
Search Settlement Instructions *113*
Instructing Party BICs
Message Subscription Rules *246, 251*
Instruction Format
Edit Message Subscription *236*
Instruction Status
Create Intra-Position Movement *130*
Create Physical Instruction *169*
Create Settlement Instruction *75*
Search Allegements *193*
Search Intra-Position Movements *150*
Search Physical Instructions *183*
Search Settlement Instructions *114*
Instruction Type
Create Physical Instruction *165*
Create Settlement Instruction *65*
Search Allegements *191*
Search Physical Instructions *182*
Search Settlement Instructions *112*
Instruction Types
Message Subscription Rules *246, 252*
Intended Settlement Date
Create Intra-Position Movement *126*
Create Physical Instruction *168*
Create Settlement Instruction *73*
Intended Settlement Date from
Cash Preview *205*
Search Allegements *190*
Search Intra-Position Movements *146*
Search Physical Instructions *180*
Search Settlement Instructions *110*
Intended Settlement Date to
Cash Preview *205*

Search Allegements *190*
Search Intra-Position Movements *146*
Search Physical Instructions *180*
Search Settlement Instructions *110*
Intra-Position Movement
Four Eyes Principle *257*
Intra-Position Movement Confirmation
Message Subscription Rules *252*
Intra-Position Movement Status Advice
Message Subscription Rules *251*
ISIN
Create Intra-Position Movement *126*
Create Physical Instruction *167*
Create Settlement Instruction *68*
Safekeeping Fee Holdings search filter *217*
Safekeeping Fee Holdings Volume Details .. *221*
Search Allegements *190*
Search Intra-Position Movements *146*
Search Physical Instructions *180*
Search Settlement Instructions *110*
Securities Positions *197*
Securities Posting Items *201*
ISIN field 19
Issuing Country
Safekeeping Fee Holdings search filter *219*
Safekeeping Fee Holdings Volume Details .. *222*
Linkage Type
Linkages *91*
Linkages
Create Intra-Position Movement *129*
Create Settlement Instruction *87*
Match Status
Create Settlement Instruction *75*
Search Settlement Instructions *116*
Matched (Transaction Status Advice)
Message Subscription Rules, Settlement Instruction *249, 254*
Matching Reference
Create Settlement Instruction *66*
Search Settlement Instructions *109*
MITI
Create Intra-Position Movement *125*
Create Physical Instruction *165*
Create Settlement Instruction *66*
Search Allegements *190*
Search Intra-Position Movements *146*
Search Physical Instructions *180*
Search Settlement Instructions *109*
Modification Status Advice
Message Subscription Rules, OCSD Settlement Instruction *254*
Message Subscription Rules, Settlement Instruction *251*
MT508/semt.015
Message Subscription Rules *252*
MT544/MT545/MT546/MT547/sese.025
Message Subscription Rules
OCSD Settlement Instruction 254
Settlement Instruction 251
MT548/semt.014
Message Subscription Rules *251*
MT548/sese.024
Message Subscription Rules
OCSD Settlement Instruction 254
Settlement Instruction 249
MT548/sese.027
Message Subscription Rules *254*
Settlement Instruction 251
MT548/sese.031
Message Subscription Rules
OCSD Settlement Instruction 254
Settlement Instruction 251
MT548/sese.032
Message Subscription Rules
OCSD Settlement Instruction 253
Settlement Instruction 248
MT578/semt.020
Message Subscription Rules *252*
MT578/sese.028
Message Subscription Rules *252*
MT578/sese.029
Message Subscription Rules *252*
Name and Address
Create Settlement Instruction *82*
Narrative Trade Details
Create Settlement Instruction *86*
numeric field 19
Open Message Types
Search Message Subscription *235*
Opening Date
Securities Account Details *31*
Opt-out Indicator
Create Settlement Instruction *86*
Partial Settlement Default
Securities Account Details *32*
Partial Settlement Ind.

Create Settlement Instruction 85
Search Settlement Instructions 117
Party BIC
Cash Preview 204
Collection Fees 227
Communication Fees 229
Create Settlement Instruction 76
Customer Invoice Details 212
Edit Message Subscription 235
Message Subscription Rules 246
Safekeeping Fee Holdings 216
Safekeeping Fee Holdings Volume Details .. 221
Search Message Subscription 234
Securities Account Details 31
Securities Positions 197
Securities Posting Items 201
Statement of Holdings 207
Transaction Fees 224
User Portal Fees 231
Party Hold Status
Create Settlement Instruction 73
Search Settlement Instructions 114
Party Name
Message Subscription Rules 246
Pending (Transaction Status Advice)
Message Subscription Rules, Settlement Instruction 249, 254
Pending Reason Codes
Search Settlement Instructions 115
Period from
Collection Fees 227
Communication Fees 229
Customer Invoice Details 212
Customer Invoices 211
Safekeeping Fee Holdings 216
Safekeeping Fee Holdings Volume Details .. 221
Transaction Fees 224
User Portal Fees 231
Period to
Collection Fees 227
Communication Fees 229
Customer Invoice Details 212
Customer Invoices 211
Safekeeping Fee Holdings 216
Safekeeping Fee Holdings Volume Details 221
Transaction Fees 224
User Portal Fees 231
PFD Credit
Four Eyes Principle 257
PFD Debit
Four Eyes Principle 257
PFR Credit
Four Eyes Principle 257
PFR Debit
Four Eyes Principle 257
Physicals
Four Eyes Principle 257
Priority
Create Intra-Position Movement 127
Create Settlement Instruction 84
Search Settlement Instructions 117
Processing Status
Create Intra-Position Movement 129
Create Physical Instruction 169
Create Settlement Instruction 74, 130
Search Intra-Position Movements 151
Search Settlement Instructions 115
Processing User
Create Settlement Instruction 77
Proprietary Identification
Create Settlement Instruction 82
Proprietary Issuer
Create Settlement Instruction 82
Proprietary Scheme Name
Create Settlement Instruction 83
Purpose
Cash Preview 205
Securities Posting Items 201
Quantity
Create Physical Instruction 168
Quantity Type
Create Intra-Position Movement 126
Create Physical Instruction 168
Create Settlement Instruction 69
Safekeeping Fee Holdings Volume Details 221
Search Allegements 191
Search Intra-Position Movements 147
Search Physical Instructions 181
Search Settlement Instructions 111
Reason Code
Create Intra-Position Movement
Processing Status 130
Create Physical Instruction
Processing Status 169
Create Settlement Instruction
Processing Status 74
Settlement Status 74

Receiving Depository BIC
Search Allegements ... *193*
Search Settlement Instructions ... *116*
Receiving Party BIC
Search Allegements ... *193*
Search Settlement Instructions ... *116*
Reference Owner BIC, Linkages ... 92
Reference Type, Linkages ... 91
Reference, Linkages ... 91
Rejected (Transaction Status Advice)
Message Subscription Rules, Settlement Instruction ... *249, 254*
Represented as
Create Physical Instruction ... *169*
Search Physical Instructions ... *181*
Request Party BIC
Create Intra-Position Movement ... *130*
Create Physical Instruction ... *170*
Create Settlement Instruction ... *75*
Request User
Create Intra-Position Movement ... *130*
Create Physical Instruction ... *170*
Create Settlement Instruction ... *75*
Restr. Type Balance From
Create Intra-Position Movement ... *127*
Search Intra-Position Movements ... *148*
Restr. Type Balance To
Create Intra-Position Movement ... *128*
Search Intra-Position Movements ... *149*
Restriction Reference
Create Intra-Position Movement (Restr. Type Balance From) ... *128*
Create Intra-Position Movement (Restr. Type Balance To) ... *129*
Search Intra-Position Movements ... *146*
Restriction References
Use of Restrictions ... *90*
Restriction Type
Use of Restrictions ... *89*
RFP
Four Eyes Principle ... *257*
Rule Name
Message Subscription Rules ... *246*
Rule Type
Message Subscription Rules ... *246*
RVP
Four Eyes Principle ... *257*
RWP
Four Eyes Principle ... *257*
Sec. Acc. Category
Securities Account Details ... *32*
Sec. Acc. Type
Securities Account Details ... *31*
Securities Account
Cash Preview ... *204*
Create Intra-Position Movement ... *125*
Create Physical Instruction ... *167*
Create Settlement Instruction ... *66*
Create Settlement Instruction, Client of the Delivering Party ... *81*
Create Settlement Instruction, Client of the Receiving Party ... *81*
Create Settlement Instruction, Delivering Party ... *81*
Create Settlement Instruction, Receiving Party ... *81*
Edit Message Subscription ... *235*
Four Eyes Principle ... *257*
Message Subscription Rules ... *246*
Safekeeping Fee Holdings ... *216*
Safekeeping Fee Holdings Volume Details ... *221*
Search Allegements ... *192*
Search Intra-Position Movements ... *147*
Search Message Subscription ... *234*
Search Physical Instructions ... *182*
Search Settlement Instructions ... *113*
Securities Account Details ... *31*
Securities Positions ... *198*
Securities Posting Items ... *201*
Statement of Holdings ... *207*
Securities Settlement Transaction Generation Notification
Message Subscription Rules, OCSD Settlement Instruction ... *253*
Message Subscription Rules, Settlement Instruction ... *248*
Security Type
Safekeeping Fee Holdings search filter ... *219*
Safekeeping Fee Holdings Volume Details ... *221*
Sequential Number, Linkages ... 90
Settled Amount
Create Settlement Instruction ... *72*

Settled Quantity
Create Settlement Instruction 69
Settlement Amount
Create Settlement Instruction 69
Settlement Amount Currency
Create Settlement Instruction 71
Search Allegements 191
Search Settlement Instructions 111
Settlement Amount from
Search Allegements 191
Search Settlement Instructions 111
Settlement Amount to
Search Allegements 191
Search Settlement Instructions 111
Settlement Default
Cash Account pop-up dialog (Securities Account Details) 33
Settlement Quantity
Create Intra-Position Movement 126
Create Settlement Instruction 68
Settlement Quantity from
Search Allegements 191
Search Intra-Position Movements 147
Search Physical Instructions 181
Search Settlement Instructions 111
Settlement Quantity to
Search Allegements 191
Search Intra-Position Movements 147
Search Physical Instructions 181
Search Settlement Instructions 111
Settlement Status
Create Settlement Instruction 74
Search Intra-Position Movements 151
Short only
Securities Posting Items 202
Subscription Rules
Edit Message Subscription 236
Sum up
Securities Posting Items 202
T2S Account Number
Edit Message Subscription 236
Target Restriction Type
Create Settlement Instruction 86
Task Type
Create Settlement Instruction 76
Search Intra-Position Movements 150
Search Physical Instructions 183
Search Settlement Instructions 114
To Certificate No.
Certificate Numbers 171
Total Number, Linkages 90
Trade Date
Create Settlement Instruction 72
Trade Date from
Search Allegements 190
Search Physical Instructions 180
Search Settlement Instructions 110
Trade Date to
Search Allegements 190
Search Physical Instructions 180
Search Settlement Instructions 110
Trade Transaction Condition
Create Settlement Instruction 85
Transaction Confirmation
Message Subscription Rules, OCSD Settlement Instruction 254
Message Subscription Rules, Settlement Instruction 251
Transaction Status Advice
Message Subscription Rules, OCSD Settlement Instruction 254
Message Subscription Rules, Settlement Instruction 249
Transaction Type
Create Settlement Instruction 65
Search Allegements 192
Search Settlement Instructions 113
Transaction Types
Message Subscription Rules 247, 253
Use of Restrictions
Create Settlement Instruction 87
User Request Status
Create Intra-Position Movement 131
Create Physical Instruction 170
Create Settlement Instruction 76
User Request Type
Create Intra-Position Movement 131
Create Physical Instruction 170
Create Settlement Instruction 76
Valid from
Cash Account pop-up dialog (Securities Account Details) 33
Valid to
Cash Account pop-up dialog (Securities Account Details) 33

field next to Quantity
Create Physical Instruction screen ... 168

field next to Settlement Amount
Create Settlement Instruction screen ... 71
Search Allegements screen ... 191
Search Settlement Instructions screen ... 111

field next to Settlement Quantity
Create Intra-Position Movement screen ... 126
Create Settlement Instruction screen ... 69
Search Allegements screen ... 191
Search Instruction screen ... 181
Search Intra-Position Movements screen ... 147
Search Settlement Instructions screen ... 111

fields ... 19
active field ... 19
check box ... 20
date field ... 19
disabled field ... 19
display field ... 19
dropdown field ... 19
grey field ... 19
input field ... 19
ISIN field ... 19
numeric field ... 19

filter, button ... 21

FOP releaser ... 261

FOP user ... 259

four eyes principle ... 35, 255

Four Eyes Principle screen (fields)
Description (Securities Account) ... 257
DFP ... 257
DVP ... 257
DWP ... 257
Intra-Position Movement ... 257
PFD Credit ... 257
PFD Debit ... 257
PFR Credit ... 257
PFR Debit ... 257
Physicals ... 257
RFP ... 257
RVP ... 257
RWP ... 257
Securities Account ... 257

Four Eyes Principle, menu item ... 255

From Certificate No. (field)
Create Physical Instruction screen (Certificate Numbers) ... 170

function link
back
detail view ... 25
Edit screens ... 25
search result list ... 25
next (search result list) ... 25
top ... 25

FUTU (Reason Code)
Message Subscription Rule screen ... 250

G

Generate Counter Instruction ... 186
icon ... 25

green bullseye with tick ... 23

grey field ... 19

H

hide update, button ... 21

Hold Claim Cash (field)
Securities Account Details screen ... 32

Hold Claim Securities (field)
Securities Account Details screen ... 32

Hold Default (field)
Securities Account Details screen ... 32

Holding Fee (field)
Safekeeping Fee Holdings Volume Details screen ... 222

Holdings, menu item ... 194

Home ... 26

I

i icon ... 23

ICAG (Reason Code)
Message Subscription Rule screen ... 250

icon
*... 18
A with arrow pointing down ... 24
A with arrow pointing up ... 24
A ... 24
angle bracket with pen ... 25
arrow between horizontal lines ... 24
arrow pointing down between horizontal lines 24
arrow pointing up with line on top ... 24
arrow with double line on top ... 24
biro ... 23, 25
biro with angle bracket ... 25
box with 2 ticks ... 25
calendar ... 22
cancel ... 24
details ... 24
disc ... 24
double line with arrow pointing up ... 24
double tick ... 25
edit ... 25
Generate Counter Instruction ... 25
green bullseye with tick ... 23
Info ... 23
lines with arrow pointing down ... 24
lines with arrow pointing up ... 24
list ... 24, 25, 28
list with arrow pointing down ... 24
list with arrow pointing up ... 24
magnifier ... 24
magnifier with plus symbol and table rows ... 25
PDF ... 24
pen ... 23, 25
pen with angle bracket ... 25
pencil ... 23, 25
plus and pen ... 23
positions ... 25
review ... 25
rows with magnifier ... 25
select all ... 25
select none ... 25
sort order ... 24
spreadsheet list ... 25, 28
table ... 25
tick, double ... 25
two ticks ... 25
vertical bullet points ... 25
white bullseye ... 23
writing pen ... 23, 25
X all ... 25
X none ... 25
X ... 24
yellow bullseye ... 23

ICUS (Reason Code)
Message Subscription Rule screen ... 250

INBC (Reason Code)
Message Subscription Rule screen ... 250

Incl. Unmatched (field)
Cash Preview screen ... 205
Securities Posting Items screen ... 202

Include Nil Securities Positions (field)
Securities Positions ... 198

Income Default (field)
Cash Account pop-up dialog (Securities Account Details) ... 33

Individual Custody (field)
Create Physical Instruction screen ... 168

information box ... 15

information types ... 16

input field ... 19
disabled ... 19

Instructing Party BIC (field)
Create Intra-Position Movement screen ... 125
Create Physical Instruction screen ... 165
Create Settlement Instruction screen ... 66
Search Intra-Position Movements screen ... 147
Search Message Subscription screen ... 235
Search Physical Instructions screen ... 182
Search Settlement Instructions screen ... 113

Instructing Party BICs (field)
Message Subscription Rule screen
Intra-Position Movement rule type ... 251
Settlement Instruction rule type ... 246

instruction
cancel
physical instruction ... 174
settlement instruction ... 103
copy
physical instruction ... 173
settlement instruction ... 102
edit ... 95
edit (linkages, settlement instruction) ... 100
entry ... 49
Additional Information ... 54
Instruction Details ... 49

Linkages ... *61*
physical instruction ... *152*
Restrictions ... *58, 60*
settlement instruction ... *49*
Settlement Instruction Summary ... *57*
Settlement Parties ... *52*
Target Restriction Type ... *60*
Use of Restrictions ... *58*
Instruction History
physical instruction ... *178*
settlement instruction ... *107*
modify ... 95
modify (linkages, settlement instruction) ... 100
PDF download
physical instruction ... *176*
physical instruction (bulk physical deposit) ... *159*
settlement instruction ... *106*
refresh
physical instruction ... *179*
settlement instruction ... *108*
reject ... 35
release ... 35
search
physical instructions ... *171*
settlement instructions ... *92*
Settlement Instruction Summary ... 57
Status History
physical instruction ... *178*
settlement instruction ... *108*

instruction alerts ... 35, 38

Instruction Details (step)
Create Settlement Instruction
field descriptions ... *65*
step-by-step description ... *50*

instruction for the decrease of a global certificate ... 153
create ... 152
search ... 171

instruction for the increase of a global certificate ... 153
create ... 152
search ... 171

instruction for the physical deposit of securities 153
create ... 152
search ... 171

instruction for the physical withdrawal of securities ... 153
create ... 152
search ... 171

Instruction Format (field)
Edit Message Subscription screen ... 236

Instruction History
allegement ... 188
intra-position movement ... 143
physical instruction ... 178
settlement instruction ... 107

Instruction Status (field)
Create Intra-Position Movement screen ... 130
Create Physical Instruction screen ... 169
Create Settlement Instruction screen ... 75
Search Allegements screen ... 193
Search Intra-Position Movements screen ... 150
Search Physical Instructions screen ... 183
Search Settlement Instructions screen ... 114

Instruction Type (field)
Create Physical Instruction screen ... 165
Create Settlement Instruction screen ... 65
Search Allegements screen ... 191
Search Physical Instructions screen ... 182
Search Settlement Instructions screen ... 112

instruction types
physical instructions ... 153
settlement instructions ... 48

Instruction Types (field)
Message Subscription Rule screen ... 246, 252

Intended Settlement Date (field)
Create Intra-Position Movement screen ... 126
Create Physical Instruction screen ... 168
Create Settlement Instruction screen ... 73

Intended Settlement Date from (field)
Cash Preview screen ... 205
Search Allegements screen ... 190
Search Intra-Position Movements screen ... 146
Search Physical Instructions screen ... 180
Search Settlement Instructions screen ... 110

Intended Settlement Date to (field)
Cash Preview screen ... 205
Search Allegements screen ... 190

Search Intra-Position Movements screen 146
Search Physical Instructions screen 180
Search Settlement Instructions screen 110

intra-position movement
cancel 142
copy 140
edit 133
Instruction History 143
modify 133
refresh 145
search 131
step-by-step description 140
Status History 144

Intra-Position Movement (field)
Four Eyes Principle screen 257

Intra-Position Movement Confirmation (field)
Message Subscription Rule screen 252

Intra-Position Movement Details
Create Intra-Position Movement 118

Intra-Position Movement Status Advice (field)
Message Subscription Rule screen 251

Introduction 13

INVB (Reason Code)
Message Subscription Rule screen 250

invisible
menu item 259

INVL (Reason Code)
Message Subscription Rule screen 250

INVN (Reason Code)
Message Subscription Rule screen 250

invoice
detail view 211
show 210

ISIN (field)
Create Intra-Position Movement screen 126
Create Physical Instruction screen 167
Create Settlement Instruction screen 68
Safekeeping Fee Holdings screen (search filter) 217
Safekeeping Fee Holdings Volume Details screen 221
Search Allegements screen 190
Search Intra-Position Movements screen 146
Search Physical Instructions screen 180
Search Settlement Instructions screen 110
Securities Positions screen 197
Securities Posting Items screen 201

ISIN field 19

Issuing Country (field)
Safekeeping Fee Holdings screen (search filter) 219
Safekeeping Fee Holdings Volume Details screen 222

items 198

L

LACK 35

LACK (reason code)
pending reason code 35

LACK (Reason Code)
Message Subscription Rule screen 250

LATE (Reason Code)
Message Subscription Rule screen 250

leave 18

line with arrow pointing down 24

line with arrow pointing up 24

link
back
detail view 25
Edit screens 25
search result list 25
next (search result list) 25
top 25

LINK (Reason Code)
Message Subscription Rule screen 250

Linkage Type (field)
Create Settlement Instruction screen (Linkages) 91

Linkages (pop-up dialog)
Create Intra-Position Movement 124

Create Settlement Instruction, step 3 ... 91

Linkages (screen section)
Create Intra-Position Movement screen ... 129
Create Settlement Instruction screen, step 3 ... 87, 90

list icon ... 25, 28

locked field ... 19

Login ... 17

Logout ... 18

M

magnifier ... 24, 25

magnifier with plus symbol and table rows ... 25

mandatory fields ... 18

Match Status (field)
Search Settlement Instruction screen ... 75
Search Settlement Instructions screen ... 116

Matched (field)
Message Subscription Rule screen (Transaction Status Advice) ... 249, 254

Matching Reference (field)
Create Settlement Instruction screen ... 66
Search Settlement Instructions screen ... 109

menu bar ... 27

menu item
Administration ... 232, 255
Billing ... 208
Cash Preview ... 203
Create Intra-Position Movement ... 118
Create Physical Instruction ... 152
Create Settlement Instruction ... 48
Customer Invoices ... 210
Four Eyes Principle ... 255
Holdings ... 194
Home ... 26
Message Subscription ... 232
Search Allegements ... 184
Search Intra-Position Movements ... 131
Search Physical Instructions ... 171
Search Settlement Instructions ... 92
Securities Positions ... 194
Securities Posting Items ... 198
Settlement ... 48, 118, 152, 184
Statement of Holdings ... 206

menu items
invisible ... 259

Menu items ... 27

Message Subscription ... 232
search ... 232

Message Subscription Rule
create ... 240
delete ... 238
edit ... 236
modify ... 236

Message Subscription Rule screen (fields)
Accepted (Transaction Status Advice) ... 249, 254
Allegement Cancellation Advice ... 252
Allegement Notification ... 252
Allegement Removal Advice ... 252
Cancellation Requested (Transaction Status Advice) ... 249, 254
Cancellation Status Advice ... 251, 254
Cancelled (Transaction Status Advice) ... 249, 254
Description (Party BIC) ... 246
Destination BIC ... 246
Instructing Party BICs ... 246, 251
Instruction Types ... 246, 252
Intra-Position Movement Confirmation ... 252
Intra-Position Movement Status Advice ... 251
Matched (Transaction Status Advice) ... 249, 254
Modification Status Advice ... 251, 254
MT508/semt.015 ... 252
MT544/MT545/MT546/MT547/sese.025 ... 251, 254
MT548/semt.014 ... 251
MT548/sese.024 ... 249, 254
MT548/sese.027 ... 251, 254
MT548/sese.031 ... 251, 254
MT548/sese.032 ... 248, 253
MT578/semt.020 ... 252
MT578/sese.028 ... 252
MT578/sese.029 ... 252

Party BIC ... 246
Party Name ... 246
Pending (Transaction Status Advice) ... 249, 254
Rejected (Transaction Status Advice) ... 249, 254
Rule Name ... 246
Rule Type ... 246
Securities Account ... 246
Securities Settlement Transaction Generation Notification ... 248, 253
Transaction Confirmation ... 251, 254
Transaction Status Advice ... 249, 254
Transaction Types ... 247, 253

Message Subscription Rules ... 236

Message Subscription, menu item ... 232

MINO (Reason Code)
Message Subscription Rule screen ... 250

MITI (field)
Create Intra-Position Movement screen ... 125
Create Physical Instruction screen ... 165
Create Settlement Instruction screen ... 66
Search Allegements screen ... 190
Search Intra-Position Movements screen ... 146
Search Physical Instructions screen ... 180
Search Settlement Instructions screen ... 109

Modification Status Advice (field)
Message Subscription Rule screen ... 251, 254

modify
intra-position movement ... 133
linkages (settlement instruction) ... 100
Message Subscription ... 233, 236
settlement instruction ... 95

MONY ... 35

MONY (reason code)
pending reason code ... 35

MONY (Reason Code)
Message Subscription Rule screen ... 250

More Criteria (screen section)
Search Settlement Instructions screen ... 117

MT544/MT545/MT546/MT547/sese.025 (field)
Message Subscription Rule screen ... 251, 254

MT548/semt.014 (field)
Message Subscription Rule screen ... 251

MT548/semt.015 (field)
Message Subscription Rule screen ... 252

MT548/sese.024 (field)
Message Subscription Rule screen ... 249, 254

MT548/sese.027 (field)
Message Subscription Rule screen ... 251, 254

MT548/sese.031 (field)
Message Subscription Rule screen ... 251, 254

MT548/sese.032 (field)
Message Subscription Rule screen ... 248, 253

MT578/semt.020 (field)
Message Subscription Rule screen ... 252

MT578/sese.028 (field)
Message Subscription Rule screen ... 252

MT578/sese.029 (field)
Message Subscription Rule screen ... 252

MUNO (Reason Code)
Message Subscription Rule screen ... 250

N

Name and Address (field)
Create Settlement Instruction screen ... 82

Narrative Trade Details (field)
Create Settlement Instruction screen ... 86

NCRR (Reason Code)
Message Subscription Rule screen ... 250

next
button ... 21
function link (search result list) ... 25

no, button ... 21

NORE (Reason Code)
Message Subscription Rule screen ... 251

notes box ... 15

Notifications (screen section)
Message Subscription Rule screen
rule type Allegement ... 252

rule type OCSD Settlement Instruction *253*
rule type Settlement Instruction *248*

numeric field **19**

O

OeKB CSD Status (screen section)
Intra-Position Movement Details 130
Physical Instruction Details 169

OeKC CSD Status Criteria (screen section)
Search Allegements screen 193
Search Intra-Position Movements screen 150
Search Physical Instructions screen 183
Search Settlement Instructions screen 114

ok, button **22**

Open Message Types (fields)
Search Message Subscription screen 235

Open Task (screen section)
Settlement Instruction Details, step 1 ..... 75, 76
Settlement Instruction Summary, step 1 76

open tasks **36**

Opening Date (field)
Securities Account Details screen 31

Opt-out Indicator (field)
Create Settlement Instruction screen 86

other fees **231**

OTHR (Reason Code)
Message Subscription Rule screen 251

P

PART (Reason Code)
Message Subscription Rule screen 251

Partial Settlement Default (field)
Securities Account Details screen 32

Partial Settlement Ind. (field)
Create Settlement Instruction screen 85
Search Settlement Instructions screen 117

Party BIC (field)
Cash Preview screen 204
Collection Fees screen 227
Communication Fees screen 229
Create Settlement Instruction screen 76
Customer Invoice Details screen 212
Edit Message Subscription screen 235
Message Subscription Rule screen 246
Safekeeping Fee Holdings screen 216
Safekeeping Fee Holdings Volume Details screen 221
Search Message Subscription screen 234
Securities Account Details screen 31
Party BIC *31*
Securities Positions screen 197
Securities Posting Items screen 201
Statement of Holdings screen 207
Transaction Fees screen 224
User Portal Fees 231

Party Hold Status (field)
Create Settlement Instruction screen 73
Search Settlement Instructions screen 114

Party Name (field)
Message Subscription Rule screen 246

Payment Free of Delivery Credit **48**

Payment Free of Delivery Debit **48**

Payment Free of Receive Credit **48**

Payment Free of Receive Debit **48**

PDF **46**

PDF download **46**
allegement 187
button 22
physical instruction 176
bulk physical deposit *159*
settlement instruction 106
Statement of Holdings 206

PDF icon **24**

pen icon **23, 25**

pen icon with angle bracket **25**

pencil icon **23, 25**

pending

alert reason (task list) 39

Pending (field)
Message Subscription Rule screen (Transaction Status Advice) 249, 254

Pending Reason Codes (field)
Search Settlement Instructions screen 115

Period (screen section)
Search Allegements screen 190
Search Intra-Position Movements screen 146
Search Physical Instructions screen 180
Search Settlement Instructions screen 110

Period from (field)
Collection Fees screen 227
Communication Fees screen 229
Customer Invoice Details screen 212
Customer Invoices screen 211
Safekeeping Fee Holdings screen 216
Safekeeping Fee Holdings Volume Details screen 221
Transaction Fees screen 224
User Portal Fees screen 231

Period to (field)
Collection Fees screen 227
Communication Fees screen 229
Customer Invoice Details screen 212
Customer Invoices screen 211
Safekeeping Fee Holdings screen 216
Safekeeping Fee Holdings Volume Details screen 221
Transaction Fees screen 224
User Portal Fees screen 231

Permissions 259

PFD - Payment Free of Delivery Credit 48

PFD - Payment Free of Delivery Debit 48

PFD - Payment Free of Receive Credit 48

PFD - Payment Free of Receive Debit 48

PFD Credit (field)
Four Eyes Principle screen 257

PFD Debit (field)
Four Eyes Principle screen 257

PFR Credit (field)
Four Eyes Principle screen 257

PFR Debit (field)
Four Eyes Principle screen 257

physical instruction
cancel 174
copy 173
entry 152
Instruction History 178
PDF download 176
bulk physical deposit 159
refresh 179
search 171
step-by-step description 173
Status History 178

Physical Instruction Details
Create Physical Instruction 152

Physical releaser 265

Physical user 264

Physicals (field)
Four Eyes Principle screen 257

plus icon with pen 23

pool 63

pool linkage 63

pool reference 63

position linkage 64

positions 194

positions icon 25

posting items 198

PRCY (Reason Code)
Message Subscription Rule screen 251

PREA (Reason Code)
Message Subscription Rule screen 251

Priority (field)
Create Instruction screen 84
Create Intra-Position Movement screen 127

Search Settlement Instructions screen 117

Processing Status (field)
Create Intra-Position Movement screen 129
Create Physical Instruction screen 169
Create Settlement Instruction screen
..... 74, 130
Search Intra-Position Movements screen 151
Search Settlement Instructions screen 115

Processing User (field)
Create Settlement Instruction screen 77

Proprietary Identification (field)
Create Settlement Instruction screen 82

Proprietary Issuer (field)
Create Settlement Instruction screen 82

Proprietary Scheme Name (field)
Create Settlement Instruction screen 83

PRSY (Reason Code)
Message Subscription Rule screen 251

Purpose (field)
Cash Preview screen 205
Securities Posting Items screen 201

Q

Quantity (field)
Create Physical Instruction screen 168

Quantity Type (field)
Create Intra-Position Movement screen 126
Create Physical Instruction screen 168
Create Settlement Instruction screen 69
Safekeeping Fee Holdings Volume Details screen
..... 221
Search Allegements screen 191
Search Intra-Position Movements screen 147
Search Physical Instructions screen 181
Search Settlement Instructions screen 111

R

read only (user role) 265

Reason Code (field)
Create Intra-Position Movement screen
Processing Status 130
Create Physical Instruction screen
Processing Status 169
Create Settlement Instruction screen
Processing Status 74
Settlement Status 74

reason codes
CLAC
pending reason codes 35
CMON
pending reason codes 35
LACK
pending reason codes 35
MONY
pending reason codes 35

Reason Codes
BLOC (Message Subscription Rule screen) 249
CANI (Message Subscription Rule screen) 249
CANS (Message Subscription Rule screen) 249
CASH (Message Subscription Rule screen) 249
CDLR (Message Subscription Rule screen) 249
CLAC
Message Subscription Rule screen 249
CMON
Message Subscription Rule screen 249
CSDH (Message Subscription Rule screen) 249
CTHP (Message Subscription Rule screen) 249
CVAL (Message Subscription Rule screen) 249
DDAT (Message Subscription Rule screen) 250
DEPT (Message Subscription Rule screen) 250
DMON (Message Subscription Rule screen) 250
DQVA (Message Subscription Rule screen) 250
DSEC (Message Subscription Rule screen) 250
DTRD (Message Subscription Rule screen) 250
FUTU (Message Subscription Rule screen) 250
ICAG (Message Subscription Rule screen) 250
ICUS (Message Subscription Rule screen) 250
INBC (Message Subscription Rule screen) 250
INVB (Message Subscription Rule screen) 250
INVL (Message Subscription Rule screen) 250
INVN (Message Subscription Rule screen) 250
LACK
Message Subscription Rule screen 250
LATE (Message Subscription Rule screen) 250
LINK (Message Subscription Rule screen) 250
MINO (Message Subscription Rule screen) 250
MONY
Message Subscription Rule screen 250
MUNO (Message Subscription Rule screen) 250

NCRR (Message Subscription Rule screen) 250
NORE (Message Subscription Rule screen) 251
OTHR (Message Subscription Rule screen) 251
PART (Message Subscription Rule screen) 251
PRCY (Message Subscription Rule screen) 251
PREA (Message Subscription Rule screen) 251
PRSY (Message Subscription Rule screen) 251
REFE (Message Subscription Rule screen) 251
SAFE (Message Subscription Rule screen) 251
SBLO (Message Subscription Rule screen) 251
SETR (Message Subscription Rule screen) 251
VALR (Message Subscription Rule screen) 251

Reason Codes (screen section)
Message Subscription Rule screen
rule type OCSD Settlement Instruction 254
rule type Settlement Instruction 249

Receive Free of Payment 48

Receive versus Payment 48

Receive with Payment 48

Receiving Depository BIC (field)
Search Allegements screen 193
Search Settlement Instructions screen 116

Receiving Party (screen section)
Create Settlement Instruction, step 2 80
Edit Settlement Instruction, step 2 80

Receiving Party BIC (field)
Search Allegements screen 193
Search Settlement Instructions screen 116

REFE (Reason Code)
Message Subscription Rule screen 251

Reference (field)
Create Settlement Instruction screen (Linkages) 91

Reference (screen section)
Search Allegements screen 190
Search Intra-Position Movements screen 146
Search Physical Instructions screen 180
Search Settlement Instructions screen 109

Reference of Counterparty (screen section)
Search Allegements screen 190

Reference Owner BIC (field)
Create Settlement Instruction screen (Linkages) 92

Reference Type (field)
Create Settlement Instruction screen (Linkages) 91

refresh
allegement 189
intra-position movement 145
physical instruction 179
settlement instruction 108

refresh, button 22

reject, button 22

rejected 37

Rejected (field)
Message Subscription Rule screen (Transaction Status Advice) 249, 254

release 35

releaser 35
user role
FOP 261
Physical 265
VP 263

remove, button 22

Represented as (field)
Create Physical Instruction screen 169
Search Physical Instructions screen 181

Request Party BIC (field)
Create Intra-Position Movement screen 130
Create Physical Instruction screen 170
Create Settlement Instruction screen 75

Request User (field)
Create Intra-Position Movement screen 130
Create Physical Instruction screen 170
Create Settlement Instruction screen 75

reset, button 22

Restr. Type Balance From (field)
Search Intra-Position Movements screen 148

Restr. Type Balance To (field)

Create Intra-Position Movement screen 128
Search Intra-Position Movements screen 149

Restriction Reference (field)
Create Intra-Position Movement screen (Restr. Type Balance From 128
Create Intra-Position Movement screen (Restr. Type Balance To 129
Search Intra-Position Movements screen 146

Restriction References (Feld)
Create Instruction Maske (Use of Restrictions) .. 88

Restriction References (field)
Create Instruction screen (Use of Restrictions) .. 90

Restriction Type (Feld)
Create Instruction Maske (Use of Restrictions) .. 88

Restriction Type (field)
Create Instruction screen (Use of Restrictions) .. 89

Restrictions, Use of (screen section)
Create Settlement Instruction screen 87

review icon 25

RFP - Receive Free of Payment 48

RFP (field)
Four Eyes Principle screen 257

roles, users 259

rows icon with magnifier 25

Rule Name (field)
Message Subscription Rule screen 246

Rule Type (field)
Message Subscription Rule screen 246

RVP - Receive versus Payment 48

RVP (field)
Four Eyes Principle screen 257

RWP - Receive with Payment 48

RWP (field)
Four Eyes Principle screen 257

S

SAFE (Reason Code)
Message Subscription Rule screen 251

Safekeeping Fee Holdings 215

Safekeeping Fee Holdings screen (fields)
Avg. Value/Nominal from (search filter) 218
Avg. Value/Nominal to (search filter) 218
Custodian (search filter) 219
Custody Type (search filter) 218
Description 216
ISIN (search filter) 217
Party BIC 216
Securities Account 216
ISIN (search filter) 217
Issuing Country (search filter) 219
Party BIC 216
Period from 216
Period to 216
Securities Account 216
Security Type (search filter) 219

Safekeeping Fee Holdings search filter (fields)
Avg. Value/Nominal from 218
Avg. Value/Nominal to 218
Custodian 219
Custody Type 218
Description (ISIN) 217
ISIN 217
Issuing Country 219
Security Type 219

Safekeeping Fee Holdings Volume Details screen (fields)
Avg. Value/Nominal (EUR) 222
Custodian 222
Custody Type 222
Description 221
Custodian 222
ISIN 221
Party BIC 221
Securities Account 221
Holding Fee 222
ISIN 221
Issuing Country 222
Party BIC 221
Period from 221
Period to 221
Quantity Type 221

Securities Account ... 221
Security Type ... 221

safekeeping fees ... 212, 214
filter ... 217
monthly holdings volume by ISIN ... 220

Safekeeping Fees ... 215

save, button ... 22

SBLO (Reason Code)
Message Subscription Rule screen ... 251

screen section
Certificate Numbers ... 169
Linkages
Create Intra-Position Movement ... 129
Create Settlement Instruction ... 87
Use of Restrictions ... 87

search
allegements ... 184
step-by-step description ... 186
instruction for the decrease of a global certificate ... 171
instruction for the increase of a global certificate ... 171
instruction for the physical deposit of securities ... 171
instruction for the physical withdrawal of securities ... 171
intra-position movements ... 131
step-by-step description ... 140
message subscription ... 232
physical instructions ... 171
step-by-step description ... 173
settlement instructions ... 92
step-by-step description ... 101

Search (screen section)
Search Allegements screen ... 190
Search Intra-Position Movements screen ... 146
Search Physical Instructions screen ... 180
Search Settlement Instructions screen ... 109

Search Allegements ... 184

Search Allegements screen (fields)
Allegement Reference ... 190
Alleging Party BIC ... 192
Corporate Action Reference ... 190
Customer Reference ... 190
Delivering Depository BIC ... 193
Delivering Party BIC ... 193
Description (ISIN) ... 190
field next to Settlement Amount ... 191
field next to Settlement Quantity ... 191
Instruction Status ... 193
Instruction Type ... 191
Intended Settlement Date from ... 190
Intended Settlement Date to ... 190
ISIN ... 190
MITI ... 190
Quantity Type ... 191
Receiving Depository BIC ... 193
Receiving Party BIC ... 193
Securities Account ... 192
Settlement Amount Currency ... 191
Settlement Amount from ... 191
Settlement Amount to ... 191
Settlement Quantity from ... 191
Settlement Quantity to ... 191
Trade Date from ... 190
Trade Date to ... 190
Transaction Type ... 192

Search Allegements, menu item ... 184

search function ... 40

search functionality
search result lists ... 40
search template ... 43
template ... 43

Search Intra-Position Movements ... 131

Search Intra-Position Movements screen (fields)
Customer Reference ... 146
Description
ISIN ... 146
Desscription
Instructing Party BIC ... 147
Effective Settlement Date from ... 146
Effective Settlement Date to ... 146
field next to Settlement Quantity ... 147
Instructing Party BIC ... 147
Instruction Status ... 150
Intended Settlement Date from ... 146
Intended Settlement Date to ... 146
ISIN ... 146
MITI ... 146
Processing Status ... 151
Quantity Type ... 147
Restr. Type Balance From ... 148

Restr. Type Balance To ... 149
Restriction Reference ... 146
Securities Account ... 147
Settlement Quantity from ... 147
Settlement Quantity to ... 147
Settlement Status ... 151
Task Type ... 150

Search Intra-Position Movements, menu item ... 131

Search Message Subscription ... 232

Search Message Subscription screen (fields)
Destination BIC ... 235
Instructing Party BIC ... 235
Open Message Types ... 235
Party BIC ... 234
Securities Account ... 234

Search Physical Instruction screen (fields)
field next to Settlement Quantity ... 181

Search Physical Instructions ... 171

Search Physical Instructions screen (fields)
Customer Reference ... 180
Description
Instructing Party BIC ... 182
ISIN ... 181
Effective Settlement Date from ... 180
Effective Settlement Date to ... 180
Instructing Party BIC ... 182
Instruction Status ... 183
Instruction Type ... 182
Intended Settlement Date from ... 180
Intended Settlement Date to ... 180
ISIN ... 180
MITI ... 180
Quantity Type ... 181
Securities Account ... 182
Settlement Quantity from ... 181
Settlement Quantity to ... 181
Task Type ... 183
Trade Date from ... 180
Trade Date to ... 180

Search Physical Instructions, menu item ... 171

search result list ... 40

Search Settlement Instruction screen (fields)
field next to Settlement Amount ... 111

Search Settlement Instructions ... 92

Search Settlement Instructions (fields)
field next to Settlement Quantity ... 111
Quantity Type ... 111
Settlement Amount from ... 111
Settlement Amount to ... 111
Settlement Quantity from ... 111
Settlement Quantity to ... 111

Search Settlement Instructions screen (fields)
Corporate Action Reference ... 109
CoSD Hold Status ... 115
CSD Hold Status ... 115
CSD Validation Hold Status ... 115
Customer Reference ... 109
Delivering Depository BIC ... 116
Delivering Party BIC ... 116
Description
Instructing Party BIC ... 113
ISIN ... 110
Effective Settlement Date from ... 110
Effective Settlement Date to ... 110
Instructing Party BIC ... 113
Instruction Status ... 114
Instruction Type ... 112
Intended Settlement Date from ... 110
Intended Settlement Date to ... 110
ISIN ... 110
Match Status ... 116
Matching Reference ... 109
MITI ... 109
Partial Settlement Ind. ... 117
Party Hold Status ... 114
Pending Reason Codes ... 115
Priority ... 117
Processing Status ... 115
Receiving Depository BIC ... 116
Receiving Party BIC ... 116
Securities Account ... 113
Settlement Amount Currency ... 111
Task Type ... 114
Trade Date from ... 110
Trade Date to ... 110
Transaction Type ... 113

Search Settlement Instructions, menu item ... 92

search template ... 43

search, button ... 22

Sec. Acc. Category (field)
Securities Account Details screen ... 32

Sec. Acc. Type (field)
Securities Account Details screen ... 31

second person authorisation ... 35, 255

Securities Account (Client of the Receiving/Delivering Party)
Create Settlement Instruction screen ... 81

Securities Account (field)
Cash Preview screen ... 204
Create Intra-Position Movement screen ... 125
Create Physical Instruction screen ... 167
Create Settlement Instruction screen ... 66
Edit Message Subscription screen ... 235
Four Eyes Principle screen ... 257
Message Subscription Rule screen ... 246
Safekeeping Fee Holdings screen ... 216
Safekeeping Fee Holdings Volume Details screen ... 221
Search Allegements screen ... 192
Search Intra-Position Movements screen ... 147
Search Message Subscription screen ... 234
Search Physical Instructions screen ... 182
Search Settlement Instructions screen ... 113
Securities Account Details screen ... 31
Securities Positions screen ... 198
Securities Posting Items screen ... 201
Statement of Holdings screen ... 207

Securities Account (Receiving/Delivering Party) (field)
Create Settlement Instruction screen ... 81

securities account detail view ... 29

Securities Account Details ... 29

Securities Account Details screen (fields)
Auto Receive (check box) ... 32
Auto-Collateralisation (Cash Account pop-up dialog) ... 33
Blocking Date from ... 32
Blocking Date to ... 32
Blocking Reason ... 32
Cash Account Number (Cash Account pop-up dialog) ... 33
Cash Account Type (Cash Account pop-up dialog) ... 33
Cash Collection (Cash Account pop-up dialog) ... 33
Cash Settlement (Cash Account pop-up dialog) ... 33
CCP.A Collateral (check box) ... 32
Closing Date ... 31
Currency (Cash Account pop-up dialog) ... 33
Default Instr. Format ... 32
Default Sec. Account (check box) ... 32
Description
Party BIC ... 31
Securities Account ... 31
Hold Claim Cash (check box) ... 32
Hold Claim Securities (check box) ... 32
Hold Default (check box) ... 32
Income Default (Cash Account pop-up dialog) ... 33
Opening Date ... 31
Partial Settlement Default (check box) ... 32
Party BIC ... 31
Sec. Acc. Category ... 32
Sec. Acc. Type ... 31
Securities Account ... 31
Settlement Default (Cash Account pop-up dialog) ... 33
Valid from (Cash Account pop-up dialog) ... 33
Valid to (Cash Account pop-up dialog) ... 33

Securities Account pop-up dialog (fields)
Auto-Collateralisation (check box) ... 33
Partial Settlement Default (check box) ... 33

securities account statement ... 206

Securities Cash Preview ... 203

Securities Positions ... 194

securities positions inquiry
by ISIN ... 196
by securities account ... 197

Securities Positions screen (fields)
Date per ... 198
Description
ISIN ... 197
Desscription
Party BIC ... 197
Include Nil Securities Positions ... 198
ISIN ... 197
Party BIC ... 197
Securities Account ... 198

Securities Positions, menu item ... 194

Securities Posting Items ... 198

Securities Posting Items screen (fields)
Currency ... 201
Date from ... 202
Date to ... 202
Description
ISIN ... 201
Party BIC ... 201
Incl. Unmatched ... 202
ISIN ... 201
Party BIC ... 201
Purpose ... 201
Securities Account ... 201
Short only ... 202
Sum up ... 202

Securities Posting Items, menu item ... 198

Securities Settlement Transaction Generation Notification (field)
Message Subscription Rule screen ... 248, 253

Security Type (field)
Safekeeping Fee Holdings screen (search filter) ... 219
Safekeeping Fee Holdings Volume Details screen ... 221

Sequential Number (field)
Create Settlement Instruction screen (Linkages) ... 90

SETR (Reason Code)
Message Subscription Rule screen ... 251

Settled Amount (field)
Create Settlement Instruction screen ... 72

Settled Quantity (field)
Create Intra-Position Movement screen ... 126
Create Settlement Instruction screen ... 69

Settlement Amount (field)
Create Settlement Instruction screen ... 69

Settlement Amount Currency (field)
Create Settlement Instruction screen ... 71
Search Allegements screen ... 191
Search Settlement Instructions screen ... 111

Settlement Amount from (field)
Search Allegements screen ... 191
Search Settlement Instructions screen ... 111

Settlement Amount to (field)
Search Allegements screen ... 191
Search Settlement Instructions screen ... 111

Settlement Client, definition ... 17

Settlement Default (field)
Cash Account pop-up dialog (Securities Account Details) ... 33

settlement instruction
cancel ... 103
copy ... 102
edit ... 95
edit (linkages) ... 100
entry ... 49
Additional Information ... 54
Instruction Details ... 49
linkages ... 61
restrictions ... 58, 60
Settlement Instruction Summary ... 57
Settlement Parties ... 52
Target Restriction Type ... 60
Use of Restrictions ... 58
Instruction History ... 107
modify ... 95
modify (linkages) ... 100
PDF download ... 106
refresh ... 108
search ... 92
step-by-step description ... 101
Settlement Instruction Summary ... 57
Status History ... 108

Settlement Instruction Summary ... 57

Settlement Parties (screen section)
Search Settlement Instructions screen ... 116

Settlement Parties (step)
Create Settlement Instruction
field descriptions ... 77
step-by-step description ... 52

Settlement Quantity (field)
Create Intra-Position Movement screen ... 126
Create Settlement Instruction screen ... 68

Settlement Quantity from (field)
Search Allegements screen ... 191
Search Intra-Position Movements screen ... 147
Search Physical Instructions screen ... 181

Search Settlement Instructions screen 111

Settlement Quantity to (field)
Search Allegements screen 191
Search Intra-Position Movements screen 147
Search Physical Instructions screen 181
Search Settlement Instructions screen 111

Settlement Status (field)
Create Settlement Instruction screen 74
Search Intra-Position Movements screen 151

Settlement, menu item 48, 118, 152, 184

Short only (field)
Securities Posting Items screen 202

show update, button 22

sort order icon 24

Statement of Holdings 206

Statement of Holdings screen (fields)
Date per 207
Description (Party BIC) 207
Party BIC 207
Securities Account 207

Statement of Holdings, menu item 206

status (task list)
approval rejected 37
failed 37
rejected 37

Status Advices (screen section)
Message Subscription Rule screen
rule type Allegement 252
rule type Intra-Position Movement 251
rule type OCSD Settlement Instruction 254
rule type Settlement Instruction 249

Status History
allegement 188
intra-position movement 144
physical instruction 178
settlement instruction 108

step-by-step descriptions, general information 15

Subscription Rules (list)
Edit Message Subscription screen 236

Sum up (field)
Securities Posting Items screen 202

T

T2S Account Number (field)
Edit Message Subscription 236

T2S Status Criteria (screen section)
Search Allegements screen 193
Search Intra-Position Movements screen 151
Search Settlement Instructions screen 114

T2S Status Information (screen section)
Create Settlement Instruction, step 1 73
Edit Settlement Instruction, step 1 73
Intra-Position Movement Details 129
Settlement Instruction Details, step 1 73

table icon 25
with magnifier 25

Target Restriction Type (field)
Create Settlement Instruction screen 86

task box 35

task list
alert reason
pending 39
open tasks 36
status
approval rejected 37
failed 37
rejected 37

Task Type (field)
Create Settlement Instruction screen 76
Search Intra-Position Movements screen 150
Search Physical Instructions screen 183
Search Settlement Instructions screen 114

Taskbox
release 35

Tasks waiting for approval 35

Tasks waiting to process 35, 36

templates 43
button 22

tick 20

tick, double **25**

tip box **15**

To Certificate No. (field)
Create Physical Instruction screen (Certificate Numbers) 171

top, function link **25**

Total Number (field)
Create Settlement Instruction screen (Linkages) 90

Trade Date (field)
Create Settlement Instruction screen 72

Trade Date from (field)
Search Allegements screen 190
Search Physical Instructions screen 180
Search Settlement Instructions screen 110

Trade Date to (field)
Search Allegements screen 190
Search Physical Instructions screen 180
Search Settlement Instructions screen 110

Trade Transaction Condition (field)
Create Settlement Instruction screen 85

Transaction Confirmation (field)
Message Subscription Rule screen 251, 254

transaction fees **222**

Transaction Fees screen (fields)
Description
Party BIC *224*
Description 224
Party BIC 224
Period from 224
Period to 224

Transaction Status Advice (field)
Message Subscription Rule screen 249, 254

Transaction Type (field)
Create Settlement Instruction screen 65
Search Allegements screen 192
Search Settlement Instructions screen 113

Transaction Types (field)
Message Subscription Rule screen 247, 253

two ticks **25**

Typographic Conventions **16**

U

Use of Restrictions (screen section)
Create Delivery Instruction, step 3) 89
Create Settlement Instruction screen 87

user permissions **259**

user portal fees **230**

User Portal Fees screen (fields)
Description
Party BIC *231*
Party BIC 231
Period from 231
Period to 231

User Request Status (field)
Create Intra-Position Movement screen 131
Create Physical Instruction screen 170
Create Settlement Instruction screen 76

User Request Type (field)
Create Intra-Position Movement screen 131
Create Physical Instruction screen 170
Create Settlement Instruction screen 76

user roles
administrator 266
billing 266
FOP releaser 261
FOP user 259
Physical releaser 265
Physical user 264
read only 265
VP releaser 263
VP user 261

V

Valid from field)
Cash Account pop-up dialog (Securities Account Details) 33

Valid to (field)
Cash Account pop-up dialog (Securities Account Details) 33

VALR (Reason Code)
Message Subscription Rule screen 251

visual cues 15

VP releaser 263

VP user 261

W

white bullseye 23

X

X all icon 25

X icon 24

X none icon 25

Y

yellow bullseye 23

yes, button 22

Strauchgasse 1-3
1010 Wien

T +43 1 531 27-2100
F +43 1 531 27-4100

csd@oekb-csd.at
www.oekb-csd.at